Elementary Korean

by Ross King, Ph.D. and Jae-Hoon Yeon, Ph.D.
First published in 2000 by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.
with editorial offices at 153 Milk Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02109.

Copyright © 2000 by Ross King and Jae-Hoon Yeon

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or
by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information
storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from Tuttle Publishing.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data in Process
ISBN: 0-8048-2079-1

Distributed by

USA
Tuttle Publishing
Distribution Center
Airport Industrial Park
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436
Tel: (802) 773-8500
Fax: (802) 526-2778

JAPAN
Tuttle Shuppan
RK Building, 2nd Floor
2-13-10 Shimo-Meguro, Meguro-Ku
Tokyo 153 0064
Tel: (03) 5437-0171
Fax: (03) 5437-0755

CANADA
Raincoast Books
8680 Cambie Street
Vancouver, British Columbia
V6P 6M9
Tel: (604) 323-7100
Fax: (604) 323-2600

SOUTHEAST ASIA
Berkeley Books Pte Ltd
5 Little Road #08-01
Singapore 569683
Tel: (65) 280-1330
Fax: (65) 280-6290

First edition
06 05 04 03 02 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3

Printed in the United States of America
# Contents

Preface........................................................................................................... xii  
About this Book............................................................................................... xv  
Cast of Characters in the Book.................................................................... xxii  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 1: Basic Expressions</th>
<th>1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic Expressions (I): Korean Script</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Expressions (I): Transcription</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide to the Phonetic Transcription System in Lessons One to Four</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Notes</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1. Styles of Speech</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2. Word Classes</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 2: More Basic Expressions</th>
<th>12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic Expressions (II): Korean Script</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Expressions (II): Transcription</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson Notes</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1. Korean Sentence Patterns</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2. Korean Names</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 3: Korean Writing and Basic Pronunciation</th>
<th>24</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한글 The Korean Writing System</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Vowels</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Consonants</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More on the Three-way Consonants</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Alphabet in a Dictionary</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Republic of Korea (South Korea)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Democratic People’s Republic of Korea (North Korea)</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Write Korean</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke Orders</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of Written Syllables</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure of Pronounced Syllables</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 7: Where do they sell tickets to Taejon? ................................. 92
Korean Dialogues .............................................................................. 92
Vocabulary ......................................................................................... 94
Lesson Notes ..................................................................................... 97
  7.1. Verbs: The Polite Style and the Infinitive ................................. 97
  7.2. Korean Verbs with Consonant Bases ................................. 99
  7.3. The Dictionary Form of Korean Verbs .................................. 100
  7.4. Three Types of Special Consonant Bases .................... 100
  7.5. Korean Verbs with Vowel Bases ........................................ 101
  7.6. The Direct Object Particle 을~을 .......................................... 104
  7.7. Particles of Direction: to, from .................................. 106
  7.8. Static and Dynamic Location .............................................. 107
  7.9. Using Location To Express Possession ......................... 109
  7.10. Different Kinds of Verbs .............................................. 109
  7.11. More on the Particle 도 .............................................. 111
  7.12. Placement of Manner Adverbs ............................................ 112
Exercises ......................................................................................... 112

Lesson 8: Aren't you taking any other subjects? .............................. 119
Korean Dialogues .............................................................................. 119
Vocabulary ......................................................................................... 121
Lesson Notes ..................................................................................... 125
  8.1. Verbs: Short Negatives with 안 and 못 .................................. 125
       Pronunciation of 못 ................................................................. 126
  8.2. Verbs: Honorifics ................................................................. 128
       8.2.1. The Honorific Marker -(으)시- ..................................... 128
       8.2.2. The Honorific Polite Style: 하세요 .................................. 129
  8.3. Verbal Nouns:Processive and Descriptive ............................ 133
       8.3.1. Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive) ...................... 133
       8.3.1.1. Using 안 and 못 with Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive) 134
       8.3.2. Nonseparable Verbal Nouns (Descriptive) .............. 135
  8.4. More on Adverbs ................................................................. 135
  8.5. More New Particles: Instrumental (으)로 ................................ 137
  8.6. More New Particles: (이)와 and .......................................... 138
  8.7. Particle Sequences ............................................................... 139
Exercises ......................................................................................... 140
Lesson 9: Did you have a good weekend? ................................................................. 145
Korean Dialogues ........................................................................................................ 144
Vocabulary .................................................................................................................... 147
Lesson Notes ............................................................................................................... 150
  9.1. Verbs: Past Tense ............................................................................................... 151
    9.1.1. Past Tense, Polite Style .............................................................................. 151
    9.1.2. Past and Past-Past .................................................................................... 153
    9.1.3. Past Tense, Honorific Polite Style ............................................................. 153
  9.2. The Particle 과 ~ 와 and ..................................................................................... 155
  9.3. Ways To Say (together) with ............................................................................ 156
  9.4. Ways To Say like .............................................................................................. 156
    9.4.1. The Particle 처럼 ....................................................................................... 156
    9.4.2. The Verb 같아요 ....................................................................................... 157
  9.5. The Purposive Form -(으)리 ............................................................................. 157
  9.6. Expressing Wishes with -고 싶어요 ................................................................. 158
Exercises ....................................................................................................................... 161

Lesson 10: Review 1 .................................................................................................... 166
  10.1. Vocabulary Review .......................................................................................... 166
  10.2. Particle Review ................................................................................................ 169
  10.3. Verb Review .................................................................................................... 171
  10.4. Sentence Review ............................................................................................. 174
  10.5. Korean Conversations ..................................................................................... 179

LESSON 11: I'm 21. I was born in 1976. .................................................................... 181
Korean Dialogues ........................................................................................................ 181
Vocabulary .................................................................................................................... 183
Lesson Notes ............................................................................................................... 186
  11.1. Numbers and Counting .................................................................................. 186
  11.2. Numerals in Time Expressions ....................................................................... 196
    11.2.1. Telling the Time ...................................................................................... 196
    11.2.2. Dates ....................................................................................................... 197
    11.2.3. Telephone Numbers ................................................................................ 198
  11.3. Four New Particles: 마다 만 쪽 좀 ................................................................... 199
    11.3.1. 마다 each, every ....................................................................................... 199
    11.3.2. 만 only, just ............................................................................................. 199
    11.3.3. 쪽 per, apiece ......................................................................................... 200
    11.3.4. 좀 about, approximately, by ................................................................. 201
Lesson 12: I like plays, but I don't like concerts much

Lesson Notes

12.1. Verbs: Suspective Form -치

12.2. Uses of the Suspective -지

12.2.1: Any Base plus 지만 but

12.2.2: Long Negatives in 지 않아요, 지 못 해요

12.2.3. Negative Commands and Suggestions in 지 마- 른-

12.2.4. Negative Honorifics

12.3. The Particle: Noun Agreement

12.4. Suggestions and Tentative Questions with -(으)르 까요

12.5. Thinking of Doing.. with -(으)르 까 해요

12.6. The Adverb 도, Particle 도, and Pseudo-particle (이)나

12.6.1. Adverb 도 versus Particle 도

12.6.2. The Particle (이)나

12.7. More Ways To Say or

12.8. The Wanna Form in -(으) 른 -(으)

12.9. Meanings for 좋아요 and Related Words

Exercises

Lesson 13: I just called a moment ago, but nobody answers.

Lesson Notes

13.1. Verbs: the Sequential Form -(으)니 -(가)

13.1.1. -(으)니 -(가) As, Since, Because

13.1.2. -(으)니 -(가) When . . . (I realized or discovered . . .)

13.2. Honorifics: Nouns and Particles

13.2.1. Nouns

13.2.2. Particles

13.3. Kinship Terms

13.4. Probable Futures with -(으) 른 거예요

13.4.1. Probable Futures in -(으) 른 거예요 on Plain Bases

13.4.2. Probable Futures in -(으) 른 거예요 on Past Bases
13.5. Rhetorical Retorts in -جال야
13.6. Is doing with -고 있어요
13.7. As soon as with -자 마자
Exercises

Lesson 14: Tongdaemun Market is probably the best, right?
Korean Dialogues
Vocabulary
Lesson Notes
14.1 Ways to Say only: 만 plus AFFIRMATIVE, 밖에 plus NEGATIVE
14.2. Another Use of (어)나 as many as
14.3. Expressions for Going and Coming
14.4. Verbs: Future-Presumptives in -겠
   14.4.1. How to Attach -겠
   14.4.2. Meaning and Usage of -겠
14.5. Verbs: Past-Future and Past-Past
14.6. Immediate Futures in -(으)른가요
14.7. Synopsis: Types of Base and Types of Future
   14.7.1. Types of Base
   14.7.2. Types of Future
   14.7.3. A Reminder about First-, Second- and Third-Person with -겠
14.8. Suppositives in -(으)르네요
14.9. Synopsis: Compatibility of -겠 with Endings Previously Learned
Exercises

Lesson 15: Review 2
Review of Lesson Notes
15.1. Verb Forms: Summary
   15.1.1. Verb Bases
   15.1.2. Verb Endings
Review Exercises
Vocabulary Review
Particle Review
Honorifics
Autobiographical Sketch
The Formal Style
Review of Numbers
Korean to English Translation
English to Korean Translation
Reference Section
Korean to English Vocabulary .................................................. 317
English to Korean Vocabulary .................................................. 332
Korean to English Pattern Glossary ......................................... 349
English to Korean Pattern Glossary ......................................... 355
English Equivalents to the Korean Dialogues ......................... 363
Answer Key to Written Exercises ........................................... 370
Preface

This textbook began naively as a simple remake of Martin and Lee's *Beginning Korean* (1969). Because *Beginning Korean* is entirely in Yale Romanization, we believed Martin's system would be better appreciated if only the book were in Han'gül. The idea was to scan it onto disk, convert the Korean bits to a Korean font, and reissue the textbook. Ross King and Hyoshin Kim began scanning *Beginning Korean* onto disk at Harvard in 1989. Hyoshin Kim also did much of the initial hard work of creating the Microsoft Word™ files on the Apple Macintosh™ and converting the Korean fonts. She has been an excellent informant and critic throughout the project.

When we started teaching from *Beginning Korean* at the School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS) in autumn 1990, we soon found that much needed updating, correcting, shortening, or throwing out. Much was also missing. We continued to write new dialogues, and rework and revise the grammar notes throughout the academic year 1991–92, during which time we taught first-year Korean not from *Beginning Korean*, but from the new Korea University textbooks. The Korea University books have given us many ideas, and we are grateful to the authors. We are also grateful to other textbooks for various ideas here and there: the Myongdo textbooks, Namgui Chang and Yong-chol Kim's *Functional Korean*, the Republic of Korea (ROK) Ministry of Culture's *Korean I-III*, and Adrian Buzo and Shin Gi-hyon's *Learning Korean: New Directions I* (Pilot Edition 5). Ho-min Sohn's recent descriptive grammar, *Korean* (1994), has also been of assistance.

In the nine years that have passed since this project began, the textbook has changed radically. While still owing much of its grammatical apparatus to the original *Beginning Korean*, this book has become a different creature. This is why, at the urging of Samuel Martin, we have changed the title to *Elementary Korean* and listed just our names as coauthors.

We would like to thank those who have helped make this textbook possible. Several cohorts of SOAS students have helped us—Chris Murphy and Eunice Brooker, who suffered through the first chaotic revision of *Beginning Korean*; Janet Poole and Denise Chai, who put in long hours during the summer of 1992 editing, organizing, and retyping the text; Flora Graham, Simon Hayward, Youngsoon Mosafiri, Natalie

Lemay-Palmer, Tom Hunter, Dong-jae Chung, Chang Kyung, Andrew W., Alex Calvo, Elke Maeda, Reiko Maeda, Rei Long Courville. Thank you for your feedback: Catherine Columbia (Columbia 41955–98 helpful. Brian Cho, Hyoshin Kim, Hannelore Lee, Tammy Yang, Yanagita. In which we are grateful.

In particular, Youngsoon Mosafiri, formatting and June of the and June of the style, completed the performed in TrueType™.

We have a Seungia Cheon 1993—

References provided by the California University and colleagues as a Foreign, and made some

Dong-jae

More recently, led by UBC P.

Two British Foreign and Commonwealth Office (FCO) diplomats on the Korean Long Course at SOAS also used the second pilot version and gave us valuable feedback: Colin Crooks and Patrick Butler. Most recently, the University of British Columbia (UBC) Korean 102 (Elementary Korean) cohorts for the academic years 1995–98 have provided valuable feedback, especially Jeff Armstrong, Jenny Cho, Brian Choi, Chinfai Choi, Clara Choi, Dian Choi, Karen Choi, Mina Chung, Ted Kim, Hannah Joe, Janette Kim, Claudia Kwan, Jowan Lee, Marina Lee, Miyoun Lee, Tammy Lee, Victor Lim, Liza Park, Delphine Tardy, David Thumm, Ryo Yanagitani, and Jenny Yim. All have provided valuable comments and criticism for which we are grateful.

In particular, the authors wish to single out SOAS students Mark Vincent and Youngsoon Mosafiri for special thanks. Mark clocked nearly 100 hours revising, formatting, editing, and proofing the second pilot version on the Macintosh in May and June of 1993. He continued to provide excellent suggestions on fonts, formatting, style, content, and presentation in the 1993–94 academic session. Youngsoon performed the tedious, but important task of retyping all of the Korean in the new TrueType™ fonts on the Macintosh in the summer of 1994.

We have also benefited from the comments and criticisms of some of our colleagues. Seungja Choi was foolhardy enough to teach from the second pilot version during the 1993–94 academic session at Yale. She and her students raised many helpful points. SOAS Korean lectors Youngjoo Lee, Jiyong Shin, and Jae-mog Song also provided valuable input. David Moon and Yoon-Suk Chung at the University of California-Berkeley both made many useful criticisms, and Bjarke Frellesvig at the University of Oslo, Norway, gave valuable feedback too. In addition, some of our colleagues at the Korea Foundation-sponsored conference on "Collaborative Korean as a Foreign Language (KFL) Textbooks Development" in Seoul, December 1993, made some useful criticisms of the second version: Chongsuk Kim of Korea University, Dong-jae Lee of the University of Hawaii, and Young-mee Yu Cho of Stanford. More recently, the manuscript has benefited from excellent criticisms and suggestions by UBC Korean Language Instructor Insun Lee, who has taught from the book at UBC.
UBC since 1996, and from UBC Korean 102 teaching assistants Jee-Weon Shin and Soowook Kim, who taught from the book during the 1996–1997 and 1997–98 academic sessions, respectively. UBC students Victor Song, Gabriel Gervey, and Paul Liu made valuable suggestions during the 1996–1997 academic year, and Sally Foster and Sunah Park Cho compiled the answer key to exercises.

The recordings for this book were made in December of 1996, shortly before Tuttle Publishing underwent a series of managerial and editorial staff changes that have significantly delayed the appearance of this book. The technical aspects of the recording sessions were expertly supervised by Clay Dixon of UBC's Crane Production Unit in the Crane Resource Centre. Native speaker voices were cheerfully volunteered by Mr. Ilsung Lee, Mrs. Sunah Park Cho, Nam-lin Hur, Yunshik Chang, Miseli Jeon, Suk-man Jang, Hyoshin Kim, and a supporting cast of Korean visiting scholars and their families too numerous to name individually. We are grateful to them all.

Financial support for this project at SOAS came from the Korea Research Foundation through its generous annual grants to the SOAS Centre of Korean Studies. The authors also would like to thank the SOAS Research Committee for providing funds for research assistance on this project; and the Center for Korean Studies, University of California–Berkeley, for providing Ross King with the opportunity to convert the manuscript into NisusWriter™ as well as finish the pre-publication revisions while on a Korea Foundation post-doctoral fellowship during the 1994–95 academic year. Financial support for preparation of the final camera-ready copy at UBC came from the UBC Faculty of Arts, UBC's Centre for Korean Research, and the SOAS Centre of Korean Studies. The authors were also pleased to win an Honorable Mention in the 1995 Tuttle Language Prize. We have used the prize money to support work on the textbook.

We would be delighted to hear more feedback, positive or negative, from future users of this book. Please contact us at these addresses.

Ross King
Department of Asian Studies
Asian Centre
1871 West Mall
Vancouver, B. C. (Canada)
email: jrk@unixg.ubc.ca
fax: (604) 822-8937

J. H. Yeon
Centre of Korean Studies
SOAS, University of London
Thornhaugh Street, Russell Square
London WC1H 0XG (U.K.)
email: jyl@soas.ac.uk
fax: (171) 323-6179

Main Objectives

This course book has three levels: Introductory, Intermediate, and Advanced, and this volume, together with volume 2, is intended for level 1 students. The book covers general competence in everyday communication and the rudiments of written language skills to the function of a “Reading Guide”. The emphasis is on the development of both oral and written language skills, with the content and structure of the book designed to help students bridge the gap between the quality of their written and spoken language.

Basic Material

This textbook is designed to introduce the characters of basic Korean. Some teaching aids and exercises that are contained in the book go beyond the teaching requirements of beginners. The purpose of this book is not to teach hard method and hard style, but to focus on the content and to make it as ready the students as possible.
Like other Korean language textbooks on the market, this textbook has its strengths and weaknesses. The authors have tried to write a book that will appeal to a broad range of learners, including individuals working on their own, professional people working with a tutor, and university students in a classroom setting. The following remarks are aimed at teachers contemplating using the textbook with learners of the latter type.

Main Objective
This course consists of two volumes, of which *Elementary Korean* is the first. The sequel volume, tentatively called *Korean: A Continuing Course*, should appear within a year of this volume. The main objective of the two volumes comprising this course is communicative competence in contemporary spoken Korean through a systematic and streamlined introduction to the fundamental patterns of the language. Most lessons in the sequel volume also contain a “Reading Passage,” and both volumes introduce a number of patterns more relevant to written language than spoken. In such cases, the student is advised as to the spoken vs. written language status of the pattern in question. Thus, *Elementary Korean* and *Korean: A Continuing Course* do not aim at oral competence alone.

In terms of the American Council of Teachers of Foreign Languages (ACTFL) Proficiency Guidelines, the authors believe that *Elementary Korean* and *Korean: A Continuing Course* together provide enough material for a student to attain an Intermediate-Low to Intermediate-Mid proficiency level. Of course, this is also dependent on the number of contact hours and the quality of “act-related” instruction provided.

Basic Methodology
This textbook is unabashedly structuralist and eclectic in its philosophy and methodology. Some teachers versed in the latest task-based and proficiency-oriented approaches to language teaching may find the book’s structuralist approach reminiscent of the grammar translation method and the audio-lingual method. Such teachers should remember one point: the book does not teach the course in the classroom.

The authors believe the textbook is amenable to any number of language-teaching approaches and styles in the classroom; yet, we see it primarily as an out-of-class reference tool to ready the students for whatever activities their teacher has prepared for them in class.
grammar notes are richer (though still concise) than those in other textbooks for at least two reasons:

1. to help those students working on their own without recourse to a teacher
2. to reduce the amount of class time needed for “fact” (as opposed to “act”).

About the Exercises
The exercises at the end of each lesson are designed primarily as written homework, not as oral exercises for the classroom. We have deliberately omitted oral pattern drills from the lessons because we feel such drills take up unnecessary space and are easily constructed by the teacher. Thus, one major shortcoming of the textbook is the lack of a teacher’s manual with ideas and guidance for both task-based classroom activities and pattern drills. The lack of a teacher’s manual or activity book places an additional burden on the teacher, but in this respect our textbook is no different from other Korean textbooks currently available. Insun Lee at the University of British Columbia is currently working on a combination teacher’s manual-and-activity book; look for it in the near future. In the meantime, we encourage teachers using the book to share their ideas and supplementary materials with us.

About the Dialogues: Themes and Situations
The dialogues were written after the authors had determined which patterns were to appear in which sequence in the course. This increases the risk of producing dialogues that become mere vehicles for the structural items being introduced. Keeping this risk in mind, we have tried to write dialogues that succeed at once in illustrating each new structural point in the lesson and in introducing tasks and situations likely to be of immediate use to a beginner. We have tried to keep the conversations natural and colloquial and, where possible, humorous.

The dialogues cover the themes of daily academic life in Korea, business, and travel. Most of the dialogues center around two middle-aged foreigners (Chris and Eunice Murphy) and their two university-aged children (Eric and Sandy). The authors hope these characters will enhance the functional range and potential market for the book.

Situations and functions covered in the two volumes include: greetings and good-byes, classroom expressions, identifying things and introducing people, existence, location and possession, asking for directions, buying tickets and other travel-related situations, discussing one’s studies and one’s language abilities, telling time, ordering at a restaurant, asking for people on the telephone, shopping, social drinking, etc. Though our treatment of situations is by no means comprehensive, most situations and tasks necessary for attaining basic proficiency are covered.
About Transcription

The first four lessons include broad phonetic transcriptions of the Korean material. The transcriptions are not romanization—students can learn the McCune-Reischauer and Yale romanizations in a Korean studies course. The transcriptions are there for students who want them and are presented separately from the Korean-script renditions (in Lessons One and Two). Teachers and students who want or like transcription can use it, while others have the option to ignore it.

About Teaching the Korean Script

Some Korean teachers proudly teach the Korean script from day one. Others prefer to wait a few weeks while working in an exclusively oral-aural mode. All Korean teachers have their own way of teaching the Korean script, and thanks to the genius of the script itself, they all work. This is why our textbook does not dwell on the script; we simply give the basics rather than force one or another scheme on the teacher and student.

The authors prefer to wait at least a week or two before introducing the Korean script. We keep practicing the basic expressions from Lessons One and Two while hammering home the various pronunciation points treated in Lessons Three and Four until everyone is ready for Lesson Five. Lessons Three and Four are more akin to reference lessons—points to come back to again and again over the course of an entire academic year—than to lessons for formal, systematic presentation in the classroom. We find it most useful to treat Lessons One to Four as an organic whole, the contents of which can be covered in any number of ways.

Lessons One and Two introduce approximately seventy daily and classroom expressions, which at first blush seems a lot. But recall that these expressions are the raw material around which the pronunciation points in Lessons Three and Four are to be reinforced. Thus, students actually have four lessons’ worth of time to practice these expressions in class.

About Contact Hours

Most university Korean courses in the United States, Canada, United Kingdom, Australia, and New Zealand meet four or five hours per week. At this pace, the authors would recommend covering one lesson for every eight to ten classroom hours, in which the students have at least a 30-minute quiz at the end of every other week. But the authors recognize that different students and different courses proceed at different paces; thus, anywhere from six to ten hours per lesson is possible, depending on the circumstances. The authors believe the book is particularly well-suited for an intensive course of eight to ten
contact hours per week, in which case it would be possible to finish both Elementary Korean and Korean: A Continuing Course (forthcoming) in one academic year.

About Vocabulary
This textbook introduces a lot of vocabulary, some one thousand items in all. The authors are skeptical of statistical frequency list approaches to introducing vocabulary, since these frequency lists are never based on the vocabulary needs of university students, businessmen, or travelers learning Korean. Our book includes many sophisticated adult, intellectual vocabulary items—the sorts of words that mature adults would like to be able to say early in their Korean learning career. Furthermore, since Korean does not give the English speaker as many shortcut vocabulary “freebies” as does French or Spanish or German, it is a hard fact of life that students need to spend more time on vocabulary building.

It is also the view of the authors that some vocabulary items cost more than others to learn. This view is reflected in the layout of the vocabulary sections, where certain words are indented beneath others to indicate that these items are related to the main vocabulary item in question, and thus cost less to learn.

Other features of the vocabulary sections to be born in mind are these: (1) starting with Lesson Seven, all verb bases are given in the special notation which students learn in this lesson; (2) processive and descriptive bases are distinguished from each other by their English glosses—descriptive verbs are always preceded by be (blue, sad), while processive verbs are not; (3) vocabulary is broken up into sections according to part of speech—verbs, nouns, adverbs (although the classification of verbal nouns is often arbitrary); (4) we have tried to provide more exemplification of the vocabulary items than is typical of other textbooks. Example sentences using a particular vocabulary item in context are indented below the main word.

About Verbs and Lesson Seven
Lesson Seven is the “heartbreak hill” of the course—if the students don’t survive it, they will not survive the course (or ever learn Korean, for that matter). Lesson Seven is unusual in two ways. First, it covers more or less all major verb types in one fell swoop (sort of the way they do it in intensive university Latin and Greek courses). Crucially, it includes those verbs traditionally called irregular: p- w verbs and t- l verbs. The authors have found that it is usually possible to ask for and get more effort from students at the beginning of the course when they are still fresh and excited from the initial exposure to the language. Lesson Seven is to verbs as Lessons Three and Four are to pronunciation: it is important to master the basics early, after which one can keep coming back to problem points.
The second important feature of Lesson Seven is its treatment of the so-called irregular verbs. Our analysis follows Samuel E. Martin's style in turning the traditional analysis on its head. This is most significant for the p-w verbs and t-1 verbs, but also applies to the L-extending verbs. In Martin's system, the p-w verbs are bases ending in w, and the students learn a rule that changes w to p (\(\sim\)) before consonants, e.g., hot 더 w + -다 \(\rightarrow\) 들다 (see below for use of linguistic symbols in this book). The w counts as a consonant, and students also learn the rule that w + ò gives ò: 더 w- + ò세요 \(\rightarrow\) 다우세요.

In the case of verbs like 들다 listen, Martin takes the form with ò as the base (들-), and students learn a rule which changes ò to ò before consonants: 들- + -다 \(\rightarrow\) 들다. Verbs like 살아 live are treated as a special kind of L-extending vowel base (살- ò-) that requires the addition of an ò in front of certain verb endings.

Our analysis of the p-w verbs actually saves the student one rule in comparison to the traditional treatment, and in general the analysis completely disposes of the traditional Korean notion of irregular verbs for these conjugation classes. It is this prejudicial notion of irregular verbs that leads some Korean teachers (and students) to regard them as difficult, and tackle them far too late in a student's career.

About Speech Styles and Honorifics

Our book introduces Polite Style first, beginning in Lessons Five and Six (copula -\(\sim\) 에요, 있어요, and \(\sim\)어요), followed by a comprehensive overview of Polite Style for most major verb classes in Lesson Seven. This is directly related to the Martinesque analysis of those verbs traditionally called irregular by Korean grammarians (Martin chops off everything to the left of the infinitive vowel -\(\sim\) and calls it the base). The honorific suffix -\(\sim\) is introduced in Lesson Eight, and Formal Style is introduced in Lesson Eleven. Apart from the basic expressions in Lessons One and Two, which are presented without analysis for rote memorization, the student will not see honorific forms until Lesson Eight and Formal Style forms until Lesson Eleven. This seems a small price to pay for a systematic, streamlined, and sequenced introduction to the structures.

About Orthography

Some teachers are finicky about spelling and conforming to the latest official orthographic guidelines. We are not. Whether one writes 할 거에요 or 할 거에요, for instance, seems to have little or no bearing on how well students assimilate this pattern. Our book uses the latter spelling, even though it is now nonstandard orthography, because (1) this is how it is actually pronounced, and (2) students have already learned the simple rule for the copula that the -\(\sim\)- drops regularly in colloquial speech after a vowel. They can learn about the
vagaries and idiosyncrasies of official Korean orthography at a later stage, once they actually know the patterns.

About the English Translations and Glosses
In a number of cases the English translations of Korean expressions and patterns are structured to resemble as closely as possible the Korean meaning. In some cases, students and teachers may feel that certain English renditions are not typical English usage. For example, the authors are well aware that ‘wanna’ is not considered good English. However, this contracted form is used for pedagogical reasons (the form in question is also historically derived from a contraction in Korean), and seems to work as a mnemonic device, too. The authors ask for indulgence on this matter.

About Linguistic Symbols
Both authors received their primary training in linguistics, and this background is reflected in the analyses in the book and in the use of certain linguistic symbols. Our use of linguistic symbols amounts to a special kind of code that is designed to streamline the learning process for the student, and to streamline the book’s presentation. Once the teacher and students have mastered the few simple symbols below, they should have no trouble following the exposition in the book.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- (Times), - (Apple Myungjo)</td>
<td>The hyphen is used to demarcate boundaries and bound forms. Because the abstract Korean verb stems (we call them bases) to which students must attach endings are all bound forms (that is, they cannot be used and do not occur in real speech without some ending), verbs in each lesson’s Vocabulary List are listed as a base, that is, as a bound form, followed by a hyphen to its right (e.g., 야- 꼭 live). The same goes for all verb endings in Korean—they are abstract notions that only occur in Korean when attached to a verb base; they are bound forms, and always appear in the book with a hyphen to their left. We continue to refer to verb bases and endings in the grammar notes in this way, too.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ (Times), + (Apple Myungjo) | The plus sign means ‘plus’ ‘added to’ ‘in combination with’. |

Note the following:

Here, the examples for both symbols are denoted with the phrase ‘in combination with’. The plus sign (+) means ‘plus’ ‘added to’ ‘in combination with’. The hyphen (-) is used to demarcate boundaries and bound forms. Bound forms are abstract notions in Korean that only occur in Korean when attached to a verb base; they are bound forms, and always appear in the book with a hyphen to their left. We continue to refer to verb bases and endings in the grammar notes in this way, too.
Phonemic notations are enclosed by slash brackets and phonetic notations by square brackets. Most examples of slash brackets have been purged from the book, but we often use square brackets to indicate the phonetics, i.e. actual pronunciation of a Korean form when this is not indicated in the Korean orthography. Another usage of the square brackets is to indicate optional material.

The asterisk is used to mark grammatically unacceptable utterances.

This arrow sign means 'becomes', 'gives', 'yields', 'produces'.

This arrow sign means 'comes from', 'is a product of', 'derives from'.

The tilde is used to represent an alternation, and means 'in alternation with'.

Note the following example:

Here, the w- identifies a particular verb class in Korean (p-w verbs), learned in Lesson Seven (think of it as a kind of code—this is how we teach it in class). The hyphens indicate boundaries, the + indicates “plus”, and the arrow means 'yields, gives'. This particular example is as complicated as our 'code' gets, and makes sense in the context of the lesson in which it is introduced.


Cast Of Characters

The Murphy Family:

Christopher Murphy, a middle-aged British businessman in charge of the Seoul office of a Yorkshire textiles firm

Eunice, his Australian wife who teaches piano at an International School in Seoul;

Eric and Sandy, their 21-year old twins, both attending the International Division at Korea University

The Kim family:

Mr. Ch'ang-gi Kim, Chris Murphy's Korean teacher, a middle-aged Korean

his wife, a full-time housewife active in their local church

Chin-yong, their 21-year old daughter

Chin-sop, their twenty-year old son, both attending Korea University

Others:

Miss Lee, Christopher Murphy's secretary, a woman in her mid-twenties

할머니 (halmön), the grandmother living across the hall from the Murphy's place

Mr. Kang, a senior employee of Han'guk Sömyu, a Korean textiles firm based in Pusan, a middle-aged man who is a long-time business associate of Chris Murphy

Mr. Nam, another business associate of Chris Murphy

Yöngch'öl, a friend of Eric's from Korea University

Söngman, a friend of Sandy's from Korea University

Miss Kwak, a waitress befriended by Eric

The list above is given to clarify the gender, age, status and inter-relationships of the various characters in the book, since this affects the style of Korean which they use in addressing each other.
In this lesson you will learn the first of two sets of Basic Expressions that you will use constantly in everyday life in Korea and that you will need in the classroom. The purpose of memorizing these expressions is to help you come to grips with Korean pronunciation. You needn’t worry at this stage about the grammar or about how things are written. They are expressions of greeting and general politeness for the most part. We also introduce you to some of the fundamental features of all Korean sentences.

Basic Expressions I: Korean Script

Shortly you will learn the Korean alphabet, at which time you should use this section to review the basic expressions. Until then, you may find it helpful to have a simple Roman-script indication of how the sentences sound. Therefore, we have provided in the following section a transcription of the same set of basic expressions in a phonetic notation to give you a guide to pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 네 or 예</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 아니오</td>
<td>No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 김선생님, 안녕하세요?</td>
<td>How are you, Mr. Kim?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation: 김 (a family name); 선생 teacher, Mr. or Mrs. or Ms.; 선생님 revered teacher, Mr., Mrs. or Ms.; 안녕하세요? Are you peaceful (well)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 네. 안녕하세요?</td>
<td>Fine, how are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ... 입니다.</td>
<td>I'm ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Nice to meet you; nice to see you.  
Literally: I meet you, so I am pleased.

7. Good-bye!  
To one who is leaving. Literally: Go in peace (i.e., health).

8. Good-bye!  
To one who is staying. Literally: Stay in peace (i.e., health).

9. Hello! (to someone working)  
Good-bye! (to someone working)  
Thank you for helping me or Well done!  
Explanation: a hard work, i.e., You are doing a great job; Keep up the good work; and Well done.

10. Pleased to make your acquaintance.  
Literally: I see you for the first time (formally) i.e., How do you do?

11. See you later! (FORMAL)  
Explanation: 또 again, 볼겠습니다 will humbly see/meet. Literally: I will humbly see you again.

12. Thank you.  

13. You’re welcome! or Don’t mention it!  
Literally: It’s one of ten million (words).

14. Welcome!  
Literally: Come (in) right away!

15. Come in!  
Literally: Please enter.

16. Please take a seat / sit down.  

17. Excuse me (for what I am doing).  
Literally: I am committing a discourtesy.

Lesson One / 2
18. 미안합니다 or 죄송합니다

 Limey: I am about to commit a discourtesy.

19. 아니오, 편찮아요.

Explanation: 아니오 No; 편찮아요 It makes no difference, it doesn’t matter, it’s okay.

20. 여보세요!

Hello! or Hey there!

Hello on the telephone, or when peering into a dark house. Also means Look here!

21. 시간이 다 뗐습니다.

It’s time (to begin or stop).

Explanation: 시간 time; 시간이 time (as subject); 다 all, completely; 뗐습니다 it has become...

22. 또 하요.

See you later! (POLITE)

Literally: See you again. This is less formal than item 11.

23. 그래요?

Is that so? Really?

 그래요. That’s so. Really.

Basic Expressions I: Transcription

You are meant to master the basic expressions of Lessons One and Two before learning the Korean alphabet. Some students will be able to do this through practice and listening to the tape alone. Other students will prefer the visual mode for memorization. As a memory aid in the first few days before you learn the Korean alphabet, we reproduce below the basic expressions you have just seen this time in phonetic transcription, followed by a chart explaining the transcription symbols. This transcription writes the basic expressions roughly as they sound—use it to jog your memory, not as a crutch.
1. ne. oreye.
   Yes.
2. anio.
   No.
3. kim sosamnim. annyog[h]ase yo?
   How are you, Mr. Kim?
4. ne. annyog[h]ase yo?
   Fine, how are you?
5. . . imnida.
   I'm...
6. mannasopangapssimnida.
   Nice to meet you, nice to see you.
7. annyog[h]i gase yo.
   Good-bye! (to one who is leaving)
8. annyog[h]i gase yo.
   Good-bye! (to one who is staying)
9. sugohashimnida!
   Hello! (to someone working)
   sugohase yo!
   Good-bye! (to someone working)
   sugohašosso yo.
   Thank you for helping me or Well done.
10. čʰoimb[w]epkkessimnida.
    Pleased to make your acquaintance.
11. tto b[w]epkkessimnida.
    See you later! (FORMAL)
12. komapssimnida. or kamsa[h]a]mnida.
    Thank you.
13. čʰommaney yo. or kwemčʰana yo.
    You're welcome or Not at all.

Lesson One / 4
14. oso ose yo!
   Welcome!
15. tiro ose yo!
   Come in!
16. andžise yo.
   Please take a seat; please sit down.
17. šil'le[h]amnida.
   Excuse me (for what I am doing).
   šil'le[h]essimnida.
   Excuse me (for what I did).
   šil'le[h]agessimnida.
   Excuse me (for what I'm about to do).
18. mian[h]amnida. or ţweso[h]amnida.
   I'm sorry or Excuse me.
19. anio, kwæŋ[h]ana yo.
   Not at all; it's all right.
20. yobose yo!
   Hello! or Hey there!
   It's time (to begin or stop).
22. tto b[w]a yo.
   See you later!
23. kir[e] yo?
   Is that so? Really?
   kir[e] yo.
   That's so. Really.
Guide to the Phonetic Transcription System in Lessons One to Four

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phonetic Symbol</th>
<th>Approximate Sound Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a as in father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>a as in bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>č</td>
<td>relaxed ch as in chill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čʰ</td>
<td>aspirated ch as in chop!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čč</td>
<td>tense ch as in matchmaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dź</td>
<td>d as in edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e as in bet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>u as in pull but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>without lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ee as in feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>h as in hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>relaxed k as in kitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kʰ</td>
<td>aspirated k as in kill!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kk</td>
<td>tense k as in skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l as in lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l'y</td>
<td>soft l as in eel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m as in mom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n as in nice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ</td>
<td>ng as in sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o as in poke with lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>aw as in thaw or uh as in uh-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>relaxed p as in park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pʰ</td>
<td>aspirated p as in pow!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pp</td>
<td>tense p as in spa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s as in sigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ss</td>
<td>tense s as in stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>š</td>
<td>sh as in sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>relaxed t as in tall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʰ</td>
<td>aspirated t as in talk!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tt</td>
<td>tense t as in star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>oo as in boot with lip rounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>w as in wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>y as in yard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson One / 6

Lesson One

1.1. Style

Korean is characterized by the fact that it is impossible to talk about "Korean" without being introduced to the idea of language, which corresponds to the concept that different species are not only physically or officially-sound languages. Where do you from? They asked. Pardon me, these speakers typically adjust to different environments. This is done chiefly because it has implications for the way we think of the same thing. The factors appear:

Two considerations:

When talking to a foreigner:

  When talking to a foreigner, who and they say are the

The following are examples of the

Korean:
Lesson Notes

1.1. Styles of Speech

Korean is characterized by an intricate system of social styles; you have just had a glimpse of the system in the basic expressions. This characteristic is so pervasive that it is impossible to speak more than a few connected words in Korean without becoming involved with HONORIFICS and politeness; yet, there is nothing in English which corresponds to it. Of course, in English there are also times when we select different speaking styles to suit the social setting. Compare, for example, the impersonal or official-sounding *What is your native country?* and the conversational *Where are you from?* To attract someone’s attention, we might say under certain circumstances *Pardon me, Sir!* and under certain others *Hey you!* However, in the Korean language these speaking styles are more formally codified. Every Korean sentence can be adjusted to each of several hierarchical styles in a regular and systematic way. This is done chiefly by changing the endings on the verbs. Occasionally, stylistic implications in Korean are conveyed in the vocabulary itself: two words denoting the same thing differ in social connotations. For the most part, however, the style factors appear not in the words themselves but in verb endings.

Two considerations are significant in the Korean speech styles:

When talking to a person:

Words have different endings attached to them, determined by the social relationship between the speakers.

When talking about a person:

Words and parts of words are changed to their Honorific form to show special respect to the person discussed. Honorific forms are never used by the speaker to refer to himself or herself.

The following chart presents the major styles you will be learning in *Elementary Korean*:
Major Speech Styles in this Book

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speech Style</th>
<th>(Regular)</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>해어요</td>
<td>하세어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formal</td>
<td>합니다다</td>
<td>하십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most of the basic expressions of this lesson are in the Honorific Polite 하세요 (haseyo) style, but a few of the more stylized greetings and expressions are in the Formal 합니다다 (hamnida) style. Most of the Korean you will learn in this course will be in the Polite 해요 (haseyo), Honorific Polite 하세요 (haseyo), Formal 합니다다 (hamnida) or Honorific Formal 하십시오 (hasimnida) styles, the most useful styles for everyday conversation.

1.2. Word Classes

Korean words, like those of every other language, fall into several different kinds or classes; the words are classified according to the way they are used in sentences.

Korean VERBS (the words at the end of nearly every basic sentence in this lesson) are INFLECTED WORDS: they consist of a basic part, the BASE, to which various ENDINGS are attached in order to make them mean different things. For example, we have already had the following three sentences:

24. 실행합니다, 

실행했습니다.

---

Excuse me (for what I am doing).

Excuse me (for what I did).

Excuse me (for what I'm about to do).

These sentences are requests.

Korean NO ENDINGS attach relationship used in English, which are also found in [some] English. As a vocabulary variously: be, is, are, books

This is another sign that they are plural, as we have seen most English

Lesson One / 8
The verb in each case is the same. Here, it means do, and its basic part is 합- [ha-]. Only the endings are different, and it is these that give the changes in meaning.

Here are a few sentences of another kind (you are not meant to learn those you haven't seen—just look at them).

25. 용서하세요.
yōsohaseyo. Please forgive me.

26. 안녕히 가세요.
anonyō[h]i gase yo
Good-bye (Go in peace).

27. 안녕히 계세요.
anonyō[h]i gese yo.
Good-bye (Stay in peace).

28. 책을 보세요.
cʰemil bose yo.
Please look at your books.

These sentences all have different verbs, but the verbs all end the same way: -세요 [-seyo]. This ending (a combination of suffixes) makes each verb express a polite request.

Korean NOUNS, on the other hand, are not inflected; they can be used with no endings attached to them. Instead, PARTICLES are optionally added to show the relationship between the noun and the rest of the sentence, much as prepositions are used in English. The great majority of Korean nouns correspond to English words which are also nouns, e.g. 책 [cʰemk] book, 질문 [cʰilmun] question, 영어 [yǒŋyo] English, etc. This is not always the case, however!

As a vocabulary item, 책 [cʰemk] means book. In sentences, however, we translate it variously: book, a book, the book, some books, any books, the books, and books. This is another way of saying that Korean has no words corresponding to a(n), the, some, any, and that Korean nouns may have a plural meaning without any explicit sign that they are plural. To be sure, it is possible to make Korean nouns unambiguously plural, as we will learn later, but it is not imperative to do so, as it is imperative with most English nouns. In English, book, for example, is specifically singular; whereas, books is specifically plural. This rule applies every time they are used.
Exercises

Exercise 1: English Equivalents

Give English translations of the following Korean sentences, and practice them until you recognize them and can pronounce them fluently.

1. 그래요?
2. 고맙습니다.
3. 또 왔겠습니까.
4. 김 선생님, 안녕하세요?
5. 수고하십시오.
6. 만나서 반갑습니다.
7. 여보세요!
8. 살해했습니다.
9. 처음 뵐겠습니다.
10. 들어오세요!

Exercise 2: Korean Equivalents

Give the Korean equivalents of the following English sentences. You may like to do this as a written drill when you have learned the alphabet, but you should also do it orally, as fast as you can.

1. Pleased to meet you!
2. Well done! (Thanks for doing such a good job.)
3. How are you, Mr. Lee?
4. Welcome!
5. Don't mention it!
6. It's time to stop.
7. See you later.
8. Do excuse me!
9. Good-bye. (As you are leaving, to someone staying behind.)
10. Good-bye. (To someone who is working.)
Exercise 3: How Do You Respond?

Picture yourself in the following situations. What would be the correct response to make, in Korean?

1. Someone crashes into you in the supermarket and apologizes profusely.
2. The phone rings. You pick it up.
3. Your boss introduces you to a friend of his whom you have not met.
4. What might the friend respond?
5. You are told some unusual news. How might you express your surprise?
6. You meet a friend in the street and wonder if she is well.
7. Someone visits your house, and you tell them to come in and sit down. How do you say that?
8. Class is nearly over, but your teacher seems oblivious to the time. What could you say to him?
9. You cut across the view of several Koreans watching television on your way through a room.
10. Someone gives you flowers.
11. You are asked whether or not you are married. Say yes or no, as appropriate.
12. You arrive late for an appointment. (Find a different expression to the one you used for number 9.)
14. What other expression might you have used?
15. If he were someone with whom you were on formal terms, how might you have said good-bye?
In Lesson Two we have the second set of Basic Expressions, most of which would be used in the classroom. In the Lesson Notes you will find out more about the characteristics of Korean sentences, plus there is a section on Korean names. The exercises cover both Lesson One and Lesson Two. Once again, the key expressions are given in the Korean script, then again in romanized transcription to help you memorize them.

**Basic Expressions II: Korean Script**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 하나 들 셋 넷 다섯 여덟 일곱 여덟 아홉 열</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: 여덟 eight is actually pronounced 여덟.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 시작할까요?</td>
<td>Shall we start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 시작합시다.</td>
<td>Let's begin. (teacher to students)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. 책을 보세요.</td>
<td>Please look at your books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation: 책 book(s); 책을 book(s) (as direct object); 보세요 please look (at it).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 첫 페이지를 보세요.</td>
<td>Please look at the first page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation: 첫 the first; 페이지 page; 보세요 please look (at it).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. 책을 보지 마세요.</td>
<td>Please don't look at your books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 다음 페이지를 보세요.</td>
<td>Please look at the next page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesson Two / 12**
8. 듣기만 하세요.
   Explanation: 듣기 the act of listening, 듣기만 only listening; 하세요 please do it.
   Just listen, please.

9. 따라 하세요.
   Explanation: 따라 following, repeating 하세요 please do, please say.
   Please repeat (after me).

10. 다 같이.
    Explanation: 다 all; everyone; 같이 together (pronounced 가지)
    All together.

11. 다시 한번.
    Explanation: 다시 again, once more, 한번 once, one time
    One more time.

12. 대답하세요.
    Explanation: Please answer.

13. 말하세요.
    Explanation: 말 language, word(s), speech, talking; 말(을) 하세요 please speak; please say it. 말씀하세요 is even more polite.
    Please say it or Please talk.

14. 다시 말씀해 주세요.
    Explanation: 다시 again, once more, 해주세요 Please favor me by doing it, i.e., Please do it for me.
    Please say it for me again. Please repeat.

15. 크게 말씀해 주세요.
    Explanation: 크게 so that it is big; loudly.
    Please say it loudly.

16. 천천히 말씀해 주세요.
    Explanation: 천천히 please say it slowly.
    Please say it slowly.

17. 한국말로 하세요.
    Explanation: 한국말로 in Korean; 하세요 Please say it.
    Please say it in Korean.

18. 영어로 하지 마세요.
    Explanation: 영어로 in English; 하지 마세요 Please do not do it.
    Please don't say it in English.

19. 알겠어요?
    Explanation: 알겠어요 will you know? Might you know? Would you know?
    Literally: Will you know? Might you know? Would you know?
    Do you understand?

20. (네) 알겠어요.
    Explanation: (네) 알겠어요 I will know, I would know, I'll probably get it.
    Literally: I will know. I would know. I'll probably get it.
    (Yes,) I understand.

Lesson Two / 13
21. 아니오, 모르겠어요.  No, I don't understand.
Literally: I don't or wouldn't know.

22. 질문 있어요?  Any questions?
Explanation: 있어요? Does there exist...? or Do we/you have...? 질문 question

23. 내, 있어요.  Yes, I have (a question).
Yes, there are.

24. 아니요, 없어요.  No, I haven't.
Explanation: 없어요. There does not exist or I/we/one does not have.

25. 십분만 쉽사다.  Let's rest for ten minutes.
Explanation: 십 ten (a different word, but with the same meaning as 열); 분 minute; 십분 10 minutes; 십분만 (to the extent of) 10 minutes; ten minutes (only); 쉽사다 Let's rest.

26. 늦어서 죄송합니다.  Sorry I'm late.
Explanation: 늦어서 I am late, and so... Because I am late, ...

Basic Expressions II: Transcription

1. hana, tul', set, net, tasot
   1, 2, 3, 4, 5
   yosot, il'gop, yodol', ahop, yol'
   6, 7, 8, 9, 10

2. šidžak hal'kka yo?
   Shall we start?

3. šidžak hapššida.
   Let's begin.

4. č'angil bose yo.
   Please look at your books.
5. čʰop pʰeidžiril bose yo.
   Please look at the first page.

6. čʰagil bodži mase yo.
   Please don't look at your books.

7. taim pʰeidžiril bose yo.
   Please look at the next page.

8. tikki man hase yo.
   Just listen, please.

9. ttara hase yo.
   Please repeat.

10. ta gacʰi.
    All together.

11. taši hanbon.
    One more time.

12. ta=qad ap hase yo.
    Please answer

13. mar[h]ase yo.
    Please say it.

    Please say it for me again.

15. kʰi=ge mal’ssim[h]adžuse yo.
    Please say it loudly.

    Please say it slowly.

17. hangugmal’lo hase yo.
    Please say it in Korean.

18. yoqoro hadži mase yo.
    Please don't say it in English.

19. al’gesso yo?
    Do you understand.

20. [ne] al’gesso yo.
    Yes, I understand.

Lesson Two / 15
Lesson Notes

2.1. Korean Sentence Patterns

The basic sentences of Lessons One and Two give you an opportunity to observe, over and over, a basic characteristic of Korean sentences: the verb expression comes at the end. This means, of course, that in a great many cases the order of things in a Korean sentence is different from the English order. Translated directly, Sentence Twenty-one of Lesson One, for example, 시간이 다 됐습니다 is The time all has-become; Sentence Fourteen of this lesson, 다시 말씀해 주세요 is Once again saying-please give and so on.

In Korean sentences, the order of the various parts is determined not by grammatical function, as it is in English, but by importance: the closer a word is to the end of a Korean sentence, the more important it is. At the very end comes the one element that is indispensable: the verb. Many Korean sentences contain nothing but a verb.

먹었어요.  
I've eaten.

This verb says in a formal way that someone ate, past tense; that is all it specifies. But the sentence is grammatically complete. It would not be wrong to add a subject and/or an object, but it would be superfluous.

Aside from countries, cities, or diary styles, the letter h after the last word is the most noticeable difference. Having or night. Having that! You both.

As a general rule, in a Korean sentence, the subject comes as subject, the object both

A conversational Korean with the subject in the middle here must be translated as subject, in English as object.

In other words, Korean sentences are more like English than they are like English.

2.2. Korean Names

In Sentence Twenty-one, the family name Kim. The family names are used after the family name. Kim. If the way there a number, [peekो보]
Aside from commands, it is a rare English sentence that has no subject. Telegram, postcard, or diary style are special cases: *Arrive 9 a.m. Monday. Will bring George. Saw a movie last night. Having a wonderful time.* Even commands not uncommonly have subjects: *You stop that! You boys get out of here!*

As a general rule, the nearer a word or phrase appears to the beginning of a Korean sentence, the less essential it is—the more readily expendable. The order of such elements as subject, object, time, place, is determined by the emphasis assigned to each; and one thing that makes them less necessary is earlier mention in a context.

A conversation beginning with a sentence like *John bought a new suit* could continue in Korean without further mention of either *John* or *the suit*. Notice that in English both of these must reappear, as pronouns if not in their original form: *When did he buy it? The Korean equivalent could say simply When bought? and still be complete.*

In other words, old information, if repeated at all, comes at or near the beginning of a Korean sentence, while newly supplied information clusters near the verb. If subject and object both offer new information, the object is more likely to come next to the verb.

### 2.2. Korean Names

In Sentence Three of Lesson One you saw the expression 김 선생님 [kim sonseumnim] Mr. Kim. This illustrates another difference in English and Korean word order: the title is used after the name.

김 [kim] *Kim* is a family name. As a general pattern, a Korean has two names: first of all the family name, then this is followed by a personal or given name. Most of the family names have one syllable, though there are some which have two: for example, 황보 [hwaboo], 독고 [tokko]. If the family name has one syllable, the personal name most commonly has two: 이승만 [isigman] Syngman Rhee, 김일성 [kimilson] Ilsung Kim. If the family name has two syllables, the personal name has only one, so that either way there are usually three syllables in the full name. There are exceptions to this pattern, and a number of Korean names have only two syllables: for example, 허용 [huyung], 백철 [paekchoel], 김구 [kimgu] etc. The following table shows some common Korean surnames:
It is often possible to guess the gender of a person on the basis of the syllables used in their given name. Some syllables tend to occur only in males’ names, others only in females’ names.

### Syllables used typically in names for males:
- **Chol** [čʰol], **Ho** [ho], **Te** [tʰe], **Sok** [sok], **Jun** [čun], **Hun** [hun], **Sop** [sop], **Sik** [sik], **Pom** [pom].

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cholmin</th>
<th>Cholsu</th>
<th>Cinho</th>
<th>Choroho</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Holchol</td>
<td>Sokhon</td>
<td>Hongso</td>
<td>Sokčun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyokčun</td>
<td>Tʰegyŏn</td>
<td>Čehun</td>
<td>Čoqho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tʰešho</td>
<td>Čunsop</td>
<td>Iksop</td>
<td>Kyušik</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Syllables used typically in names for females:
- **Mi** [mi], **Hiy** [hiy], **Na** [na], **Ae** [ae], **Ča** [ča], **He** [he], **Son** [son], **Kyo** [kyo], **Suk** [suk].

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sumi</th>
<th>Mina</th>
<th>Kyŏng</th>
<th>Sindža</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Činhian</td>
<td>Hiydžoŋ</td>
<td>Minhiy</td>
<td>Čoqhiy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is only a general rule of thumb. Some syllables (like 제 [hiy]) can occur in both male and female names.

A title always comes at the very end, and can be used with a full name (surname plus given name) or just a given name, in the case of 씨, or with full name or just surname, in the case of 선생님.

Poktong Kim (a male's name), or
Kimboktong ssii

Chinhee Chang (a female's name), or
Chandzinhiiy ssii

Mr. Poktong Kim (Honorific)

Mr. Kim (Honorific)

Unless you are on intimate terms with somebody, it is usual to refer to that person in Korean by their name plus a title. One of the most commonly used titles is the little word 씨, which comes after a person's full name, or just after the given name. This is the title you should use when referring to your peers.

When talking to, or about, children, it is customary to attach the diminutive suffix -이 [i] to given names ending in a consonant. Thus, if 김복동 [kimboktong] is a small boy, you would refer to him as just 복동이 [poktongi], without a title. If the child's name ends in a vowel, as in the girl's name 진희 [chinhiy], it simply stays the same. No diminutive suffix is added.

Lesson Two / 19
선생 [sonsænim] is a word that, on its own, means teacher. With the honorific particle 님 [nim] after it, it functions as a title of respect honoring the person whose name it accompanies. You should use this title with the names of people to whom you wish to show courtesy. You should not use it with your own name. When you introduce yourself, for example, simply give your name My name is Adams or I'm Helen Baker with no title. 님 [nim] is an honorific suffix which you can add to titles (but not to 손 [ssi]) to show an added degree of respect or deference. Nowadays, Koreans seem to use 선생님 [sonsænim] more than plain 선생 [sonsæ].

When otherwise unspecified, the title 선생님 [= sonsænim] is usually translated Mr., but sometimes the context tells you that Mrs. or Miss would be more appropriate. To say specifically Mrs. or Miss you have to say something like Mr. Kim's wife 김 선생님 부인 [kim sonsænim buin] or Mr. Kim's daughter 김 선생님 딸 [kim sonsænim ttal], or else you can simply do it in English 미세스 김 [miseesigim], 미스 김 [migim]. If the Kims are parents, an informal way of saying Mrs. Kim is to refer to her as the eldest child's mother, e.g., 복통이 어머니 [pokto ni omoni] Mrs. Kim (who is Poktong-i's mother), and similarly Mr. Kim may be referred to as 복동이 아버지 [pokto ni abozi] Mr. Kim (who is Poktong-i's father). Foreigners sometimes mistranslate Mrs. Kim as 김부인 [kim buin] rather than 김 선생님 부인 [kim sonsænim buin]. In Seoul you will often hear 사모님 [samomin] used for Mrs. or Madam (instead of so-and-so 선생님 부인). 사모 [samo] is an elegant word that originally means one's teacher's wife, but it can be used to refer to the wife of your superior or of any prominent man. The usual way for you to refer to your teacher's wife is 사모님 [samomin].

There are a number of ways to say you in Korean, and the most polite way is by using a title or name plus title. As your study of the language proceeds, you will notice that Korean is in many respects less direct than English. Sentence Three of Lesson One (김 선생님 안녕 하세요?) is an example of such indirectness; it seems to say How is Mr. Kim?, but it means How are you, Mr. Kim?

주의! Caution!

While it is acceptable to use either the Western order or the Korean order when giving a Western name, you should always use the Korean order with Korean names, e.g.,

애니 스미스입니다 or 스미스 애니입니다 I'm Annie Smith,

but only

김복동입니다 I'm Poktong Kim.

Lesson Two / 20
Exercises

Exercise 1: Practicing Responses

Which response(s) are appropriate to the sentence given? First read aloud the sentence itself, then all the responses given. Finally, read the initial question or sentence along with the correct response(s) and translate.

1. 안녕하세요?
   a. 네, 안녕하세요.
   b. 반갑어요.
   c. 아니요, 반갑아요.

2. 처음 뵙겠습니다.
   a. 일례합니다.
   b. 먼저 반갑습니다.
   c. 미안합니다.

3. 미안합니다.
   a. 들어 오세요.
   b. 수고하세요.
   c. 아니요, 반갑아요.

4. 고맙습니다.
   a. 네.
   b. 천만에요.
   c. 또 만나요.

5. 안녕히 가세요!
   a. 안녕히 가세요!
   b. 안녕히 계세요!
   c. 또 뵙겠습니다.

6. 질문 있어요?
   a. 없어요.
   b. 있어요.
   c. 다시 말해 주세요.

7. 알겠어요?
   a. 네, 알겠어요.
   b. 아니요, 모르겠어요.
   c. 네, 있어요.

8. 시작할까요?
   a. 시작합시다!
   b. 반갑습니다.
   c. 시간이 다 됐습니다.

Lesson Two / 21
Exercise 2: Match the Appropriate Response

Match each sentence in the left-hand column with an appropriate response from the right-hand column. You may use some responses more than once; others not at all.

1. 고객님, 안녕하십니까.
   a. 안녕히 가세요!
2. 안녕하세요?
   b. 네, 있어요.
3. 질문이시에요?
   c. 아니오, 편찮아요.
4. 실례했습니다.
   d. 참만하세요.
5. 알겠어요?
   e. 네, 고객님.
6. 그래요?
   f. 네, 그래요.
7. 안녕히 계세요.
   g. 모르겠어요.
8. 미안합니다.
   h. 네, 안녕하세요?
9. 실례했습니다.
   i. 네, 알겠습니다.

Exercise 3: Remember the Korean Equivalent

Give the Korean equivalents of the following English expressions.

1. Shall we start?
2. Excuse me.
3. Yes, let's begin.
4. All together. Please say it in Korean.
5. Do you have any questions?
6. Please don't look at your books.
7. Could you repeat, please?
8. Say it loudly, please.
9. Please answer. Do you understand?
10. Please look at the next page.
11. Please speak slowly.
12. I don't understand.
14. Really?

Lesson Two / 22
Exercise 4: Practice with Korean Names

Practice reading the following Korean names. Can you guess whether the person is male or female?

1. 김정호  2. 이석현  3. 박은미  4. 최홍석
5. 장혜경  6. 남경자  7. 홍진호  8. 허미선
9. 서지선  10. 배경희  11. 조철민  12. 노호철
13. 정재훈  14. 임석준  15. 오경애  16. 강승자
17. 안철호  18. 한수미  19. 심진희  20. 윤철수

Exercise 5: Vocabulary Drill

The vocabulary items you have learned at this point are not easy to separate from the short sentences in which they appear. One way you can drill yourself on the words is to make use of a technique that will be valuable throughout the lessons.

After you have completed the job of memorizing the basic sentences, copy each one on a 3-by-5-inch index card or slip of paper. Write the Korean on one side, the English on the other, with one sentence to a card. Shuffle the cards thoroughly, arranging them so that you see only the Korean side. Run through them as rapidly as you can, reading aloud the Korean and immediately calling off the English equivalent.

Reshuffle and repeat, looking only at the English. See whether the Korean comes instantly to your mind. By this method, you can be the judge of whether you have completed your work on Lessons One and Two.
Lesson Three

Korean Writing and Basic Pronunciation

By the time you reach this lesson, it is time to learn the Korean writing system. This section is not intended as a complete training course on writing with the Korean alphabet, but the lesson gives you important information about Korean pronunciation and the way in which the written signs are tied to the spoken sounds. It is important that you take pronunciation seriously. Your aim should ultimately be to sound like a native Korean speaker. Good pronunciation of Korean is difficult, but the rules formulated in this and the following lesson should help you a great deal throughout your Korean studies, if you take time to learn them properly. The rules are demonstrated by Korean words, most of which you won't have seen before. You are not intended to learn all these off by heart; they are there merely to illustrate the different sounds of Korean. In the exercises there is plenty of practice with both writing and pronunciation.

한글 The Korean Writing System

Han'gul, the Korean writing system (한글 in Korean), is one of the most scientifically designed and efficient scripts in the world. Promulgated in 1446 by the sage King Sejong 세종 under the title Hunmin Ch'ong'um 훈민정음 (meaning The Correct Sounds for the Instruction of the People), han'gul was the product of deliberate, linguistically informed planning. The Korean script is remarkably original and has resisted all attempts to prove its relationship to this or that other system of writing.

As you will soon see, Han'gul is also quite easy to learn; the Korean language, on the other hand, is quite difficult. We have so far avoided the term alphabet. Han'gul is usually referred to as an alphabet, and that it is, but with one special quirk: rather than arranging its letters in a row from left-to-right and writing on-line, e.g., ㅂ ㅏ ㄴ ㅣ for han'gul, han'gul has always written Korean words in syllable blocks 한글.
Now let us look at the letter shapes that comprise the alphabet and learn how to pronounce Korean. To the left of each of the letters we have given an English sound approximation. This is not intended as a rigorous romanization system, but merely as a rough equivalent in English of the Korean letter. Always imitate your Korean instructor.

The Vowels

Korean has the following vowel signs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a as in father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>aw as in thaw, uh as in uh-oh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>oo as in boot (push your lips out!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>a as in bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>e as in bet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u as in pull (don’t push your lips out!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>ee as in feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we as in wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wi</td>
<td>French oui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iy</td>
<td>u as in pull followed by ee as in feet, pronounced as one sound. At the beginning of a word, pronounce as Korean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Three / 25
By adding a stroke to the first six vowel signs above, the Koreans produced the combination y plus VOWEL. For example, ø (as in get) becomes ye (as in yes).

- ya ㅏ: ya as in yard
- yo ㅗ: yo as in yonder
- yo ㅛ: yo as in yoga (push your lips out!)
- yu ㅜ: yu as in yuletide (push your lips out!)
- ye ㅔ: ye as in yap or Yankie
- ye ㅖ: ye as in yep

Finally, the following combinations give w plus VOWEL.

- wa ㅗ: the first vowel sound of wide or wow
- wo ㅜ: wo of wonder
- wa ㅛ: wa of wax
- we ㅔ: we of wet (that is, it has the same pronunciation as ø above)

This concludes all the vowel sounds possible in Korean.

Any written syllable in 한글 (han'gul) must begin with a consonant sign. In order for these vocalic signs to form the nucleus of a syllable (remember that the Koreans write in syllable blocks), they must attach to the side of or below a consonant sign. This means that even when the syllable contains no spoken consonants (when it begins with a vowel in pronunciation), you still have to start the syllable with the little circle ो representing a zero consonant.

To put it another way, when a spoken syllable begins with any of the vowel sounds above, Han'gul treats the initial consonant as a zero and writes it as such.

Lesson Three /26
The Consonants

We begin by continuing to look at the o symbol. This zero sign has a clever alter ego: whereas at the beginning of a syllable (before a vowel) it functions as zero (telling the reader "Don't pronounce me!"), at the end of a syllable it represents the sound ng as in English singer. When it is not zero (before a vowel sound) this sound is always as ng in English sing, never as in finger (fin-ger). E.g.,

\[ o=0, a=\text{ang} \]

Since Korean has no basic syllables of the type o plus VOWEL (qa, qu, etc.), this is quite a clever economy and one good example of the ingenuity of Han'gul.

Now look at the rest of the consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonant</th>
<th>Sound Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>p as in park, but relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pʰ</td>
<td>p as in pow! with lots of aspiration (air)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pp</td>
<td>p as in spa, tense, tight, no aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t as in tall, but relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʰ</td>
<td>t as in talk! with lots of aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tt</td>
<td>t as in star, tense, tight, no aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>k as in kiss, but relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kʰ</td>
<td>k as in kill! with lots of aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kk</td>
<td>k as in skill, tense, tight, no aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>ch as in chill, but relaxed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chʰ</td>
<td>ch as in change! with lots of aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tch</td>
<td>tch as in matchmaker, tense, tight, no aspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m as in mother</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sounds n, l, h, s and ss require a bit more explanation and a bit more care in learning to pronounce them.

n — n as in no
For n the tongue tip touches the upper teeth, as in most continental European languages. Be sure to make your double nn and double mm double!

| 물 | body |
| 눈 | paddy field |
| 아버 | perhaps |
| 아니 | no |
| 삼만 | thirty thousand |
| 언니 | older sister of a female |

l — l as in lamp and feel or r as in Spanish
The Korean consonant 램 will sound different to you in different environments.

a) At the beginning of a syllable (in foreign words only), it is rolled like Japanese or Spanish r.

라디오 

b) Between vowels (including my plus vowel) or vowel and h (which often drops), it is also rolled (like the Spanish r).

아래 a-rae
일원 i-rwon
설화 sor[h]wa

| 아래 | below |
| 일원 | one wôn (Korean currency) |
| 설화 | tale, legend |

c) When double, make a long, and somewhat soft l.

돌라요
실례 (실례)

| 돌라요 | I don't know |
| 실례 | discourtesy |

d) When before a consonant, or final before a pause, you will hear a clear, soft l as in English feel.

물
실망

| 물 | water |
| 실망 | disappointment |
h  

- **h** as in hope
  a. An initial **h** is made with friction in the throat, as when blowing to steam up glasses.
  
  하나  
  one
  
  b. But before **y** or **i**, the friction may be between the middle front of the tongue and the hard palate, giving a soft sound close to the German **ich**.
  
  혈  
  **tongue**
  협  
  **strength**
  
  c. And between voiced sounds (**m, n, l** and vowels) the **h** is weak, and often drops, especially when preceded by **ŋ** (the **ng** sound in **singer**) or **n** and followed by **i** or **y**.
  
  시험  
  [시험 or 시험]  
  **examination**
  안녕히  
  [안녕히]  
  **in good health**
  많이  
  [많이]  
  **much, lots**
  진히  
  [저녀]  
  **[not] at all**

s  

- **s** as in soul, but relaxed and somewhat weak.

ss  

- **s** as in soul (but more tense and tighter than the single **s**)  
  a. The single **s** is very weak, something less than an English **s**, and often followed by a little puff of local air. You should practice trying to make your Korean **s** breathy. The double **ss** is very strong, something more than an English **s**, with tension in the throat and tongue.
  
  살  
  **flesh**
  쌀  
  **hulled rice**
  
  b. Before **어** and **어**, most speakers change the **s** to a soft **sh**. Some speakers do this also for the tense **ss**.
  
  시  
  poem
  씩  
  seed
  쉽시다  
  let's rest

*Lesson Three* /29
More on the Three-way Consonants

As you have seen above, for the sounds like p, t, k, č, Korean exploits a three-way contrast based on aspiration and tenseness where English exploits just a two-way contrast based on voicing. That is, where English has just pig/big, tug/dug, kit/git, choke!joke, Korean has three types of consonants in each position. The question of voiced/voiceless (English p vs. b, t vs. d, k vs. g and ch vs. j) is irrelevant to Korean: it is not distinctive.

The basic series in Korean is:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
  p & t & k & č & s \\
\end{array}
\]

By doubling each of these consonants, the Koreans write the tense, unaspirated series:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
  pp & tt & kk & čč & ss \\
\end{array}
\]

The best way to master their pronunciation is to start off pronouncing an s-cluster, e.g., spa, and then suppress the s. Alternatively, it is useful to fake a French or Spanish accent when pronouncing these: French and Spanish p, t, k are much less aspirated than in English.

Next, by adding a stroke to the basic plain series, the Koreans write their lax, aspirated series:

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
  pʰ & tʰ & kʰ & čʰ & ŋ \\
\end{array}
\]

These sound like English pike, take, kite, cheat, but with more aspiration than in English. If you hold a piece of paper three inches from your mouth, it should jump away when you pronounce the aspirated sounds. On the other hand, if you hold a piece of paper three inches from your mouth and pronounce the tense, unaspirated (double) sounds, the paper should not move at all. When you pronounce plain p, t, k, č, the piece of paper should move slightly, but not nearly as much as with the aspirated sounds. It is useful to practice producing these consonants one after the other, with one of each three types.

We can now draw out the comparison between the three different types of consonants for each one in turn.

Lesson Three / 30
Three kinds of initial \( p \):  
- Lax: 불 fire  
- Lax Aspirated: 박 grass  
- Tense Unaspirated: �kıl horn  

Three kinds of initial \( t \): (Tongue tip touches upper teeth!)  
- Lax: 달 moon  
- Lax Aspirated: 망 mask  
- Tense Unaspirated: 마 daughter  

Three kinds of initial \( k \):  
- Lax: 개 dog  
- Lax Aspirated: 개 digs out  
- Tense Unaspirated: 개 sesame  

Three kinds of initial \( ch \):  
- Lax: 자 요 sleeps  
- Lax Aspirated: 자 요 is cold  
- Tense Unaspirated: 자 요 is salty  

The Alphabet in a Dictionary  

Korean dictionaries employ a bewildering variety of han'gul alphabetizations. However, they can be divided into two broad types. The first is most common in South Korea, the second is official in North Korea. The South Korean dictionaries imbed all the vowel signs under the letter \( o \); whereas, the North Korean dictionaries relegate the letter \( o \) in its zero reading (i.e., preceding vowels) to the back of the dictionary. In the early stages of your course you will not need to consult a dictionary often, but later you will do so considerably. You will probably want to refer to this section at a later stage.
1. Republic of Korea (South Korea)

(Read from left to right.)

Consonant Order

\[
\begin{align*}
k & \rightarrow (kk \, ㄲ) \\
\ell & \rightarrow \text{m} \, \text{ㅁ} \\
\ell & \rightarrow \text{p} \, \text{ㅂ} \\
(\text{ss} \, \슈) \, \text{ㅇ} & \rightarrow \text{čs} \, \text{s} \, \text{ㅈ} \\
k^h & \rightarrow \text{t} \, \text{ㅌ} \\
p^h & \rightarrow \text{h} \, \text{ㅎ} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Note: For an explanation of the letters in parentheses, see the next page.

Vowel Order (within the zero consonant sign \(\emptyset/-\emptyset\) &)

\[
\begin{align*}
a & \rightarrow \text{a} \, \text{ㅏ} \\
a & \rightarrow \text{ya} \, \text{야} \\
o & \rightarrow \text{e} \, \text{ㅐ} \\
o & \rightarrow \text{yo} \, \text{요} \\
u & \rightarrow \text{w} \, \text{ㅔ} \\
u & \rightarrow \text{wi} \, \text{위} \\
i & \rightarrow \text{i} \, \text{ㅖ} \\
i & \rightarrow \text{iy} \, \text{의} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Lessons Three / 32
There are three variations on the South Korean ordering:

1. Ignore double consonants except where entries are otherwise the same.

2. Ignore double consonants except where entries are otherwise the same, but keep a difference for final double consonants analogous to that of the singlets:

   k  l
   kk  lk
   ks  lm
   n  l
   nč
   ls

3. Recognize double consonants both initially and finally, making separate places for the initial double consonants (as in parentheses on the preceding page), and keeping the final double consonants in the order shown in item two.

2 Democratic People's Republic of Korea (North Korea)

In North Korea, the doubled consonants and all the vowel signs are placed at the back of the dictionary:

Consonant Order

k  l
m  p
č
kk  tt

Lesson Three / 33
Vowel Order (within the zero consonant sign 〇 )

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Stroke</th>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>Stroke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>아</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>이</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ae</td>
<td>애</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>예</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>와</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>위</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How To Write Korean
Stroke Orders

It is important to learn correct stroke orders from the beginning. Let's begin with two general principles of Korean writing.

1. Everything horizontal moves from left to right. This applies to the movement of individual strokes, as well as to writing a sequence of letters (e.g., the consonant first, then the vowel).

2. Everything vertical moves from top to bottom.

How to combine a consonant with a vowel:
Any written syllable in 한글 must begin with a consonant sign. This means that even when the syllable contains no spoken consonants (i.e., when it begins with a vowel in pronunciation), the syllable contains a zero consonant sign 〇.

A vowel letter and its representative stroke combination therefore, are:

Example: 

The final consonant a block for a syllable is therefore, approximated.

Lesson Three / 34
pronunciation), you still have to start the syllable with the little circle ○ representing a zero consonant, as you have learned.

A vowel letter is placed to the right of, or below the initial consonant. Possible patterns, therefore, are as follows:

![Possible patterns](image)

**Examples:**

가
키
더
조
유
그

The final consonant of a syllable (if it has one) is placed directly below the preceding consonant and vowel, regardless of how they are arranged (i.e., whether horizontally or vertically).

The possible combinations are:

![Possible combinations](image)

**Examples:**

감
짐
德尔
 좀
윤
글

A block forming a syllable with three letters (C - V - C) will naturally be more congested than a block with two letters (C - V). However, each syllable (or block) should be approximately of the same size, regardless of the number of letters contained in it. It is, therefore, necessary to make the size of the letters smaller when a syllable contains three
or four letters, as you can see in the examples below (don’t worry about how to pronounce these for now—they are here to demonstrate written syllable composition). Those syllables with four signs in them will have the shape:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CV</th>
<th>CC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

읽
삼
👀

Structure of Written Syllables

These notes concern the written structure of syllables, that is, how syllables are recorded and dealt with in the writing system, not how they are pronounced.

1. If the vowel letter has a long vertical stroke, then the vowel letter is written to the right of the initial consonant sign.

김 남 섬 박
kim nam som pak

한 가 머 시
han ka mo shi

2. If the vowel letter has a long horizontal stroke, then the vowel letter is written below the initial consonant letter.

송 문 동
song mun tong

노 두 조
no tu ço

3. If the vowel letter has a long vertical stroke, then it is written to the right of the initial consonant sign.

4. It is possible to have the vowel letter in both positions.

But note that each syllable is a separate unit, and so the Korean writing system

Structure of Written Syllables

The following table shows these writing forms.

1. Sometimes, if we:

한나
hanan

제
čei
3. If the vowel letter has both a long vertical stroke and a long horizontal stroke, then the (diphthong) vowel letter is written in such a way as to fit under and to the right of the initial consonant letter.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{박} & \text{권} & \text{위} & \text{원} \\
\text{kwak} & \text{kwon} & \text{wi} & \text{won} \\
\text{취} & \text{체} & \text{최} \\
\text{čwi} & \text{čwe} & \text{čwe}
\end{array}
\]

4. It is possible to have a written syllable with two consonant letters filling the final position.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{있} & \text{묵} & \text{없} & \text{점} \\
\text{it--} & \text{muk--} & \text{an--} & \text{čom--}
\end{array}
\]

But note that in the pronunciation, the double ss, double kk, nd and lm at the end of each syllable are reduced to t, k, n, m respectively. This is because no vowel yet follows, and so the Korean is stuck on a consonant which he cannot yet release.

**Structure of Pronounced Syllables**

The following notes concern only the structure of pronounced syllables, not written forms.

1. Sometimes, Korean pronounced syllables follow Korean written syllables closely, if we ignore the technicality that an initial o is a consonant, but not pronounced.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{한나} & \text{어머니} & \text{제이} & \text{여기} \\
(CV-CV) & (V-CV-CV) & (CV-V) & (V-CV)
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{hana} & \text{omoni} & \text{čei} & \text{yogi}
\end{array}
\]
2. At other times, the written structure tries to preserve consistency where, in pronunciation, changes occur. Thus, the final consonant of a preceding syllable is pronounced as the initial consonant sound of the following syllable when the following syllable begins with a vowel.

받아요 CVC-V-V in writing, CV-CV-V pa-da-yo in pronunciation

먹어요 CVC - V - V in writing, CV-CV-V mo-go-yo in pronunciation

Note that in earlier times, when the Korean spelling system was less consistent, these would have been written 바다요 and 먹어요.

산이나 CVC - V - CV in writing, CV-CV-CV sa-ni-na in pronunciation

있어 VC - V in writing, V-CV i-sso in pronunciation

3. If the syllable has two different final consonants before a vowel-initial syllable, then the first of these closes the first phonetic syllable, and the second begins the following phonetic syllable.

읽어요 VCC-V-V in writing, VC-CV-V il-ly-go-yo in pronunciation

쏙어요 CVCC-V-V in writing, CVC-CV-V dol-mo-yo in pronunciation

Lesson Three /38
Exercises

Exercise 1: The Korean Script—Review and Practice

Practice your writing and stroke orders in the empty boxes under Practice.

1. The Vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter Shape</th>
<th>Sound Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Practice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ㅑ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>ㅔ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yo</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>ㅛ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yu</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>ㅠ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ㅡ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2. The Consonants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter Shape</th>
<th>Sound Value</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Practice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>k, -g-</td>
<td>기역</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>니은</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄷ</td>
<td>t, -d-</td>
<td>디근</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄹ</td>
<td>l/r</td>
<td>리울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>미음</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>p, -b-</td>
<td>비음</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>s/š, -t</td>
<td>시웃</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅇ</td>
<td>Ø/-ŋ</td>
<td>이응</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>č, -dž-, -t</td>
<td>지웃</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅊ</td>
<td>čʰ, -t</td>
<td>치웃</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>kʰ, -k</td>
<td>키울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>tʰ, -t</td>
<td>티울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ</td>
<td>pʰ, -p</td>
<td>펑울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅎ</td>
<td>h, -t</td>
<td>헤울</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following exercises should be able to times and then:

1. 케나
2. 파키
3. 라오
4. 이라
5. 뉴질
6. 덤마
7. 타이
8. 칠레
9. 리비
10. 인도
11. 말리
12. 쿠바
13. 리히
Exercise 2: Recognizing Country Names

The following Korean words written in Han'gul are the names of countries which you should be able to recognize. To practice your writing in Han'gul, copy each one out three times and then write down the English equivalent.

1. 케냐
2. 프랑스
3. 파키스탄
4. 멕시코
5. 라오스
6. 그리스
6. 이라크
8. 핀란드
9. 뉴질랜드
10. 싱가포르
11. 덴마크
12. 네덜란드
13. 타이
14. 폴란드
15. 칠레
16. 스웨덴
17. 리비아
18. 브라질
19. 인도네시아
20. 캐나다
21. 말레이시아
22. 니카라구아
23. 쿠바
24. 베트남
25. 리히텐슈타인
26. 레바논
Exercise 3: Recognizing Loans from English

The following Korean words have been borrowed from English, and you should be able to recognize them. To practice your writing in Han’gul, copy each one out three times and then write down the English equivalent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>라디오</td>
<td>radio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>버스</td>
<td>bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>택시</td>
<td>taxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>피아노</td>
<td>piano</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>캥거루</td>
<td>kangaroo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>토스트</td>
<td>toast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>테니스</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>바나나</td>
<td>banana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>카메라</td>
<td>camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>쓰세지</td>
<td>trisectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>레몬</td>
<td>lemon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>체즈</td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>케이크</td>
<td>cake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>아이스크림</td>
<td>ice cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>카세트</td>
<td>cassette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>인터뷰</td>
<td>interview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>호텔</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>골프</td>
<td>golf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>토마토</td>
<td>tomato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>나이트클럽</td>
<td>night club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>데레비전</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>타이어</td>
<td>tire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>컴퓨터</td>
<td>computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>햄버거</td>
<td>hamburger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>트럭</td>
<td>truck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>샌드위치</td>
<td>sandwich</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 4: Practicing Consonant Contrasts

Practice pronouncing the two-way and three-way consonant contrasts in the words below. Do not worry about the meanings—many are nonsense words anyway.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. 탈</th>
<th>2. 팔</th>
<th>3. 까</th>
<th>4. 칼</th>
<th>5. 키</th>
<th>6. 피</th>
<th>7. 조</th>
<th>8. 터</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>띠</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>기</td>
<td>비</td>
<td>조</td>
<td>디</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>덧</td>
<td>발</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>까</td>
<td>띠</td>
<td>조</td>
<td>터</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>까</td>
<td>발</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>갈</td>
<td>기</td>
<td>비</td>
<td>조</td>
<td>디</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>9. 차차</th>
<th>10. 코코</th>
<th>11. 피피</th>
<th>12. 두두</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자자</td>
<td>고고</td>
<td>빠빠</td>
<td>두두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자자</td>
<td>고고</td>
<td>비비</td>
<td>두두</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아차</td>
<td>위위</td>
<td>우주</td>
<td>어어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아차</td>
<td>위위</td>
<td>우주</td>
<td>어어</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>17. 안가</th>
<th>18. 운짜</th>
<th>19. 인짜</th>
<th>20. 원짜</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안가</td>
<td>운짜</td>
<td>인짜</td>
<td>원짜</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안가</td>
<td>운짜</td>
<td>인짜</td>
<td>원짜</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Three / 43
Further Pronunciation Guidelines

There are certain pronunciation rules which you must learn for the Korean language and it is best to get these out of the way towards the start of the course. Words may be pronounced differently than they appear. Nonetheless, there are a number of rules that apply universally when certain letters appear together, and learning these rules will help you not to make those mistakes that betray you as a foreigner! You may need to refer to the various sections in this lesson again later in the course—they will provide a valuable reference.

### 4.1. Automatic Voicing of Plain †, 꼯, 꽃, 꼴

The normally voiceless sounds shown by the single †, 꼯, 꽃, 꼴, 꼳, 꼴, 꼤 (which have a light puff of local air when they are at the beginning of a word) are voiced between voiced sounds (i.e., vowels, 얀, 음, 음, 음, 음, 음, 음) so that they will sound like 꼳, 꼳, 꼳, 꼳.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아버지</td>
<td>a-bo-dzi father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>단아요</td>
<td>ta-da-yo closes it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>애기</td>
<td>a-gi baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담배</td>
<td>tam-bae cigarettes, tobacco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안동</td>
<td>an-dong (name of a city)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중국</td>
<td>čun-guk China</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈비</td>
<td>kal-bi ribs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>안주</td>
<td>an-dzu food to go with alcoholic drinks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Four / 44
4.2. Non-release of Final Consonants

Korean never allows its speakers to release a consonant at the end of a syllable unless they have to. Korean speakers have to release a consonant at the end of a syllable when the word is followed by (1) a particle or ending that begins with a vowel, or (2) by the special verb -이예요 it is.

In the case of final unreleased p, t, k, it is often difficult for English speakers to hear the consonant—it sounds as though the Koreans swallow their consonants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final /-P/</th>
<th>Final /-K/</th>
<th>Final /-T/ (usually from /ʌ/)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>긴 hoof</td>
<td>국 soup</td>
<td>꽃 kut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>긴 pus</td>
<td>옥 jade</td>
<td>햇 ot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입 mouth</td>
<td>목 throat</td>
<td>목 mot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3. The Gang of Seven: ㄱ ㄲ ㄴ ㄷ ㄸ ㄹ ㅁ ㅂ ㅃ ㅅ ㅆ ㅇ ㅈ ㅉ ㅊ

The only consonants that can be pronounced at the end of a syllable in Korean are the following seven: ㄱ ㄲ ㄴ ㅁ ㅂ ㅃ ㅅ (see above) and ㅈ ㅉ ㅊ p, t, k (but remember: Korean doesn't allow you to release them unless you have to).

When the basic form of a word ends in something else other than these seven consonants, the "something else" must be reduced to one of these seven consonants, unless the word is followed by (1) a particle or ending that begins with a vowel, or (2) by the special verb -이예요 it is....

| 앞에 ape  | in front   | 앞 [압]  | front   |
| 앞에 kapsin | as for price | 앞 [갑] | price   |
| 앞에 pakke | outside   | 앞 [박] | outside |
| 앞에 tal"gieyo | it's a chicken | 앞 [타] | chicken |
The reduction rules are as follows.

Original sounds | Reduce to
--- | ---
ㅂ, 푸, 빼 | ㅂ (or to ㅁ; see section 4.5 below)
ㄱ, ㅋ, ㄲ | ㄱ (or to ㄲ; see section 4.5 below)
ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅉ | ㄷ (or to ㅎ; see section 4.5 below)
ㅅ, ㅈ, 종 |}

Note how many different consonant sounds an unreleased ㅌ can disguise. In particular, note that an unreleased ㅅ gets pronounced as ㅈ. In fact, most unreleased ㅅ-sounds you will hear in Korean are really a final ㅅ in disguise.

4.4. Other Gang of Seven Situations

The final-reduced forms in ㅂ, ㅌ, ㅋ and ㅅ, 所所, ㄴ are used not only when the word is before a pause, but also before words beginning with consonants and even before words beginning with vowels, provided the following word is not a particle (e.g., the subject particle ใ or the locative particle ㅑ) or the special verb -이 레요  it is ... .

닭고기 → 닭고기  [닭고기]  takkogi  chicken (as meat)

Lesson Four / 46
4.5. When the Gang of Seven Gets Up Your Nose

When p, t, k precede m or n (or 1 pronounced as n due to the rule in section 4.6 below), they (that is, p, t, k) are pronounced as m, n, η, respectively.

Remember that in Korean, p, t, k cannot be released in this position. When you have an unreleased p before a nasal sound like m or n and want to pronounce the next syllable, the p has nowhere else to go but up your nose. Once a p goes up your nose, it becomes an m. The same logic holds for unreleased t turning into n and unreleased k turning into η.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>할니다</th>
<th>[할니다]</th>
<th>does it [Formal style]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>단는다</td>
<td>[단는다]</td>
<td>closes it [Plain style]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹는다</td>
<td>[먹는다]</td>
<td>eats it [Plain style]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>심육</td>
<td>[심육]</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독립 → 독립</td>
<td>[독립]</td>
<td>independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>합리 → 합리</td>
<td>[합리]</td>
<td>rationality, reason</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that this rule also applies to any t which has been reduced from tʰ, cʰ, ḍ, s, ss, or even h:

발 + 만 → [반만] → [반만] the field only

Lesson Four/47
The case of h changing to (t and then) n like this is an unusual one, and we will alert you to it again when you learn about verbs that end in final h.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Explaination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>숨 + 만</td>
<td>[숨만]</td>
<td>[숨만] the charcoal only sunman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낮 + 만</td>
<td>[낮만]</td>
<td>[낮만] daytime only nanman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벽 - + -네</td>
<td>[벽네]</td>
<td>[벽네] he's taking it off! ponne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있었 - + -네</td>
<td>[있었네]</td>
<td>[있었네] she had it! issonne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.6. Peculiarities of the Korean 꼴**

1. When n is next to l (n.l or l.n, where the period represents a syllable break) a double ll is pronounced.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Explaination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일년</td>
<td>[일년]</td>
<td>one year illyon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신라</td>
<td>[신라]</td>
<td>Silla (ancient Korean state) silla</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. When preceded by a consonant other than l or n, the 1 is pronounced as n.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Radical</th>
<th>Explaination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>심문</td>
<td>[심문]</td>
<td>psychology simni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because you are not using the actual process of nasalization to produce groups of sound, we have listed at the end of this lesson the actual pronunciation of the examples in the previous lesson. But just as a caution, we want to make you aware of the process so that you will understand the sound changes which take place in various words.

**4.7. Additional Notes**

If the final consonant of a syllable in a Korean word is followed by a vowel, it is pronounced differently. For example, a consonant t, c, k, s, and p at the end of a syllable is pronounced as t, c, k, s, or p respectively in the following words: pp. tt, cc, kk, ss, pp. In the case of the word 심리 실문 psychology simni, the s is pronounced as n.
When followed by t, č, or š in words borrowed from Chinese, the 1 has the effect of doubling these to tt, čč, and šš, respectively.

철도 [철도] 철로
railway

결정 [결정] 결정
decision

설사 [설사] 설사
diarrhea

Because you have no way of telling which words are originally from Chinese and which are not, and because the Korean writing system ignores these differences between spelling and actual pronunciation, we will alert you to any such pronunciation details (by rewriting the pronunciation in 한글 in square brackets) when you first learn new words in the vocabulary lists at the beginning of each lesson.

4.7. Automatic Doubling

If the final sound of the preceding syllable is p, t, or k, the single voiceless consonants p, t, č, k, s ㅂ, ㄷ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ are automatically doubled in pronunciation so they sound like pp, tt, čč, kk, ss ㅃ, ㄸ, ㅉ, ㄸ, ㅉ.

약방 [약방] 약방
drugstore

작다 [작다] 작다
is little [Plain style]

먹자 [먹자] 먹자
let's eat [Plain style]

덥다 [덥다] 덥다
is hot [Plain style]

입자 [입자] 입자
let's wear it [Plain style]

십삼 [십삼] 십삼
thirteen

Lesson Four/49
4.8. Leap-frogging

The Korean ʰ h can leap over a following plain ʰ, ʰ, ʰ, ʰ to yield a corresponding aspirated sound in pronunciation (ʰ, ʰ, ʰ, ʰ). In other words, the aspirated consonants ʰ, ʰ, ʰ, ʰ can be considered as equivalent to combinations of ʰ + ʰ (or ʰ + ʰ), ʰ + ʰ (or ʰ + ʰ), ʰ + ʰ (or ʰ + ʰ), respectively. Here are some examples.

ʰ + ʰ → ʰ:  좋- + -고 → 좋고, pronounced 조코 is good, and...
ʰ + ʰ → ʰ:  좋- + -다 → 좋다, pronounced 조타 is good

4.9. Pronunciation of ʰ before i

The Korean ʰ (aspirated ʰ) is palatalized to ʰ when it occurs at the end of a morpheme or word and is followed by ʰ.

같이 together is pronounced 가치
발 field + ʰ (subject marker) is pronounced 바치

4.10. Long and Short Vowels

Many Koreans distinguish words by pronouncing a vowel as long or short: 일 ʰ one, 일 ʰ (i.e., with a long vowel) affair, work. But even for those speakers, vowel length is often suppressed, especially when not at the beginning of a phrase, so that you will often hear short vowels in words that have basically long vowels.

Modern Korean spelling does not indicate the long vowels, and we do not show them in the body of this textbook. But you should at least be aware of this contrast. Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SHORT VOWELS</th>
<th>LONG VOWELS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>밴</td>
<td>evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>굴</td>
<td>oyster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>눈</td>
<td>eye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Four / 50
In the case of long and short ㅓ, many speakers pronounce the long ㅓ with the tongue in a considerably higher position than it is in for the short ㅓ, as something resembling English uh in uh-oh. Many speakers hollow the back of the tongue to make the short ㅓ so that it sounds rounded like the vowel sound that many people use in English saw, song, dawn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Vowels</th>
<th>Long Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거리 &quot;kawrie&quot;</td>
<td>거리 &quot;kuhri&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연기 &quot;yawn'gi&quot;</td>
<td>연기 &quot;yuhn'gi&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postponement</td>
<td>performance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.11. The Names of the Korean Letters

The han'gul vowel signs do not have special names of their own. Instead, they are called by the sounds they represent. For example, ㅏ is called "wa". Each han'gul consonant sign, however, has its own name based on the ingenious mnemonic device of beginning and ending the name with the consonant letter in question.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>기역</td>
<td>kiyok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>니온</td>
<td>niin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>디근</td>
<td>tigit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td>리율</td>
<td>riil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅚ</td>
<td>미율</td>
<td>miim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅟ</td>
<td>비율</td>
<td>pip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅛ</td>
<td>시옷</td>
<td>šiot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅕ</td>
<td>이옹</td>
<td>iing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅝ</td>
<td>지옷</td>
<td>čiit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅞ</td>
<td>치옷</td>
<td>čiit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅢ</td>
<td>키움</td>
<td>kiiik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅣ</td>
<td>티울</td>
<td>tiiit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅤ</td>
<td>피울</td>
<td>pip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅥ</td>
<td>헤울</td>
<td>hiit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Four / 51
The tense, or 'doubled' consonants, have the same name as the corresponding plain series consonant, preceded by double.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TJ</td>
<td>ssaqgiyok</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UL</td>
<td>ssagdigit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>ssagbiip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>ssagiiot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>ssagdziit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TJ</td>
<td>ssaqgiyok</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UL</td>
<td>ssagdigit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>ssagbiip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>ssagiiot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>ssagdziit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises: Pronunciation

Exercise 1: Voicing Practice

1. 가방
2. 안주
3. 지도
4. 방법
5. 감자
6. 만두
7. 두부
8. 공장
9. 모자
10. 구기
11. 군대
12. 아기
13. 담배
14. 공기
15. 구두
16. 수제비

Exercise 2: Non-release of Final Consonants

Practice pronouncing the following (mostly nonsense) syllables, first saying each one alone, then saying it again, followed by the subject particle 이.

1. 각
2. 면
3. 젖
4. 난
5. 갖
6. 섞
7. 칫
8. 질
9. 깍
10. `님
13. 착
16. `نقص
19. `Cumhurbaşkanı
22. `생

Exercise

1. 합
3. 달
5. 빛
7. 밥
9. 앞
11. 숙
13. 못
15. 작
17. 빌
19. 빗
21. 옷

Lesson Four/52
### Exercise 3: Nasal Assimilation Practice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. 합니다</th>
<th>2. 한국말</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. 달纽带</td>
<td>4. 초등학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 믿纽带</td>
<td>6. 독립</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 밥맞</td>
<td>8. 독립문</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 권문</td>
<td>10. 압록강</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. 숙녀</td>
<td>12. 심리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 못난이</td>
<td>14. 삼만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 작문</td>
<td>16. 부여문</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. 불纽带</td>
<td>18. 꿈만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 빛만</td>
<td>20. 엇날</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 옷만</td>
<td>22. 찾네</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Exercise 4: Cluster Reinforcement Practice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. 잡지</th>
<th>2. 목소리</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. 십자가</td>
<td>4. 엽서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. 철도</td>
<td>6. 담장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. 식당</td>
<td>8. 높고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. 학교</td>
<td>10. 밀자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. 학생</td>
<td>12. 건자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 역사</td>
<td>14. 국방</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 국수</td>
<td>16. 국비</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. 설사</td>
<td>18. 결정</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Four/53*
We now begin the lessons proper. In this first one you will find out how to introduce and address people, identify things and ask simple questions. We also learn vocabulary for countries, nationalities, etc. In the Lesson Notes we cover pronouns, four essential particles, the use of the copula, and the ways in which Korean nouns are used. By now you should be comfortable with 한글, so we discontinue use of the phonetic transcription.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris Murphy and his wife have gone into a Seoul coffee shop. Chris thinks he recognizes someone sitting at a table reading a newspaper:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>크리스</td>
<td>Well—Hello.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>아, 너무 신생님이 오래간만입니다!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크리스</td>
<td>(to Kim) 신생님, (gestures in Eunice's direction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>유니스</td>
<td>유니스에요. 처음 뵐겠습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김</td>
<td>김장기예요. 처음 뵐겠습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크리스</td>
<td>김 신생님이 내 한국말 신생님이예요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>유니스</td>
<td>아, 네. 만나서 반갑습니다.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

cr— Uh—
ar! Well! Ah!!
Long time no see!
we, our.
my NOUN (used where 내 my would sound too
individualistic to a Korean)
is a NOUN
as for NOUN
my (Mr. Kim is not Korean language teacher to anybody
else in Chris' family, so 우리 would not be appropriate)

Dialogue 2

Chris and Eunice join 김 선생님, and they talk a while:

크리스         우리 집 사람은 피아노 선생이에요.
김              아, 그래요? 머찌 선생님은 영국 사람이지요?
크리스         네.
김              부인도 영국분이에요?
크리스         아니오, 영국 사람이 아니에요. 호주 사람이에요.

Notes
NOUN -이지요?
is a NOUN, isn't it? is a NOUN, right? This is a special
form of the copula in -(이)에요. You will learn more about
the ending in -이제요 later.

NOUN 도
NOUN 이 ~ 가
NOUN(이 ~ 가) 아니에요
NOUN, too; NOUN, also
NOUN (as subject)
is not a NOUN

Dialogue 3

They all get up and go, leaving the newspaper on the table. Chris notices an umbrella on the
floor and picks it up.

크리스         (to Kim) 이거 김 선생님 우산이에요?
김              내, 제가예요. 고맙습니다.

Lesson Five/55
Dialogue 4

Chris and Eunice then take 김 선생님 to a special fair of imported goods which Chris has helped to organize at a nearby exhibition center.

김 그래 어느 나라의 외인이에요?
유니스 이거요? 이건 프랑스 외인이에요.
김 그럼, 저건 뭐에요?
유니스 아, 저건 영국 술이에요.
김 무슨 술이에요?
유니스 워스키에요.
김 전부 다 수입품이지요?
크리스 아니오, 저 인삼주는 한국제품이에요.

Notes

그게 that thing equidistant from both of us (as new information, and abbreviated from 그것이)
어느 NOUN? which NOUN? what NOUN? (out of several)
NOUN의 NOUN NOUN's NOUN (note exceptional pronunciation of 의 as 에!, Some speakers pronounce 의 as 오, but this is substandard.)
이거 this thing (abbreviated from 이것은)
뭐 what? (abbreviated from 무엇이)
what kind of/what sort of NOUN?
that NOUN over there.

Vocabulary

Countries, Languages and Nationalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Россия</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Canadian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Mandarin</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>Cantonese</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign country</td>
<td>(bulgarian)</td>
<td>foreign country</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

People and Places

교수(님) professor (honorific)
의사 doctor, physician
은행 bank
은행원 banker
회사 company
회사원 company employee
집 house, home
사람 person
선생(님) teacher (honorific)
아내 or wife (my)
집사람

Lesson Five / 57
People and Places (cont.)

사장 (님)  - company president (honorific)
친구  - friend
학생  - student
가수  - pop-singer
-씨  - polite title for name
외교관  - diplomat
박사 (님)  - Dr., Ph.D. (honorific)

Things

제품  - manufactured good(s)
신문  - newspaper
잡지  - magazine
책  - book
공책  - notebook
분필  - chalk
연필  - pencil
블펜, 펜  - ball-point pen
성냥  - match(es)
담배  - cigarette(s)
말  - language, words
종이  - paper
칠판  - blackboard
와인  - wine
술  - any alcoholic drink
위스키  - whisky
전부  - the whole thing, total
다  - all, everything
전부 다  - everything, all of it
수입품  - imported goods
인삼  - ginseng
인삼주  - ginseng wine
피아노  - piano
우산  - umbrella

Miscellaneous

나
우리
누가
누구
무엇, 뭐
아니요
그렇지만
그러면
그럼
이 NOUN
그 NOUN
저 NOUN
무슨 NOUN
어느 NOUN
-곳
-분

Lesson Five

5.1. Present Tense

In general, they do use formal language on the social scene, especially in formal conversations and when addressing them in the social hierarchy.

Korean has...
Lesson Notes

5.1. Pronouns in Korean

In general, Koreans use pronouns much less in conversation than we do in English. When they do use pronouns, they have to choose between a number of different words depending on the social relationships of the people involved (this is probably why they avoid using them in the first place).

Korean has the following first-person pronouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>We</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>나</td>
<td>우리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저 Humble</td>
<td>저희 Humble (pronounced 저이)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Five / 59
It is always considered more polite to use the humble forms in polite conversation with people you may not know very well or with people deserving of deference for whatever reason.

주의 Caution!
Of all the pronouns, Koreans avoid words for you the most, and so should you.

The following table shows some of the ways to say you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>너</th>
<th>Intimate</th>
<th>FIRST NAME/FULL NAME + 씨</th>
<th>Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>당신</td>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>자네</td>
<td>Semi-Formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE ( + 님 )</td>
<td>Polite</td>
<td>SURNAME/FULL NAME + 선생님</td>
<td>Polite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You are always safest using no pronoun at all. If unavoidable, try title ( + 님 ) or surname + 선생님. Of the items above, you should avoid less polite terms like 너, 자네, and 당신. The latter pronoun tends to be used mostly between spouses, but some Koreans occasionally address foreigners in this manner (as a kind of translation equivalent for English you), so you may hear it directed at yourself, too. When talking about or addressing your student peers, whether here or in Korea, the safest pattern is name + 씨, e.g. 만호 씨 he (Manho) or you (Manho).

Technically speaking, Korean has no proper third-person pronouns at all. Instead, for he, she, it, they, Korean uses an expression equivalent to that person, that woman, that thing, those people, etc. For now, what you need is:

그 사람

that [aforementioned] person

(he, him; she, her; they, them)

그것

that [aforementioned] thing, same as it

5.2. Sentence Subjects and Topics

As you have seen, Korean nouns commonly appear in particle-marked phrases. The particle after a noun sometimes has no exact English equivalent but rather assigns a grammatical function to the noun.

Lesson Five /60
Two such particles are the SUBJECT PARTICLE 이~가, which puts FOCUS or a spotlight on the noun before it (often the subject), and the TOPIC PARTICLE 은~는, which has three functions:

1. to mark its noun as the sentence topic (what the sentence is about)
2. to point up a contrast, or
3. to mark its noun as old or given or assumed information

Some particles have two pronunciations or shapes: one when they come after a word that ends with a consonant, the other after words ending with vowels. Except for the reversed order of things, this is completely analogous to the English indefinite article *an*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before Consonant</th>
<th>Before Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a man</td>
<td>an apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sandwich</td>
<td>an orphan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a headache</td>
<td>an idea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subject and topic particles are both TWO-SHAPE PARTICLES. The subject particle is pronounced 이 when it comes after a consonant and 가 when it comes after a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After Consonant</th>
<th>After Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>책이</td>
<td>잠지가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부인이</td>
<td>아내가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제품이</td>
<td>내가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇이</td>
<td>누가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필이</td>
<td>종이가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>magazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>product</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what?</td>
<td>who?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Caution!

나 I, 너 You, 저 I (Humble) and 누구 who? have altered shapes when they come before the subject particle 이~가. These are:

내가, 네가, 제가 and 누가.

Remember that 이 and 가 are the same word: it is a word with two pronunciations. The same is true of the topic particle, which is pronounced 은 after consonants and 는 after vowels.
A Korean sentence subject (noun plus the particle 이 ~ 가) usually corresponds to an English sentence subject. So, often, does a Korean topic (noun plus the particle 온 ~ 는). They are usually interchangeable, but you should be sensitive to their different nuances, as explained below.

When you first mention a subject—when it is new information—you usually attach 이 ~ 가, the subject particle, to it. Thereafter in the same context, if you repeat the subject at all, it has become old information and usually has the particle 온 ~ 는. The following exchanges exemplify this:

1. A. 이것의 무엇이예요?  
   B. 그것은 우산이에요.  
   What's this?  
   That's an umbrella.

2. A long, long time ago, a man [사람] lived in the mountains. One day, he [그 사람] came down the mountain, and ...

Once a particular subject has been mentioned there is no requirement in Korean to keep referring to it in subsequent sentences; you can just drop it. However, if the subject is mentioned again, then it would be followed by the topic particle (marking the noun as old information), not the subject particle. To repeat, the subject of conversation does not need to be referred to continuously, but if it is mentioned again then it is marked as old information by the topic marker 온 ~ 는.

We can say, therefore, that the topic particle 온 ~ 는 is a particle that flags the word or phrase in front of it as the least unknown ingredient or oldest piece of information in your communication—the part you would be most likely to drop if you wanted to make your sentence brief. For this reason, the topic phrase nearly always comes at the very beginning of the sentence. As you have learned, the important things in a Korean sentence tend to accumulate toward the end, near the verb—the single indispensable element. The dispensable things are what the other person is most likely to know already and are put closer to the beginning, where they are missed the least if they are dropped out altogether.
You can create topics from (mark with 돋~ 돋) any element in the sentence (except the verb) by pulling the element out of place, saying it first, and putting 돋~ 돋 on it. To give you the feel of this de-emphasis, here is a single English sentence showing how each element might appear as the topic of a Korean sentence, and the emphasis of the resulting order:

*That student is studying Korean at school now.*

a. That student 돋~ 돋 is studying Korean at school now
   “What about that student? As for that student . . .” The new information is the nature of the activity, not who is doing it.

b. Now 돋~ 돋 that student is studying Korean at school.
   Talking about what’s happening now: “That student is studying Korean at school.”

c. At school 돋~ 돋 that student is now studying Korean (there).
   To mention what’s going on at school . . .

d. Korean 돋~ 돋 that student is studying [it] at school now.
   “What I want to say about the Korean language is . . .”

Another common function of the particle 돋~ 돋 is to mark CONTRAST, which occurs when each of two parallel statements (one of which may be implied rather than stated) begins with a topic. The contrast between them is pointed up.

3. 3 *4tt *I
   a. Mr. Kim (he) is a doctor. But (me) I’m an office employee.

The subject particle 어~ 가, on the other hand, puts a spotlight on the noun it follows. It appears most often with subjects that have not been mentioned previously in the context. Certain words, by the very nature of their meaning, rarely appear as Korean topics, but frequently as subjects. These are words that inherently ask for new information, such as 누구 who?, 무엇 what (kind of)?, 무엇 what?, and 어느 which? By the same token, when you answer a question having one of these words, you use a subject to supply the new information, rather than using a topic. For example:

4. 어느 것이 잡지예요? 저것이 잡지예요.
   Which one is a magazine? That one over there is a magazine.

5. 누구 선생이에요? 이분이 선생이에요.
   Who is the teacher? This [esteemed] person is the teacher.

6. 누구 학생이에요? 나가 학생이에요.
   Who is the student? I am the student.
Of course, if the question word occurs outside of the subject or topic, then the subject and topic positions in the sentence are handled as described above. The subject upon its first mention will have 이 ~ 가 and if mentioned thereafter, 은 ~ 는. Here are some examples of this sort of sequence.

7. 이것은 무엇이에요? 그것은 잡지이에요.
   This thing is what? (That thing) is a magazine.

8. 이것은 무슨 책이에요? 그것은 한국말 책이에요.
   This thing is what kind of book? (That thing) is a Korean book.

   The Korean teacher is who? (The Korean teacher) is Mr. Kim.

5.3. The Copula and Equational Sentences

Many of the sentences in this lesson end with a special verb called the COPULA. The copula is pronounced 이에요 after consonants but generally shortened to 에요 after vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After Consonants</th>
<th>After Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>선생이에요.</td>
<td>의사이에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>책이에요.</td>
<td>잡지이에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필이에요.</td>
<td>종이에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성냥이에요.</td>
<td>교수이에요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a teacher.</td>
<td>It is a doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a book.</td>
<td>It is a magazine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a pencil.</td>
<td>It is paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a match.</td>
<td>It is a professor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Note: The shape 에요 is just an abbreviation of 이에요 and sometimes you will hear the full form, even after a vowel.]

The copula is different from other verbs in this respect: it cannot make a complete sentence by itself, but must always have something in front of it—most often a noun expression. It is pronounced as though it were part of its preceding word, like a suffix, and your voice should never pause or hesitate between the noun expression and the copula.

The copula translates the English verb to be (am, are, is) when it means it equals or it is (the same thing as). For this reason sentences ending with the copula are called EQUATIONAL SENTENCES.

Lesson Five / 64
The copula is made negative by the word *아니*, followed generally by the abbreviated form that is normal after vowels: *아니예요*. The noun expression before the negative (but not before the affirmative) copula may, optionally, appear as a subject, i.e., it may have the particle *이*~*가* after it.

10. 신문(이) 아니예요.
   *It isn't a newspaper.*

11. 영국 사람(이) 아니예요.
   *He is not English.*

Negative equational sentences thus can accommodate two subjects, the second of which corresponds to the English complement.

12. 누가 학생(이) 아니예요?
   *Who is not a student?*

13. 그 사람은 일본 사람(이) 아니예요.
   *He isn't Japanese.*

14. 이것이 영어(가) 아니예요.
   *This isn't English.*

5.4. The Particle 도: *too, also, even*

The particle 도 means *too, also, indeed, even*. It puts emphasis on the word before it, with reference to something earlier in the context. The particle 도 (often pronounced *두*) has only one shape regardless whether it follows a vowel or a consonant.

The English words that correspond to the particle 도 fall most naturally at the end of the sentence, so that they may be widely separated from the word with which they belong, as in this example:

15. 그 가수도 한국 사람이예요.
   *That pop singer is a Korean, too.*

In a negative sentence, English substitutes *either* for *too*, but in Korean 도 still does all the work.

16. 이것은 한국 제품이예요. 저것도 한국 제품이예요.
   *This is a Korean product. That is a Korean product, too.*

Lesson Five / 65
17. 이것은 수입품이 아니에요. 저것도 수입품이 아니에요.

This isn't an import. That isn't an import either.

5.5. Expressing Possession with the Particle 의

The particle that is spelled 의 (but pronounced 엠) is a one-shape particle: it is always the same, whether it comes after a vowel or a consonant. Its function is to link noun expressions together in such a way that the first one modifies, describes, or limits the meaning of the second one. The instances you have observed illustrate the possessive meaning of 의.

18. 남 선생님(의) 종이에요?

Is it Mr. Nam’s paper?

19. 어느 분(의) 잡지에요?

Whose [which esteemed person's] magazine is it?

20. 김 선생님(의) 것에요, 의사선생님(의) 것에요?

Is it Mr. Kim’s or is it the doctor’s?

In this usage the particle corresponds to the English suffix -s: John’s, Mr. Cooper’s.

English pronouns, of course, are made possessive in other ways: I — my, you — your, he — his, and so on. Even who plus ’s undergoes a spelling alternation: whose. In Korean, the following possessive pronouns are also somewhat irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MY (Plain/Intimate)</th>
<th>MY (Humble/Polite)</th>
<th>YOUR (Plain/Intimate)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>내</td>
<td>계</td>
<td>네</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The form 내 my is actually a combination of 나 I and the possessive particle 의 run together. Likewise, 계 is from 저 + 의 and 네 is from 너 + 의. It is also perfectly acceptable to use the unabbreviated sequences of 나의, 저의, and 너의.

주의!

Note that it is not possible to abbreviate 나의 NOUN and 저의 NOUN my NOUN to 나 NOUN and 저 NOUN, respectively.

Lesson Five / 66
Quite often a possessive meaning is present in phrases even when there is no 

그 사람 우산
김 선생님 담배

that person's umbrella
Mr. Kim's cigarettes

In effect, there are three different ways to make a possessive construction, as indicated below.

a) NOUN 의 NOUN
b) NOUN NOUN

c) NOUN [squeeze!] NOUN

Chris' teacher
your wine
yours (your thing)

By “squeeze” here is meant the following: the pronunciation of initial 

비, 씨, 스, 그,ㅅ  

in the second member of some NOUN + NOUN 
pairs like 것 thing in (c) can double (in pronunciation, but not in writing) 

for no good reason.

An important difference between English and Korean is that Korean sentences do not 

usually end with possessive phrases of the kind This is mine, as English sentences sometimes 
do, because the particle 의 must have another noun expression after it. This may be the 

unspecific quasi-free noun 것 the thing, the one, which in this usage corresponds to the 

English possessives in such sentences as This is the teacher's and Where is Mr. Dewey's? 
The following examples illustrate the point.

21. 그것은 선생님(의) 위스키예요.
That whiskey is the teacher's. [Lit.: That thing is the teacher's whiskey.]

22. 그 위스키는 선생님(의) 것이에요.
That whiskey is the teacher's (thing).
You must not say something like:

*그 위스키는 선생님의예요.

Here are some further examples of the possessive particle.

23. 이집이 영진 씨(의) 집이예요?
   *Is this house Youngjin's?

24. 이것은 일본말 선생님(의) 연필이요.
   *This is the Japanese teacher's pencil.

25. 저 엉덩이 누구(의) 엉덩이예요? 제것이예요.
   *Whose newspaper is that? It's mine.

26. 저 담배가 어느 분(의) 것이예요? 제 것이예요.
   *Whose cigarettes are those? They're mine.

5.6. Nouns

It was pointed out in Lesson One that Korean nouns usually correspond to English nouns. Correspondence of vocabulary is one thing, and correspondence of sentence patterns is another. Korean sentences in general are less specific than English sentences. A key spot where this difference shows up is in what strikes us as an omission of pronouns from Korean sentences, particularly subjects and topics.

As emphasized already in section 5.1., it is especially important to be cautious about addressing the second person, i.e., saying you. The person you are addressing may be called, respectfully, 선생님 or 김 선생님. Or you may use a professional title, like 박사님 you (who are a Ph.D.) or 김 박사님 you (Dr. Kim). All of these can also be used for the third person, so that a given sentence containing such an expression is, when seen or heard out of its context, ambiguous.

Korean nouns are used in sentences in one of the following four positions.

1. Before particles
   A particle after a noun shows its grammatical relationship to the rest of the sentence.

2. Before the copula
   A noun plus the copula means is (the same thing as) NOUN, in the formula
   \( X \text{ is } NOUN \), or \( X \text{ is } NOUN \).
3. Before another noun
   See below for explanation.
4. By itself (absolute)
   [Note: Korean nouns are sometimes used by themselves, with nothing but a pause after
   them, in absolute position, usually at the beginning of a sentence like a topic. You will learn
   more about this later.]

Nouns are used to modify or describe other nouns. Such noun-plus-noun phrases as 영국
and 한국 are quite familiar to you. Names of nations (e.g., 영국 England, 한국 Korea) combine in such phrases as these.

영국 사람
   Englishman (England-person)

한국말
   Korean (Korea-language)

You have seen instances of the latter phrase, 한국말, in turn being used to modify a third
noun.

한국말 책
   Korean language book (teacher, student)

Some nouns are used more frequently as modifiers of other nouns than by themselves. Then
there is a special group of nouns used only before other nouns. These are PRE-NOUNS, and
you have learned the following in this lesson.

무슨 (담배)      what kind of (cigarettes)?
어느 (것)        which (thing)?
이 (것)           this (thing)
그 (것)           that (thing)
저 (것)           that (thing), yonder

Another special group of nouns are used only after such pre-nouns (or after other modifying
elements). These are called QUASI-FREE NOUNS, since they seem to be free to do
everything except start a sentence.

(그) 것
(그) 곳
(그) 분

(that) thing
(that) place
(that) esteemed person

Lesson Five / 69
Exercises

Exercise 1: Manipulating Two-shape Particles

To practice making a quick choice of shapes when using two-shape particles, say each of the following words aloud (together with its English meaning). Say it again with the subject particle 〜가 after it; then with the topic particle 〜는 after it. Finally, add the copula in -이에요〜에요 so that you have a sentence It is . . . . Do you remember what each word means?

아내 한국말 남편 선생
러시아 사람 선문 연필 나
잡지 일본 사람 분필 러시아
책 이것 부인 담배
철판 그 사람 학생 술
종이 친구 사람 의사
선생님 중국말 영어 미국
저 홍콩 수입품 우산

Exercise 2: Complete the Sentence

Complete 김 선생님's sentence below in Korean, using each of the expressions in the list below. Repeat the entire sentence each time. Then write each one again, making it negative as in 미피 선생님's sentence.

김 선생님: 저 사람은 (이)에요.
미피 선생님: 저 사람은 (이〜가) 아니에요.

1. Japanese [person].
2. a Korean pop-singer.
3. a banker.
4. a Russian student.
5. an American doctor.
6. a company employee.
7. Professor Kim's wife.
8. my friend.
9. my husband.
10. my wife.
11. an English language teacher.

Lesson Five /70
Exercise 3: Complete the Sentences

Now, fill in the blanks of the following two pattern sentences with each of the expressions below, again writing out the entire sequence each time.

김 선생님: 이건 ( 이 가) 아니에요. 그림 왜에요?
머피 선생님: 이건 ( 이 가) 아니에요. 누구 (의) ( 이 가) 아니에요 ~어요?

1. blackboard
2. magazine
3. chalk
4. matches
5. Chinese language newspaper
6. newspaper
7. cigarettes
8. paper
9. ball-point pen
10. pencil
11. Japanese language magazine
12. Russian language book

Exercise 4: Complete the Sentence

Complete this sentence by using each of the following expressions, of course writing out the whole sentence every time.

이 선문은 (가) 가에요.

1. 박 박사님의
2. 박 박사님의
3. his
4. 박 박사님의
5. mine
6. 만호
7. my friend's
8. 수진
9. my husband's
10. my wife's

Exercise 5: Translation into Korean

Translate these sentences into Korean.

1. Is that Mr. Pak's notebook?
2. No, that's not Mr. Pak's.
3. Whose umbrella is it?
4. It's the pop star's.
5. Is Mr. Chang's wife a student?
6. No. She isn't a student. She's a Korean teacher.

Lesson Five / 71
7. Is that foreign student an American?
8. No. He's not an American. He's an Australian.
9. Are these Manho's matches?
10. What country's product is this notebook?
11. That man over there is a Chinese diplomat.
12. This is the Chinese diplomat's Korean language book.
13. Which one is the Russian newspaper?
14. I don't know. Is it that one?
15. Dr. Mogami is Japanese.
16. Is your wife Russian? No, she's not Russian. She's French.
17. Who is that man? He is Professor Chang.
18. What kind of magazine is that? I don't know.

**Exercise 6: Vocabulary Drill**

Each of the following sets of words contains a misfit, a word whose meaning does not fit in with that of the rest. Spot the misfit, and be sure you know why it does not belong. (This drill is best done orally and rapid fire.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. 가수</th>
<th>2. 좋은</th>
<th>3. 일본</th>
<th>4. 선생</th>
<th>5. 중국말</th>
<th>6. 나</th>
<th>7. 성냥</th>
<th>8. 남편</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>의사</td>
<td>분필</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>학생</td>
<td>일본말</td>
<td>당신</td>
<td>의사</td>
<td>부인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행원</td>
<td>연필</td>
<td>영국</td>
<td>교수</td>
<td>영어</td>
<td>우리</td>
<td>가수</td>
<td>아내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은행</td>
<td>러시아</td>
<td>섹</td>
<td>한국</td>
<td>회사원</td>
<td>회사원</td>
<td>교수</td>
<td>침판</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Five / 72*
In this lesson you will learn how to ask for and buy things in a shop, and how to ask directions and locations. You will learn two important verbs of existence and location, and how to manipulate place nouns and the location particle 에. You will also learn how to make nouns specifically plural and how to answer negative questions.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris Murphy has popped into a shop to buy some cigarettes.

아저씨       어서 오세요. 필 드릴까요?
크리스       담배 있어요?
아저씨       네, 있어요.
크리스       성냥도 있어요?
아저씨       아니오, 없어요. 라이타는 있어요.
크리스       그림 담배하고 라이타 주세요.
아저씨       담배는 미국 거 드릴까요?
크리스       아니오, 저 (pointing behind the 아저씨)
아저씨       한국담배 주세요.
크리스       예, 알겠습니다. 여기 있어요.
크리스       전부 얼마에요?
아저씨       천원이에요.
Welcome! (Come in) right away!

Abbreviation of 무엇을 (what? plus object marker)

Shall I give you? You will learn the verb and its ending in a later lesson.
For now, memorize it as part of this dialogue.

Please give me. You will learn the verb and its ending in a later lesson.
For now, memorize it as part of this dialogue.

Here you are, Here it is, Here you go.

Dialogue 2

Eunice is looking for the British Embassy downtown and knows it is near the Plaza Hotel. Little does she know, but she is only yards from the Embassy.

유니스  아가씨, 실향지만, 프라자 호텔이 어디에요?
아가씨  프라자 호텔요? 저기, (pointing) 시청 맞은편에 있어요.
유니스  아, 네. 그러면 영국 대사관은요?
아가씨  영국 대사관요? 바로 이 건물 뒤에 있어요.
유니스  고맙습니다.

Notes

Excuse me, but... (It is a discourtesy, but...)

Memorize this as a handy expression.

What about? How about?

Additional Text for Reading

Lesson Six / 74
## Vocabulary

### Places

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>학교</td>
<td>school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학교</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이대 (이화 여자 대학)</td>
<td>Ewha Women's University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연대 (연세 대학)</td>
<td>Yonsei University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서울대 (서울 대학)</td>
<td>Seoul National University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고대 (고려 대학)</td>
<td>Korea University</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교실</td>
<td>classroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>방</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생회관</td>
<td>student union [building]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>화장실</td>
<td>toilet, restroom, bathroom, washroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커피숍</td>
<td>coffee shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호텔</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>플라자 호텔</td>
<td>Plaza Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>롯데 호텔</td>
<td>Lotte Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조선 호텔</td>
<td>Chosun Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신라 호텔</td>
<td>Shilla Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셰라톤 워커힐 호텔</td>
<td>Sheraton Walker Hill Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하이아트 호텔</td>
<td>Hyatt Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>라마다 올림피아 호텔</td>
<td>Ramada Olympia Hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사관</td>
<td>embassy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영사관</td>
<td>consulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건물, 빌딩</td>
<td>building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교보 빌딩</td>
<td>the Kyobo building, near Kwanghwamun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시청</td>
<td>City Hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공원</td>
<td>park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>괴고다 공원</td>
<td>Pagoda Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올림픽 공원</td>
<td>Olympic Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도산 공원</td>
<td>Tosan Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백화점</td>
<td>department store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>현대 백화점</td>
<td>Hyundai Department Store</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신세계 백화점</td>
<td>Shinsegae Department Store</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Six/75*
Midopa Department Store
Lotte Department Store
market
Great South Gate
Great East Gate
Kwanghwamun, Kwangwa Gate
Chongno (main thoroughfare in Seoul)
Shinch'on (near Ewha, Yonsei and Sogang Universities)
main gate (e.g., of a university)
vicinity
a shop; store
train station
Seoul station, pronounced 서울역
here
there
over there
where

Things or Objects
책상
desk
상, 테이블
table
그림
picture
의자
chair
창문
window
door, gate
tree
가방
bag, briefcase
라이타
lighter
television

People
어머니
mother
아버지
father
부모(남)
parents (honorific)
아이~에
child
아기~애기
baby

Lesson Six / 76
Ways to Connect Sentences

그래서 . . .
나는 학생이예요.
그래서 돈이 없어요.

그래도 . . .
그 사람은 의사예요.
그래도 돈이 없어요.

그리고 . . .
이대는 신촌에 있어요.
그리고 연대도 거기 있어요.

그런데 . . .
책상 위에 가방하고 노트가 있어요.
그런데 벽펜은 없어요.

And so . . ., And then . . ., Therefore . . .
I’m a student.
Therefore I have no money.

Even so; Nevertheless
He’s a doctor.
Even so, he has no money.

And also . . ., And then . . .
Ewha University is in Shinch’on.
And Yonsei University is there, too.

But . . ., And then . . ., By the way . . .
There is a bag and a notebook on the table.
But there is no pen.

Other Items

- 얼마나
- 천
- -원
- 돈
- 노트
- 바로
- 있어요
- 있어요
- 주세요

how many? how much?
thousand
Korean monetary unit
money
notebook (same meaning as 공책)
just, right (below, above, etc.), straight (adverb)
it exists, there is/are
it does not exist, there is not/aren’t
please give

You are also responsible for the Place Nouns listed in section 6.5.

Lesson Six / 77
Lesson Notes

6.1. Existence and Location with 있어요 and 않어요

The English word *be* (*am, are, is*) has a variety of meanings. These are expressed in Korean by a number of vocabulary items.

a. *Be* in the sense that something *equals* or *is the same thing as* something else corresponds to the Korean copula *(으)에요*. Lesson Five dealt with this.

b. *Be* in the sense that something is located somewhere or is existing, on the other hand, is 있어요. The negative is a separate word 없어요. *does not exist, is not located*. These words also mean *there is/are* and *there isn’t/aren’t*.

Here are some pairs of sentences that contrast the meanings of these two types of verbs—equational *(으)에요* and existential *있어요* and *있어요*.

1. A. 채이어요
   B. 채이 있어요
   C. 채(이) 아니에요
   D. 채이 없어요
   
   It's a book. They are books.
   There is a book (somewhere).
   There are some books (somewhere).
   (Someone) has got a book.
   It's not a book.
   They aren't books.
   There isn't any book (somewhere).
   There aren't any books (somewhere).
   (Someone) hasn't got a book.

2. A. 학교에요
   B. 학교에 있어요
   C. 학교(가) 아니에요
   D. 학교에 없어요
   
   It's a school. or They are schools.
   It's at school.
   They are at school. or
   There's (one) at school.
   There are (some) at school.
   They've got one at school.
   It's not a school.
   They aren't schools.
   It's not at school.
   They aren't at school. or
   There isn't or aren't (any) at school.

Note that we can also use the copula to express a location (see Lesson Seven).
3. A. 여기가 어디에요?  What is this (place)?
   [Lit.: This place is what place?]
   B. 여기 어디(에) 있어요? Where in this place is it? or
      Where in this place is there (one)?

The copula -(이)에요, then, has one meaning—identity.

The verb 있어요 and its negative 없어요 have meanings we can label EXISTENCE (there
isn’t or are(n’t)) and LOCATION (isn’t or are(n’t) in a place). A third related meaning
for these—POSSESSION—is discussed in the following section. Here are some further
examples of the location usage.

4. 그 학생이 여기 있어요.  
   The student is here.

5. 대학앞에 시장이 없어요.  
   There isn’t any market behind the university.

6. A. 교실 안에 그림이 있어요?  
   Are there any pictures in the classroom?

   B. 네. 있어요.  
   Yes, there are.
   B’. 아니오, 없어요.  
   No, there aren’t.

7. A. 백화점이 어디(에) 있어요?  
   A’. 백화점이 어디예요?  
   Where is the department store?

   B. 저기 있어요.  
   It’s over there.

8. A. 화장실이 어디(에) 있어요?  
   Where is the toilet?

   B. 원복에 있어요.  
   It’s to your left.

9. A. 여기 호텔이 있어요?  
   Is there a hotel here?

   B. 없어요.  
   (No) there isn’t.

Note that when the thing being asked about is a place, one has two ways of asking its
location (see sentences 7A and 7A’ above). This is not possible with nouns which do not
express a location. *잠자가 어디에요? is impossible for 잠자가 어디에 있어요?

Lesson Six / 79
6.2. Possession with **있어요** and **없어요**

As you have just observed, **있어요** is in one way more limited than its English counterpart. It is equivalent to *be* (*am, are, is*) in only one of its meanings.

At the same time **있어요** is too broad in scope for a single English equivalent. It is the normal Korean way of expressing possession, as conveyed by English *has* (*have*) and *has got* (*have got)*.

10. **돈이 있어요?**  
    either or  
    **Is there money (in some place)?**  
    **Have you [any] money?**

11. **여자친구 없어요.**  
    either or  
    **There aren’t any girlfriends.**  
    **I haven’t got a girlfriend.**

The above two meanings seem quite distinct to people who are accustomed to English vocabulary patterns, but Koreans do not ordinarily draw the distinction. The context usually makes it clear which English translation is more suitable in each instance.

It is not unknown for a Korean sentence of this type to have two subjects, one naming the possessor of an object, the other naming the object possessed, as follows:

12. **내가 애기가 있어요.**  
    **I have a baby.**

Another kind of sentence that might have two subjects, you may recall, is a negative copula sentence: **것이 내 것이 아니에요.** *That isn’t mine.*

But it is more usual in such cases for the possessor to be expressed as a topic, and the things possessed as a subject.

13. **그 사람은 가방이 있어요?**  
    **Does he have a satchel/bag?**

14. **우리는 텔레비전이 없어요.**  
    **We don’t have a television.**

15. **만호는 종이가 없어요.**  
    **Manho hasn’t got any paper.**

Lesson Six / 80
16. A. 센날이 있어요?
Have you got a match?

B. 있어요.
(Yes), I have.

17. 돈이 없어요.
I haven't any money.

18. 나는 가방이 없어요.
I haven't got a briefcase.

6.3. Location Particle 에 in, at

To begin with, take a look at the following examples.

19. 우리는 교실 안에 있어요.
We're in the classroom.

20. 그 사람은 학교에 없어요.
He's not at school.

Korean uses the particle 에 to locate things in space. This single particle 에 conveys the meaning carried by several different English prepositions relating to general location. Perhaps the hardest thing to get used to in Korean is placing the particle after the noun, to correspond to what in English appears before the noun.

After certain nouns that end in 이, 에, or 에, the particle 에 is often not heard. This can happen, for example, in these expressions.

21. 어디 에 있어요?
Where is it?

22. 거기 에 . . .
(In) that place . . .

But this is not true in every case: for example, 사이 에 between and 위 에 on top of.
6.4. The Particle **and, with**

Another single vocabulary item in English, the connective *and*, is translated variously in Korean, depending on its usage. Between Korean nouns, the word for *and* is **하고**.

23. 담배하고 성냥

*-cigarettes and matches*

If English speakers pause when they are giving a list, it is natural for them to do so before the *and*, but the Koreans pause after **하고**. This is because **하고** is a particle, and particles are pronounced as part of the word they follow, like a suffix rather than a separate word.

Until you learn Korean equivalents for *and* in other uses, such as to join sentences, you can use two separate sentences and begin the second with **그리고**.

Note that the particle **하고** can also mean **with**.

24. A. 진영 씨는 어디(에) 있어요?

*Where's Jinyong?*

B. 열방에 남자친구하고 있어요.

*She's in the next room with her boyfriend.*

6.5. Place Nouns

You have seen in this lesson a number of nouns denoting specific place relationships. With **에** *in, at, on* after them, they mean *in* (a certain place relationship). Here is a list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>안에</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속에</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밖에</td>
<td>outside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>위에</td>
<td>above, over, on (top)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밑에</td>
<td>at the bottom, below, under (neath)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아래(에)</td>
<td>below, lower, down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞에</td>
<td>in front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뒤에</td>
<td>at the back; behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처에</td>
<td>near, in the vicinity of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옆에</td>
<td>next to, beside</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Six*/82
These are PLACE NOUNS. They are most frequently used in phrases with other nouns [refer to section 5.6., noun use (3) if necessary].

- 대학교 앞에 (in front of the university)
- 대사관 옆에 (next to the embassy)

It is important to put these nouns in the right order. If the place noun comes before the other noun, the meaning is changed. The place noun modifies the noun that follows it. This point is best illustrated by example. There are many, but the following are typical.

- 문 앞에 (in front of the door)
- 앞문 (the front door)
- 방 앞에 (next to the room)
- 열방 (the next room)

The place noun 사이 (사이에 *between*) by the nature of its meaning usually requires two nouns before it. These are linked with 하고 *and.*

- 학교하고 집 사이에 (between the school and the house)

Some place nouns are also used as time nouns: 사이 can refer to an interval of time as well as of space; 앞 can refer ahead in time (앞으로 *in future*); 안 can mean within (a certain time); and, 다음 most commonly means next (in order or time).
General location is marked with the particle 에.

ее 방에 있어요. *It's in the next room. or* 집에 있어요. *She's at home.*

But Korean has two place nouns — 안 and 속 — for the same more specific English gloss: inside. It is difficult to distinguish the nuances, but 안 tends to mean the inside of loosely filled spaces, for example, a room, a building, a garden—things which generally have more air than substance filling their interior. 속, however, tends to mean the inside of things which are normally well filled or which are easily filled up, for example, a suitcase, a drawer.

Corresponding to such English expressions as *where in this room* (requests for more specific locations), there are Korean phrases like these.

이 교실 안 어디가요? (Where in this classroom?)

책상 위 어디가요? (Where on top of the desk?)

You may have noticed the relationship between a special set of place nouns and the set of noun-modifying nouns you learned.

이 this
그 that
저 (nearby, aforementioned)

여기 this place, here
거기 that place, there
저기 that place, (over) there

You will hear these words occasionally pronounced 오, 고, 조 and 요가, 고가, 조가. These add a connotation of smallness or cuteness this li'l... or of deprecation this ole. Here are further examples of the usage of place nouns.

25. 광화문 근처에는 무엇 건물이 있어요?
   *What kind of buildings are there in the vicinity of Kwanghwamun?*

26. 백화점 건너편에 무엇이 있어요?
   *What is there across from the department store?*

Lesson Six / 84
27. 대학교 정문 앞에 가방가게가 있어요?
   *Is there a briefcase shop outside (in front of) the main gate of the university?*

28. 이 건물 안에 커피숍이 있어요?
   *Is there a coffee shop in(side of) this building?*

### 6.6. More about the Topic Particle 은 ~ 는

This lesson offers more examples of the topic particle in its capacity for reducing or subduing the emphasis of what goes before it. We can put these usages of the topic particle into three general categories: stage setting, contrast, old business.

Stage setting occurs when the topic particle sets the stage for what the sentence is going to be about. It comes after a noun expression and sets it aside as what we are going to talk about.

29. 가방 속에는 무엇이 있어요?
   *Talking about the inside of the bag, what is in there?*

In the case of contrast, two noun expressions or other phrases (about which you want to make contrasting statements or offer differing information) are set aside at the beginning of their respective clauses. Each is followed by the particle 은 ~ 는, to subdue its emphasis so the way is cleared for the important contrasting statements.

30. 원편에는 ... 오른편에는 ...
   *On the left (guess what?!) ... (and) on the right (guess what?!)*

We have seen that one function of 이 ~ 가 is to introduce new business. The first time a subject is mentioned in context, its newness calls for emphasis through marking with the subject particle 이 ~ 가. However, if this subject reappears in the conversation, it comes under the heading of old business. In this case, it appears with the particle 은 ~ 는, which relegates it to the realm of subdued emphasis. In fact, it often happens that the subject disappears altogether.

### 6.7. Answering Negative Questions

If you want to answer a Korean question with yes or no, you do it just as you would in English, so long as the question is an affirmative one. If the question is negative, you use the Korean word for yes to agree with the negativeness, and the Korean word for no to disagree with the negativeness. The resulting usage is the opposite from the English.

*Lesson Six / 85*
31. 가방 속에 담배는 없어요?
Don't you have any cigarettes inside your briefcase?

a. 네, 없어요.
Yes, [I agree with your words] there aren't any.

b. 아니요, 있어요.
No, [your impression is mistaken] there are some cigarettes.

Occasionally there are exceptions, for example, when the question is put in the negative form just to be polite. Here are some further illustrations. Note carefully the difference between the Korean and the English translations.

32.

A. 그 사람은 미국 사람이 아니에요?
Isn't that man an American?

B. 네, 아니에요. 영국 사람이에요.
No, he's not. He's English. (Yes, he's not an American.)

33.

A. 연필이 없어요?
Haven't you a pencil?

B. 네, 없어요.
No, I haven't.

34.

A. 가방(이) 없어요?
Don't you have a bag?

B. 아니요, 있어요.
Yes, I do.

6.8. The Plural Marker 들

Korean nouns are not specific with respect to number. The following sentence conveys information which might correspond to several English sentences.

35. 책 하고 공책 하고 연필이 있어요.
I've got a book, a notebook, and a pencil.
I've got some books, a notebook, and a pencil.
I've got some books, a notebook, and some pencils.
I've got some books, some notebooks, and a pencil.

Lesson Six / 86
And so on, until the mathematical possibilities are exhausted. But if it is really necessary, 
Korean can make nouns specifically plural. (Without using numerals, Korean cannot make 
them specifically singular.) Korean does this by placing 들, a word meaning something like 
group, after them.

선생
선생들

As you might expect, Korean also allows you to put 들 on pronouns, including even those 
which are already plural.

우리, 우리들
저희, 저희들
너희, 너희들
그 사람, 그 사람들

Particles to be used with the plural phrase come after the 들.

The word 들 is uniquely versatile. It may pop up just about anywhere in a Korean sentence 
except on the verb at the very end. Furthermore, 들 need not always refer to the words near 
it. It is used to make explicit that the speaker is talking about (or to) more than one thing (or 
person). Here are some examples.

36. 여러분 오세요!
Welcome! (said to more than person to be explicit that all are welcome)

37. 천천히들 가세요!
Go slow! (said to two or more people going too fast)

38. A. 학생들이 어디에 있어요?
Where are the students?

B. 교실에들 있어요.
They're in the classroom.

Lesson Six / 87
Exercises

Exercise 1: Fill in the Blanks

Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with each of the place expressions listed. Express them in Korean and practice them aloud.

1. 집 _____ 나무가 있어요.
   a. in
   b. outside
   c. in front of
   d. next to
   e. at the back of

2. 만호 씨 공책은 가방 _____ 있어요.
   a. on top of
   b. in
   c. beside
   d. under
   e. to the right of

3. 교보빌딩은 광화문 _____ 있어요?
   a. at
   b. behind
   c. next to
   d. in front of
   e. in the vicinity of

Exercises

Make up two questions of your own and there is something in the sentence, then your two questions.

1. 방
2. 집
3. 교실
4. 방
5. 학교
6. 가방
7. 대시
8. 호텔
9. 백화점
10. 대학

Lesson Six / 88
Exercise 2: Sentence Construction

Make up two sentences with each of the sets of information given below, one indicating that there is something, the other that there isn't. For example, if you were given 32^ and S}-^, then your two sentences would be: 교실에 학생이 있어요 and 교실에 학생이 없어요.

1. 방
2. 집
3. 교실
4. 방
5. 학교
6. 가방
7. 대사관
8. 호텔
9. 백화점
10. 대학교

Exercise 3: Naming Locations

Make Korean sentences filling in each blank five times using the phrases given in (a) - (e), completing the sentences in any way you choose. Practice saying them aloud until you feel sure of them.

1. 수진 씨는 _______.
   a. next to
   b. to the left of
   c. across from
   d. between
   e. to the right of

2. 제 책은 _______.
   a. on
   b. under
   c. just beside
   d. between
   e. inside of

3. 은행은 _______.
   a. beside
   b. right across from
   c. at the back of
   d. to the left of
   e. outside of

4. _______ 공원이 있어요.
   a. in the vicinity of
   b. in front of
   c. between
   d. opposite
   e. behind
Exercise 4: English to Korean Translation

Translate these sentences into Korean and practice them until you can say them fluently.

1. Where are my cigarettes?
2. Are they inside Manho's briefcase?
3. In my briefcase I've got some books, some papers, and a lighter.
4. But I don't have any paper.
5. Here, I have some paper. Have you got a pen?
6. The pen is on the desk.
7. I'm sorry. There isn't any pen on the desk.
8. Is it under the desk? Is it on the television?
9. There isn't any. But I have one in the next room. Excuse me.
10. Here is a pen. It's a Korean pen.
11. Are Manho's cigarettes Korean cigarettes?
12. No. They're American (ones).
13. Professor Park's wife is between Manho and Sujin.
14. Manho is my friend. He's a Korean student.
15. Who is Sujin? Is Sujin a student, too? Is she a company employee?

Exercise 5: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following Korean sentences into English.

1. A. 학교 앞에는 나무가 있어요.
   B. 나무 밑에는 뛰어 있어요? 여기에요?
2. 영전 쌍 부분하고 영전 쌍가 여기 있어요. 만호 쌍은 앞밭에 있어요.
3. 책상 옆에는 그림이 있어요.
4. 첫 선생님은 돈이 얼마 있어요?
5. A. 얼마나예요?
   B. 천원 주세요.
6. 책상 위에는 신흠하고 잡지가 있어요.
7. A. 내 공책이 어디에 있어요?
   B. 미안해요. 다시 한번 말해 주세요. 그리고 천천히 말해 주세요.
8. A. 내 담배는 책상 위 어디에 있어요?
   B. 저 책 바로 밑에 있어요.
9. A. 대사관 근처에는 무슨 건물이 있어요?
   B. 원래에는 호텔이 있어요. 그리고 맨oled에는 시청이 있어요.

Lesson Six / 90
Exercise 6: Possession and Plurals

This exercise is designed to practice the way to say I have and also the explicit plural marker 들. You should use that particle in the following questions whenever it is reasonable to do so. This is for the purposes of this exercise only. Remember that Korean does not need to mark words as explicitly plural in the way that English does.

1. I have some books and magazines.
2. Please give me those pens. I haven't got any.
3. By the way, don't you have any Korean newspapers?
4. Teacher Lee doesn't have any chalk.
5. Are there any students in this room?
6. [Three people knock at your office door] Please come in!
7. A. Where are the magazines?
   B. They're over there [be explicitly plural].
8. A. Doesn't Manho's friend have any books?
   B. No, he doesn't.
9. A. Do you have any pictures in (your) room?
   B. No, but my parents do in their room.

Exercise 7: Vocabulary Drill

Complete the following sentences by filling in the blanks with each of the words listed below them. Write out each entire sentence in Korean.

1. 재생 영에 _____이/가 있어요?
   a pen a notebook pencils a door chairs 1000 won
   a briefcase a child pictures a book matches
   a lighter a TV a baby

2. 만호 싸 집 근처에 _____은/는 없어요?
   a school a park a company
   an embassy a department store a university
   a bank a hotel a shop

Lesson Six / 91
In this lesson you will learn how to ask people where they are going and what they are doing. You learn to talk a bit about eating and drinking and how to buy tickets at a railway station. Finally, the lesson introduces you to the most important verb types in Korean, the object particle 을~를, ways to say to and from, and dynamic location with 에서.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Eunice runs into the elderly Korean lady across the hall as she leaves on her way for her morning Korean language classes.

유니스: 안녕하세요?
할머니: 안녕하세요? 어디 가요?
유니스: 학교에 가요.
할머니: 요즘 학교에 다녀요?
유니스: 네, 월요일과 수요일에 고려 대학교에 가요.
고려에서 한국말을 배워요.
할머니: 그래요? 빨리 다녀와요!

Notes

할머니: grandmother (term of address for any woman old enough to be a grandmother).
수요일에: on (Mondays and) Wednesdays. The particle 에 is used to locate things in time, as well as in space.
다녀와요!: See you later! (said to somebody leaving home who will be back later). [Memorize this as a useful expression.]
Dialogue 2

Later after class, Eunice runs into the elderly lady again downstairs.

유니스: 달러 왔어요.
합머니: 그래, 점심은 보통 어디에서 먹어요?
유니스: 학교 식당에서 먹어요.
합머니: 거기는 음식을 잘 해요?
유니스: 네, 불고기하고 비빔밥을 잘 해요. 아주 맛이 있어요.
합머니: 술도 팔아요?
유니스: 아이구, 합머니 — 학교식당에서 무슨 술을 팔아요?!

Notes

다니왔어요! I'm back! (said by someone who has just come back home from going out for a while). [Memorize this as a useful expression.]

그래 Literally: It is so; really. This is simply the elderly lady's way of saying I've heard your greeting (and I am much older than you are, which is why I've dropped the 요, so I can get away with this perfunctory response).

거기는 잘 해요? Literally: Do they do (it) well there? This is a useful way for expressing Are they any good? Are they good at what they do?

아이구! Oh, my! Oh, dear! This is the most ubiquitous Korean exclamation.

무슨 술을 팔아요?! Since when do they sell booze? Lit.: What sort of booze would/do they sell (none!). Korean can use questions with 무슨 like this to make a rhetorical question with exclamatory force.

Dialogue 3

Chris Murphy has to catch the train from Seoul station to Taejon for a business meeting. Unsure of which queue he should be standing in, he asks somebody.

크리스: 설래합니다. 대전행 차표는 어디서 팔아요?
이저씨: 배표소가 거기 있어요.
크리스: 감사합니다.

Chris buys the ticket.

크리스: 대전행 기차는 어느 플랫폼에서 떠나요?
이가씨: 첫 플랫폼에서 떠나요.

Lesson Seven / 93
He then notices the agent looking for something.

Notes

여기 있어요  
Here it is. Here you go. Here you are.

두 시간  
Two hours. Notice that the final 엠 of 두 drops before the counter expression 시간 hours. You will learn more about numerals and counters in Lesson Eleven.

미안해요  
I'm sorry. This is the Polite Style version of 미안합니다.

Vocabulary

Days of the Week and Related Expressions

어제  yesterday
오늘  today
내일  tomorrow
월요일(예) (on) Monday
화요일(예) (on) Tuesday
수요일(예) (on) Wednesday
목요일(예) (on) Thursday
금요일(예) (on) Friday
토요일(예) (on) Saturday
일요일(예) (on) Sunday

Other Time Expressions

요즘  nowadays, these days
보통  usually, normally
날  day
아침(예) (in the) morning; breakfast
낮(예) (in the) daytime; noon

Lesson Seven / 94
오전(에)  
오후(에)  
저녁(에)  
여제 저녁(에)  
오늘 저녁(에)  
밥(에)  
여제 밥(에)  
오늘 밥(에)  
일찍  
아침 일찍  
늦게  
이따가  
언제  
지금  
주말(에)  
시간  

Food, Eating and Drinking  
식당  
음식점  
레스토랑  
빵  
고기  
불고기  
비빔밥 [비빔밥]  
음식  
밥  
밥(을) 먹어요  
아침  
점심  
저녁  
우유  
물  
맞  
맞(이) 있-  
맞 없-  
(in the) afternoon, PM  
(in the) AM  
(yesterday evening)  
this evening (not *이 저녁)  
(at) night  
(last night)  
tonight (not *이 밥)  
early (adverb)  
early in the morning  
late (adverb)  
in a while, a while later  
when?  
now  
(on the/over the) weekend  
hour; time  

Lessons and Food, Eating and Drinking  
dining room, restaurant, cafeteria, refectory  
restaurant  
restaurant (somewhat upscale)  
bread  
meat  
pulgogi  
pibimba, pibimbap  
food  
cooked rice  
eats a meal, has a meal  
breakfast, morning meal  
lunch  
supper, evening meal  
milk  
water  
taste  
be tasty, delicious (pronounced 마시어세요)  
taste bad, not taste good (pronounced 맛있어요, 마시면세요)  

Lesson Seven /95
## Travel and Transport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLACE-bound</th>
<th>bound for PLACE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a Pusan train, train bound for Pusan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car, vehicle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airplane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(train, bus) ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket counter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Miscellaneous

| 아버님 | father (honorific) |
| 어머님 | mother (honorific) |
| 도서관 | library |
| 슈퍼마켓 | supermarket |
| 영화 | movie, film |
| 극장 | theatre (can mean both cinema and venue for a dramatic performance) |
| 편지 | letter |
| 불 | fire; light; a light |
| 일 | matter, business; work |
| 개 | dog |
| 고양이 | cat |
| 휴지 | tissue paper, Kleenex, toilet tissue |
| 수건, 타올 | towel |
| 노래 | song |
| 노래방 | noraebang: Korean karaoke box |
| 첫 NOUN | first NOUN |
| 몇 | how many? |
| 혼자(서) | alone, on one's own, by oneself |
| 빨리 | quickly |
| 많이 | a lot (adverb) |
| 조금 | a little |
| 잘 | well; often |
| 아주 | very |

---

**Lesson Seven**

7.1. Vocab

The Korean verb is 'to be bound', but because you have the definite article the two words are bound together in this way: 

As you have noted, the Korean style they use at the end of questions is very polite. It should not feel strange when you get used to it.

ThePolitician: Have you had your food yet? (hae neul guk gui yeot?)

| TheTeacher: No, I haven't. (neul guk gui jeongga) | ...
Lesson Seven introduces you to many different verbs. These are listed in groups in the Lesson Notes. For that reason they have not been repeated here. The first group below gives the verb bases occurring in the Korean dialogues at the beginning of the lesson, the second group lists verbs that are formed with 하-.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Base</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be; exist; have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>머나-</td>
<td>leave, depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리-</td>
<td>take (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부(물) 하-</td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보(물) 하-</td>
<td>stroll, take a walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일(물) 하-</td>
<td>work; do work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화구경(물) 하-</td>
<td>see a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파르-</td>
<td>sell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>attend, go on regular basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for (it)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘하-</td>
<td>do well, do (it) well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말(물) 하-</td>
<td>speak, talk (a language)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미안하-</td>
<td>be sorry, feel sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경(물) 하-</td>
<td>do viewing or sightsee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Notes

7.1. Verbs: The Polite Style and the Infinitive

The Korean sentences of this lesson end with verbs of various kinds. Notice that the verbs you have learned, including 있어요 is, exists; 없어요 isn't, doesn't exist; and the copula -(이)에요 is, end with 에, and that before this 에, there is a vowel sound. Verbs that end this way are in the Polite Style (예요) of speech.

As you have seen earlier, the social relationship between two speakers determines what style they use when speaking to each other, i.e., what endings they will use with the verbs at the end of their sentences. If they are educated people who respect each other and yet do not feel stiff or formal together, they are apt to use the Polite Style most of the time.

The Polite Style ending is the same regardless of whether it is used with a verb that asks a question or one which makes a statement. It is usually the speaker’s tone of voice, rather
than the actual syllables he utters, that indicate this sort of meaning. It is similar to the way that you can turn such a sentence as You're not going into either a question or an announcement.

Verbs in the polite style can make suggestions Let’s... or even gentle commands Why don’t you or How about VERBing? All use the same verb form, ending in a vowel sound plus -8.

Korean verb forms are made up of BASES with ENDINGS on them. The present-tense forms you have seen so far are all in the Polite Style and have the particle -8. at the end to mark the style. If you remove this -8., the part that remains is called the INFINITIVE of the verb (the term has nothing to do with the denotation of infinitives in European languages). The Korean infinitive has a great many uses of its own, and in addition it is what the past tense is based on (we will look at this in the next lesson).

Here is a list of common verbs in the infinitive form (you need to learn these as part of the vocabulary for this lesson).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉아</td>
<td>sits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자</td>
<td>goes to bed; sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작아</td>
<td>is little in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적어</td>
<td>are few in number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>해</td>
<td>does [IRREGULAR]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨라</td>
<td>is fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받아</td>
<td>receives, gets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배워</td>
<td>learns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르쳐</td>
<td>teaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놓아</td>
<td>plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>커</td>
<td>is large, big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다려</td>
<td>waits (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끝나</td>
<td>stops, ends, is over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많아</td>
<td>is much; are many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나</td>
<td>meets/sees (s.b.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마셔</td>
<td>drinks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹어</td>
<td>eats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋아</td>
<td>looks for; finds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋은</td>
<td>is good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>꾸어</td>
<td>gives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없어</td>
<td>is nonexistent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일이나</td>
<td>gets up; stands up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어</td>
<td>reads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있어</td>
<td>exists; stays; has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>와</td>
<td>comes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피워</td>
<td>smokes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서</td>
<td>stands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보아</td>
<td>looks at, sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사</td>
<td>buys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살아</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>써</td>
<td>writes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬어</td>
<td>rests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫아</td>
<td>closes it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어</td>
<td>hears; listens to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열어</td>
<td>opens it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다녀</td>
<td>attends, goes regularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물어</td>
<td>asks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Seven /98
If you glance down the list, you will see that all of the infinitives end in a vowel ए or ऊ (does is irregular). The vowel at the end is in some cases an ending (to mark the infinitive), while in others it belongs to the basic part of the verb (its base) and the infinitive vowel ए ~ ऊ has been dropped or abbreviated.

You may wonder about the translation of infinitives by English forms like does it instead of to do. It is because the Korean forms can be used as sentences just as they stand: when you remove the polite-style particle ऊ, you have sentences in the Intimate Style (about which we will learn later).

## 7.2. Korean Verbs with Consonant Bases

Bases of Korean verbs are classified into two main types: CONSONANT BASES and VOWEL BASES. In this section we look at the former; vowel bases are discussed in Section 7.5.

Consonant-base verbs typically have the infinitive ending ए and their infinitives consist of the base plus this vowel ending. **However, if the last vowel of the base is ऊ or ऊ then the ending is ऊ instead of ए.** Here is a list of some consonant bases and infinitives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>았-</td>
<td>sits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>be little in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear; put on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for; find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗-</td>
<td>take off (clothes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>았야</td>
<td>sits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작아</td>
<td>is little in size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입어</td>
<td>wears; puts on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾아</td>
<td>looks for; finds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗어</td>
<td>takes off (clothes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Seven /99
7.3. The Dictionary Form of Korean Verbs

Korean dictionaries list verbs in a special dictionary form or citation form with the one-shape ending -다. This ending is the same for all verbs, and is not an infinitive. Remember that in English or other commonly learned Indo-European languages, the infinitive is something quite different. The rule for making the dictionary form is simple: base plus -다. The first four verb bases in the list on the preceding page will appear in a Korean dictionary as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be nonexistent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다</td>
<td>be, exist; stay; have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>be much/many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>receive, get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen to; hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더 w-</td>
<td>be hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나(또)-</td>
<td>get/be better</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4. Three Types of Special Consonant Base

The only tricky point to remember about consonant-base verbs concerns the last three bases in the list in section 7.2. (들- listen to, 더 w- be hot, 나(또)- get/be better).

1. ㄹ ~ ㄹ verbs

Verbs that end in ㄹ change the ㄹ to ㅂ before endings that begin with a consonant.

 들-  listen to  →  들다  to listen to (Dictionary form)
2. **w ~ h verbs**
Verbs that end in -w change the -w to -h before endings that begin with a consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive Form</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be hot</td>
<td>었다</td>
<td>to be hot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**주의**
The ◦ or zero consonant sign which gets written before any syllable beginning with a vowel does not count as a consonant for the purposes of our rules.

3. **S-irregular Verbs**
Verbs that end in ◦ drop the ◦ before endings that begin with a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive Form</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be better</td>
<td>낳다</td>
<td>to be better</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These are different from regular verbs in ◦, which keep the ◦ in all forms.

- 벽 - take off (clothes) → 벽어 takes off (clothes) [infinitive form]
- 벽 - to take off (clothes) [dictionary form]

7.5. Korean Verbs with Vowel Bases

The second major type of Korean verb entails bases that end with a vowel. Vowel-base verbs are unfortunately somewhat more complex:

1. In one group, the infinitive is the same shape as the base. This includes bases ending in 아, 어 and 에:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive Form</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자 sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가 goes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비싸-</td>
<td>be expensive</td>
<td>비싸 is expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나 meets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>사 buys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Seven / 101*
2. In another group, the base ends in 이 and the infinitive ending -어 is added, but 이 어 is abbreviated to 어.

가르치- teach 가르쳐 가르치어 teaches
기다리- wait 기다리기 기다리어 waits
마시- drink 마서 마사어 drinks
치- strike, hit 치치치치어 strikes, hits

Note that the base 쉬- cannot abbreviate (there is no 한글 letter combining 위 and 어 in one syllable).

쉬- rest 쉬어 rests

3. A similar group consists of bases that end in 오; they add the ending -어 and then the sequence 오어 abbreviates to 어 if the base is just one syllable.

배우- learn 배워 배우어 learns
피우- smoke 피워 피우어 smokes
주- give 주주 주어 gives

4. Vowel bases that end in 오 add the infinitive ending as -아 and then 오아 is shortened to 아.

오- come 오아 오아 comes
보- look at, see 보보 보아 looks at, sees

[Note: In the case of come, the contraction from 오아 to 아 is obligatory. In the case of see, note that Korean pronunciation frequently drops 와 after consonants, especially labial sounds like ㅂ, so you will hear 와 pronounced 바 in fast or sloppy speech.]

5. Most vowel bases that end in 오 drop the 오 before adding the infinitive ending -어 (or -아, if there is a preceding syllable with 오 or 아).

Lesson Seven / 102
6. Most vowel bases that end in 브 not only drop the 오 but double the 브 before adding the appropriate infinitive ending (normally -어, but -아 when the vowel of the preceding syllable is 오 or 아).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>빠르-</td>
<td>be fast</td>
<td>빨라 is fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>sing (a song); call</td>
<td>불러 sings (a song)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>not know</td>
<td>물러 doesn't know</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These are called L-doubling bases.

7. Another common kind of vowel base is one which looks at first glance like a consonant base: it ends in a vowel before some endings, but picks up an 아 before others, two of which are the infinitive and the dictionary form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Dictionary Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>노- 브-</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀아 plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사- 브-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살아 lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여- 브-</td>
<td>open it</td>
<td>열어 opens it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아- 브-</td>
<td>know it</td>
<td>알아 knows it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파- 브-</td>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>팔아 sells it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For each new ending you learn, you must memorize whether the 아 of these verbs stays or drops before it. So far you have not learned any endings that require the 아 to drop. These are called L-extending bases.

It is vital that you keep these L-extending bases apart from the 브 ~ 브 verbs like 들- (들다) listen introduced in section 7.4 above. Given an infinitive form like 들- (들다) you do not know whether the underlying base is 무- 브- (물다) or 물- (물다). As it turns out, both bases exist.

| 무- 브- | bite | 물어 bites |
| 물- | ask | 물어 asks |

to bite (dictionary form)

to ask (dictionary form)
8. Finally, there are three special infinitives we should mention.

1. Become

The infinitive of this verb usually has the same shape as the base, but is sometimes spelled, and occasionally pronounced, 되어 (though pronounced with a long vowel).

- 되어 or 되어

2. Copula

The infinitive of the copula is irregular in that it does not abbreviate from -이어 to -어. Note also that the relationship between Polite Style and infinitive in the copula is irregular:

-이게요 (Polite Style) -이어 (infinitive) -이다 (dictionary form)

3. Do

The important verb 하- do has an irregular infinitive: 해. The literary form of the infinitive, which you may sometimes see, is: 하여 does.

- 해 (Polite Style) 해여 (infinitive) 하다 (dictionary form)

There are a few other kinds of verb bases that you will learn later.

7.6. The Direct Object Particle 을 ~ 를

The DIRECT OBJECT PARTICLE 을 ~ 를 is another two-shape particle, like the subject particle 이 ~ 가 and the topic particle 은 ~ 는. Its form is 을 after consonants and 를 after vowels. Here are some examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>을 After Consonant</th>
<th>를 After Vowel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>물물</td>
<td>노래를</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>밥물</td>
<td>고기물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빵물</td>
<td>개물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooked rice</td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After a vowel, 를 is often abbreviated to just - 를, especially in common expressions like 날 me and 이걸 this thing.

Lesson Seven / 104
Remember that Korean requires you to pronounce most particles without hesitating, as though they were part of the preceding word, like suffixes. Much like English requires its speakers to pronounce "sandwich-es" or "boy-s" without stopping between the word and its suffix. If you need to pause and think what particle to use, it is better to do so before you begin to say the noun, not after you have said it. If you find you must pause, once you have found the right particle, go back and start from the noun again: 친구... , 친구... , 친구를...

Again like the subject and topic particles, 올~을 has no English translation. Rather, it marks a grammatical function: the noun before it is the direct object of the verb, the it of does it.

Since the subject and object particles flag their nouns as subject and object, the order in which these expressions come along in a Korean sentence is not crucial, as it is in corresponding English sentences where word order alone marks grammatical functions, so that Mother sees baby does not mean the same thing as Baby sees mother.

1. 어머니가 에기를봐요. 
  Mother sees baby. 
   (same)

2. 에기가 어머니를봐요. 
   Baby sees mother. 
   (same)

In spoken Korean, either subject or object particle may drop out. If both are omitted the sentence may become ambiguous. 어머니 에기 봐요 and 에기 어머니 봐요 can both have two opposite meanings. Mother sees baby and Baby sees mother, because Korean does not use simple word order to signal subject-object relations. If only one particle drops, of course, the sentence is not ambiguous. 어머니가 에기 봐요 and 어머니 에기를 봐요 can only mean Mother sees baby.

Many English verbs take objects by way of a linked preposition: 사람을 기다려요 waits for a person, i.e., awaits a person. So you can't always count on a one-to-one correspondence between transitive verbs in Korean and what are called transitive verbs in English.

In certain kinds of Korean sentences, as you have learned, a verb can have two subjects: two different nouns with the particle 이~가. There is, however, usually only one direct object to a verb. Most often, a direct object is similar in meaning to English direct objects: 책을 봐요 reads [looks at] a book, 편지를 써요 writes a letter.

Lesson Seven / 105
7.7. Particles of Direction: *to, from*

Corresponding to English *to* are the particle 에 for places and 한테 (or also 에게) for living things:

- 원행에 가요: goes to the bank
- 공원에 가요: goes to the park
- 내 친구한테 줘: gives it to my friend
- or 내 친구에게: gives it to Manho

*From* is expressed by the same particles with 서 after them. Sometimes the original particle is omitted, and you can simply say 서. You can do this when you want to say from (a place).

- 원행에서 학교에 가요: Goes from the bank to school.
- or 원행서
- 식당에서: from the cafeteria
- or 식당서

To express *from* with living things, you do the same thing you do to express *from* with nonliving things: add 서 to the directional/locational particle.

- 내 친구한테서: from my friend
- or 내 친구에게서
- 만호 씨한테서: from Manho
- or 만호 씨에게서

However, colloquial Korean allows you to use 한테 (or 에게) without 서 in the sense of from (a person).

3. A. 한국말은 누구한테 배워요?
   *Who are you learning Korean from?*
   
   B. 한국사람한테 배워요.
   *I'm learning from a Korean.*
Here are some example sentences.

4. A. 편지한테서 받으시겠어요?
   Who do you get letters from?

   B. 어머니한테서 와요.
   From my mother.

5. 학생이 선생에게서 책을 받어요.
   The student receives a book from the teacher.

Finally, here is a chart to help you keep these various meanings and particles straight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Living thing</th>
<th>TO</th>
<th>FROM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한테</td>
<td>에게</td>
<td>에게서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>한테서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>에서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>서 (colloquial)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.8. Static and Dynamic Location

Corresponding to English in, at, on, as you learned in section 6.3, is the particle 에 (being) at, with or without some specific word of location in front of it. This is a particle of STATIC location: something is in (at, on) a place. For DYNAMIC location, when something happens in (at or on) a place, Korean uses the particle 서 (happening) at or the combination 에서. These particles have the same English translation as 에, but are used when the verb denotes an action.

Directional 에 is used with verbs of motion like 가요, 와요.

Static location 에 is used with verbs of location like 있어요 and 안어요. This same 에 is used to locate things in time, too.

6. 월요일에 쉬어요.
   On Monday(s) I take it easy.
7. In the morning I buy milk.

However, just as in English certain time adverbs do not take 에 (or a preposition in English): *어제에, 오늘에, and *내일에 are all unacceptable for yesterday, today and tomorrow.

Dynamic location 에서 is used with all other verbs to describe where an action is taking place. Here are some examples.

8. A. 만호 씩는 어디에 있어요?
   Where is Manho?

   B. 집에 있어요.
   He is at home.

9. A. 점심은 어디에서 먹어요?
   Where does he eat lunch?

   B. 음식점에서 먹어요.
   He eats at a restaurant.

10. 동호 씩는 학교에 있어요.
    Tongho is at school.

11. 내 친구는 학교에서 가르쳐요.
    My friend teaches at school.

주의!

With some verbs either 에 or (에)시 is used:
서울에 살아요 or 서울(에)시 살아요 lives in Seoul.

With most verbs only one of the alternatives is possible:
있어요 is, stays and 앉아요 sits take only 에.
7.9. Using Location To Express Possession

You learned in section 6.2 to use 
- and 
- for expressing possession in sentences of the type.

12. 나는 책이 있어요.
   *I have a book [Literally: As for me, there exists a book].

Korean can also use a locational construction to express possession; whereas 에 functions to locate things in inanimate (nonliving) places, the particles 한테 or에게 are used to locate things with living creatures, especially humans. Compare the following three sentences.

13. 은행에 돈이 있어요.
    *The bank has money. [Literally: There is money in/at the bank.]

14. 나한테 돈이 있어요.
    *I have money. [Literally: Unto me there exists money.]

15. 수진 씨한테는 돈이 없어요.
    *Su Jin has no money.

7.10. Different Kinds of Verbs

Korean verbs are either PROCESSIVE or DESCRIPTIVE. Processive verbs usually mean does (it), i.e., performs an action. Descriptive verbs (sometimes called adjectives) usually mean is (a certain way), i.e., has some characteristic. In the vocabulary lists for this textbook, descriptive verb bases are glossed with English be, e.g.,  - be big.

The distinction between descriptive and processive verbs will become more and more important as you advance through this book. For now, only a few are pointed out of the differences between these two types of verbs. One of the differences is that you can use the processive verbs as commands (do it!) and suggestions (let's do it!), but the descriptive verbs are limited to statements (it is) and questions (is it?). To say let's be good in Korean you have to turn the sentence into one that means let's behave nicely.

Another difference is that descriptive verbs never take an object marked with the object marker . (but this does not mean that all processive verbs can take the particle .). Sometimes descriptive verbs mean has one that is (a certain way) as follows.

16. 책이 많아요.
    *I have lots of books.

Lesson Seven / 109
Notice that what corresponds to the object in English (books) is marked with 이~가 in Korean.

Descriptive verbs can have a subject (sometimes even two).

17. 누가 술이 있어요?
   *Who has the booze?

18. 나는 이것이 좋아요.
   *I like this.

19. 그 음식은 맛이 좋아요.
   *The food has good flavor (tastes good).

Many processive verbs, on the other hand, can take a direct object (sometimes even two) as well as a subject, as you learned in Section 7.6. Some examples are:

20. 책을 읽어요.
   *Reads the book

21. 한국말을 공부를 해요.
   *Studies Korean

In addition, some processive verbs can take an indirect object marked by the particle 만해 (or 에게) for living things and the particle 에 for things or institutions. This was covered in Section 7.7.

22. 동생한테 돈을 줍어요.
   *Give money to one’s younger sibling.

23. 중국사람한테 중국말을 배워요.
   *Learns Chinese from a Chinese.

A few processive verbs take an indirect object with the double particle 만해서 (or 에게서) for people and the particle 에서 for things or institutions.

24. 어머니한테 돈을 받아요.
   *Receives money from one’s mother.

25. 은행에서 편지를 받아요.
   *Gets a letter from the bank.

이어요 and 없어요 cannot take a direct object marked with 을~을. Any object that may be required for an English translation appears as a subject.

Lesson Seven / 110
26. 돈이 있어요.
   has money

27. 시간이 없어요.
   has no time

The copula is a special kind of descriptive verb; it has a number of grammatical peculiarities all its own, which you will learn through the course.

7.11. More on the Particle 도

When you use the particle 도 with a noun, you do not use the particles that would mark that same noun as topic (은~는), subject (이~가), or direct object (을~를); notice how 도 takes the place of those particles.

28. A. 나는 미국 사람이에요.
    I'm an American.

   B. 나도 미국 사람이에요.
    I'm an American too.

29. A. 담배 있어요?
    Have you a cigarette?

   B. 분도 있어요?
    Have you a light too?

30. 책을 읽어요.
    I read books.

   잡지도 읽어요.
    I read magazines too.

This means that some sentences with 도 are ambiguous out of context: 에기도 봐요 can mean either The baby sees it (or him, her) too or (She etc.) sees the baby too. You can clear

Lesson Seven /111
up the ambiguity by adding context: 어머니가 아기도 봄야 The mother sees the baby too, or 어머니를 봄기도 봄야. The baby sees the mother too. You can, however, use 도 after any of the other particles. For example, 학교에서도 means at school also or from school also. 김 선생님한테도 means to Mr. Kim too and so on.

Two occurrences of 도 in the same Korean sentence often correspond to English both ... and ... or in a negative sentence (not) either ... or ... (which you will learn how to do in section 8.1.).

31. 아침에도 밤에도 일해요.
   I work both in the morning and at night.

32. 화장실에는 휴지도 수건도 없어요.
   There is neither toilet paper nor a towel in the bathroom.

7.12. Placement of Manner Adverbs

Manner adverbs are adverbs like 잘, well; often, 많이, lots, a lot, and 자주, often which tell how you do something. In Korean, such adverbs like to park just in front of the verb. In cases of VERBAL NOUN plus 하-, then, the adverb comes right before 하-:

33. 수진 씨는 공부를 잘 해요. [not 잘 공부를 해요.]
   Sujin studies well.

34. 수진 씨는 일을 많이 해요. [not 많이 일을 해요.]
   Sujin works a lot.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Fill in the Blanks

Fill in the following blanks with the noun-plus-particle expressions indicated below each sentence. Say the complete Korean sentence out loud.

1. 나는 저녁에 ______을 읽어요.
   a magazine
   the newspaper
   both a magazine and the newspaper
   a Chinese book
   an English newspaper and a Russian newspaper
   some American magazines
2. 동생이 나한테 ________을~를 뜰 요.

   a radio
   some meat
   toilet paper and a towel
   both cigarettes and matches
   a notebook
   some money
   pencils and paper

3. 나는 오후에 ________을~를 뜰 혼요~만나요.

   the doctor and his wife
   both Manho and Tongho
   a movie
   both Mrs. Kim and Mrs. Pak
   the teacher
   my friends
   a lot of (many) students

Exercise 2: Building Sentences from Phrases

Here is a list of phrases in Korean. Build a complete Korean sentence around each one. Then practice your sentences aloud.

1. 영화 구경을
2. 의자 옆에
3. 박 박사님한테서
4. 집하고 나무 사이에
5. 집 안에
5. 공원에
6. 극장 오른 쪽에
7. 아침에
8. 아버지한테서
9. 요즘
10. 이방 안에
11. 아침에
12. 원 쪽에
13. 친구한테
14. 매표소에서
15. 음식점에서
16. 집에

Exercise 3: Verb Phrases

Here are two Korean sentences with blanks in them. Complete the sentences using the verb expressions from the list below—use the same verb in both blanks.

내 친구는 ________. 그리고 나도 ________.

1. closing windows
2. looking at a magazine
3. drinking some water
4. taking it easy [playing] at home
5. singing a song
6. seeing a movie
7. getting up late
8. smoking a cigarette
9. going to school
10. speaking English
11. learning Korean
12. waiting for the doctor
13. listening to the radio
14. working
Exercise 4: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. A. 지금 몇 해요?
   B. 텔레비전을 봐요.
   A. 혼자 봐요?
   B. 아니오. 애기하고 봐요.

2. A. 집에 갈 있어요?
   B. 네, 있어요.
   A. 지금은 어디에 있어요?
   B. 모르겠어요.
   A. 개는 잘 놀어요?
   B. 네, 잘 놀어요.

3. 우리 개는 공원에서 놀어요.
4. 우리 애기는 물도 우유도 잘 먹어요.
5. A. 뭐 해요?
   B. 친구를 기다려요.
6. A. 어디에 가요?
   B. 공원에 가요. 우리 개를 찾아요.
7. A. 어디에 가요?
   B. 음식점에 가요.
8. 우리 동생은 은행에서 일해요.
   은행에서는 편지를 많이 받아요.
   그리고 집에서는 편지를 많이 써요.
9. A. 일요일에는 집에 있어요.
   B. 집에서는 뭐 해요? 식품을 읽어요?
   A. 네, 그리고 잠지도 하고.
10. 동생은 많이 적어요.
11. 호주 대사관이 커요, 작아요?

Lesson Seven / 114
Exercise 5: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that you do not need to translate literally. The important thing is to convey the ideas that are being expressed.

1. He is a school teacher. He usually teaches English.
2. Saturday morning he reads the newspaper. And Thursday evenings he goes to the cinema.
3. He studies hard (well). He learns a lot.
4. At night I rest.
5. At the library there are lots of books. Nowadays books are expensive.
6. On Friday mornings I get up late. I drink some milk quickly. And then [그리고] I go to school.
7. I'm waiting for Professor Lee.
8. Give me a tissue. Give me a towel too.
9. Our house is little. But it's nice.
10. On Wednesdays I buy bread and milk.
11. The baby is playing by itself.
13. The mother calls the baby. But the baby is sleeping.
14. My mother lives in Seoul. There are many stores and department stores there.
15. A. Where is the library? Do you know?
   B. Yes, it's between that cafeteria over there and that building.
16. I'm seeing a film this evening.

Exercise 6: Conversation Practice

Make up five conversations based on the following sets of information. First, one asks the other where he is going. Respond appropriately (e.g., by the Korean equivalent of I'm going to the cafeteria). The next question is What do you do/buy/eat/drink there? (etc., as appropriate), and the response can then be made according to the information supplied. This can be done either as a written or an oral exercise.

1. 식당
2. 방
3. 공원
4. 슈퍼마켓
5. 집

비빔밥을 먹-
텔레비전을 보-
친구를 만나-
우유를 사-
책을 읽-

Lesson Seven / 115
Exercise 7: Particle Insertion

Copy and translate the following sentences, inserting the correct particles.

1. 텔레비전 _______ 와요.
2. 맛 ________ 좋아요.
3. 내일은 우리 동생이 와요. 그리고 동생의 남자친구 ________ 와요.
4. 친구 ___________ 만나요.
5. 책 ________ 비싸요.
6. 밥 ________ 먹어요.
7. 나는 공원 ________ 놀아요.
8. 나 ________ 친구 _______ 돼 ________ 받아요.
9. 우리는 식당 ________ 밥 ________ 먹어요.
10. 교실 ________ 학생 _______ 한국말 ________ 배워요.
11. 책상 위 ________ 신문 ________ 있어요.
12. 플랫폼 끝 ________ 기차 ________ 있어요.
13. 매미소 앞 ________ 여자 ________ 표 ________ 사요.
14. 주말 ________ 남자친구 ________ 영화구경 ________ 해요.

Exercise 8: Vocabulary Drill

1. Express the sentences below in Korean, filling in the blank space with each of the expressions listed beneath the sentence. Say the complete sentence aloud each time. Rearrange or add words if you can make better sentences by doing so.

나는 아침에 ________.

study  play with the dog [use 하고]
take walks go to the bank
read the paper come home
go to the park write letters
go to the movies sell newspapers
stay home learn Russian
speak in English drink milk
listen to the radio watch films
smoke cigarettes look for my dog

Lesson Seven / 116
2. 나는 편지를 ________ 씁니다.

- at night
- Saturdays
- on Friday mornings
- on Sundays
- this evening
- a lot
- in the afternoon
- often
- in the morning
- fast
- Tuesday
- Thursday
- Wednesday
- in the daytime
- Monday mornings
- tonight

3. Give the dictionary form, infinitive, and Polite Style for each of the following verbs. Write each one out initially. Then practice them so that you can call them off fluently just by looking at the English. For example, the answer to number (1) will be: 좋다, 좋아, 좋아요.

- is good
- finds
- plays
- bites
- opens it
- sits
- is little
- lives
- smokes
- is large
- knows it
- eats
- gives
- is fast
- calls
- has
- closes
- gets up
- rests
- writes

- sleeps
- meets
- goes
- asks
- comes
- is hot
- receives
- looks at
- listens
- teaches
- waits
- drinks
- sells
- buys
- is great in number
- [copula]
- puts on [clothes]
- lies
- learns
- sings

Lesson Seven / 117
Exercise 9: Dictionary Exercise

In Lesson Three you learned the various alphabetization schemes in use in North and South Korean dictionaries. In this lesson, you have learned the dictionary form in -다 for verbs. Look up the following words and add them to your vocabulary notes.

1. 닦다
2. 껨다
3. 묶다
4. 꿀다
5. 먹물다
6. 까عدل다
7. 눕다
8. 무섭다
9. 빗다
10. 엽터리
11. 죽이다
12. 시끄럽다
13. 업다
14. 쪽다
15. 바위다
16. 줄다
17. 파업
18. 작장
19. 호랑이
20. 맹함
21. 천사
22. 진짜
23. 가짜
24. 설거지
In this lesson you will learn how to talk about your Korean language skills and your university studies, and you will attempt to make a reservation over the telephone. You will learn about verbal nouns, how to negate verbs (doesn't, isn't and can't), how to exalt others by making verbs honorific, and how to use two new particles: instrumental (으)로, and (이)항 and.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Miss Lee, Christopher Murphy's secretary, is chatting with Eunice while Eunice waits for Chris at the office.

미스 리: 요즘 몇 하세요?
유니스: 한국말을 공부하세요.
미스 리: 어디서 한국말을 배우세요?
유니스: 고려대학교에서 배워요.
미스 리: 그래요? 무슨 책으로 배우세요?
유니스: "한국어 회화"를 써요. 책이 판같아요.
미스 리: 일본말도 하세요?
유니스: 아니요, 일본말은 못해요. 너무 어렵어요.
미스 리: 그럼 다른 과목은 안 하세요?
유니스: 아니요, 경제학이랑 정치학도 배워요.
미스 리: 한국말 공부가 잘 되세요?
유니스: 아니요, 아주 힘들어요. 아직 밀었어요.

Lesson Eight / 119
Is... going well?
It's tough. I'm having a difficult time. It requires [lots of] effort.
[Literally: It is still distant, that is, has a long way to go.]

Dialogue 2

Eunice and Miss Lee decide to go to the National Theatre together on Sunday. Miss Lee has Eunice dial the National Theatre to reserve seats.

유니스 여보세요?
교환원 네, 국립극장입니다. 말씀하세요.
유니스 예약 좀 부탁합니다.
교환원 네, 성함하고 신용카드 번호를 말씀해 주세요.
유니스 네? 다시 한번 말씀해 주세요! (passing the receiver to Miss Lee)
아이구, 미스 리. 너무 힘들어요. 못 알아 들겠어요.
미스 리 그러세요? 그럼 제가 통화할게요.

Notes
... (올) 부탁합니다.
(On the telephone) Please give me so-and-so, or I would like so-and-so.
말씀해 주세요.
 못 알아 들겠어요.
그러세요?
통화해 주세요.

Notes
...는 잘 되요?
힘(이) 들어요.
아직 뭐였어요.

More New Words
사랑(을) 하다
예약(을) 하다
통화(를) 하다
수영(을) 하다
수영장

Lesson Eight / 120
Vocabulary

School and Education

How many courses are you taking?

a class, lesson [at school]

 economics
economy

 politics [as a field of study], political science
politics

 Korean studies
major in something

 What's your major?
teaching materials; textbook

 four-year college

More New Verbs

love

play baseball
baseball

make a reservation
reservation

get through to/contact somebody by telephone, talk
by telephone

swim
swimming pool
clean up, tidy up

like it

be bad
be clean
neatly, cleanly

be similar; be the same (as something — 하고, (이)할)

 together

cut [hair], sharpen [pencil], mow [grass]
(Somebody) sharpens a pencil.
(Somebody) gets a haircut.

get a haircut (for males)

be difficult

be easy

be good by nature; be a good boy [girl, dog, etc.]

obey (listen to words)

Obey well.

take (eat) medicine

medicine

be cheap, inexpensive

be difficult, taxing

strength, energy

I have no energy today.

be all right, OK

It's OK; It'll do.

It's not OK; It won't do; One mustn't do it.

It's going well. It's turning out well.

be distant, far

Is it far from here?

Yes, it takes an hour.

understand [spoken words], catch something said

[Literally: hearing after having understood]

make a request, ask a favor/errand

a request, favor

ask somebody for a favor

have a favor to ask of somebody

Please, I beg you. or I'm counting on you. Please do it for me.

Manho, I have a favor to ask of you.

Some Honorific Bases

The following verbs have the honorific marker -(으)시- incorporated in their bases.

고기 더 잡수세요.

Please eat some more meat. (to a guest, your parents, etc.)
Please eat some more meat. (to a friend you usually call 씨)
sleep (honorific)
Good night (to somebody esteemed, e.g., your parents)
Good night (to a friend you usually call 씨)
Good night (your parents to you; you to a close friend or younger sibling)

be, exist, stay (honorific)
Is Professor at home?
Is Manho at home?

eat, drink (honorific)
Well then, bon appetit [eat up, please eat a lot]
(to a guest, your parents, etc.)
Well then, bon appetit (to a friend you usually call 씨)
Well then, bon appetit (your parents to you; you to a close friend or younger sibling)

Because these bases already have honorific -(으)시- in them, you cannot produce forms like *드시세요, *계시세요, or the like.

Frequency and Quantity

a little; please (to soften a request or command)
always, all the time, continuously
always, at all times, habitually
always
mainly, for the most part
sometimes

often
every day
diligently, very hard
She studies hard/diligently.

She studies hard/diligently.
More Adverbs

(.not) yet, still
first (of all), before anything else
together
(together) with a person
truly, really
the truth (truly, really)
Really? Is it true?
It is really/truly large.
passionate(ly)
slowly
too much so, too; very [to an excessive degree]
sometime or other; at one time; some time ago

Other Nouns

bus
London
telephone
make a telephone call
New York
(an)other NOUN(s)
church [Protestant]
Do you go to church?
attend, go to (church)
church [Catholic]
credit card
surname, last name
[your or his] esteemed surname/last name
name, given name
[someone’s esteemed] name (honorific equivalent of 이름)
What is your name? (honorific and polite)
head; hair
She is smart.
She is dumb.

Lesson Eight

8.1. Verbs

The rule for the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one (is) cannot take the verb one
Lesson Notes

8.1. Verbs: Short Negatives with 안 and 못

The rule for putting a verb into the short negative form is simple: place immediately before the verb one of the two negative words 안 and 못. However, DESCRIPTIVE verbs (translated is) cannot take the short negative with 못 in this way; instead you must use the long form that is optional for the other verbs. (The long negative form is discussed later, in Lesson Twelve).

안 is an abbreviation of 아니 no; the full form is used before the copula (아니예요 it isn’t.. It is a simple negative word meaning not. 못 basically means cannot, but can also be more
emphatic than 아니. Its meaning ranges from not possibly, cannot to emphatically (definitely, absolutely) not, not at all.

Pronunciation of 못

You will never hear the ᄆ iht written in the word 못, because it never occurs in those environments where the ᄆ can be released—before a particle or the copula -어요. When 못 precedes a verb beginning with i or y, it is usual for the sequence to be pronounced as -nni- or -nny-. So when one wants to say 못 읽어요 can't read; doesn't read at all, the form is pronounced 못 읽어요, and when one wants to say 못 열어요 can't open it, doesn't open it at all, the form is pronounced 못 열어요. One may occasionally hear versions of these sequences with the final ᄆ retained as unreleased 못 읽어요 as 못 읽어요, 못 열어요 as 못 열어요.

Here are some examples of 안 and 못.

1. 우리 애기는 잘 안 자요.
   My baby doesn't sleep well (or much).
2. 요즘은 잘 못 자요.
   Lately I can't sleep well.
3. 나는 술을 못 마셔요.
   I can't drink (alcohol). (Maybe I am allergic to alcohol.)
4. 나는 술을 안 마셔요.
   I don't drink (alcohol). (as a matter of personal policy; it is my conscious decision)
5. A. 비싸요?
   Is it expensive?
   B. 아니요, 안 비싸요, 싸요.
   No, it's not expensive. It's cheap.
6. A. 빵 먹어요?
   Do you eat bread?
   B. 아니요, 안 먹어요.
   No, I don't. (I just don't like it.)
7. A. 빵 먹어요?
   Do you eat bread?
   B. 아니요, 못 먹어요.
   No, I can't. (I'm allergic to wheat-based foods.)

Lesson Eight / 126
8. A. Are you going to school?
B. No, I'm not. (I've decided to skip class today.)

9. A. Are you going to school?
B. No, I can't. (I have a doctor's appointment.)

10. A. Do you like baseball?
B. No, I don't.

11. A. Do you read Korean newspapers?
B. I can't read them yet.

12. A. Do you swim?
B. No, I can't swim.

13. Manho doesn't come today.

14. Manho can't come today.

15. I can't read Korean newspapers.

16. I don't read Korean newspapers. (I choose not to.)
8.2. Verbs: Honorifics

8.2.1. The Honorific Marker -(으)시-

When a Korean speaker uses a verb to describe the action of a person he especially esteems (or honors), he makes the verb form honorific. Esteemed (honored) people in Korea include parents and other older relatives; older people in general; high officials; people of education—teachers, doctors, other professional people.

The honorific marker is a two-shape ending attached in the shape -(으)시- to consonant bases, but -(으)시- to vowel bases. The HONORIFIC BASE of a verb is its base plus this honorific marker. In other words, by adding the honorific marker to a verb base, you are creating a new verb base ending in -(으)시-

The honorific infinitive consists of the honorific marker -(으)시- plus the infinitive ending -(으), with the expected abbreviation of -(으)시어 to -(으)시, except, that is, when followed by 요.

주의!

Honorific bases in -(으)시- behave just like the other bases you know that end in -(으), with the following important exception: honorific present-tense polite forms end in -(으)세요, the ending introduced in this lesson. This is the usual pronunciation of what is sometimes written -(으)시요, the HONORIFIC INFINITIVE (-(으)시- + -(으)) plus the polite particle 요.

Observe the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific Base</th>
<th>Honorific Infinitive</th>
<th>Honorific Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>가세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>오시-</td>
<td>오세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우시-</td>
<td>배우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얻-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>얻으시-</td>
<td>얻으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깎-</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>깎으시-</td>
<td>깎으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽으시-</td>
<td>읽으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빠르-</td>
<td>be fast</td>
<td>빠르시-</td>
<td>빠르세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eight / 128
especially esteems people of officials; people of

The example of 노- 둘- play shows that when you have an L-extending vowel base, you attach the honorific marker to the unextended base (in this case, 노-). Note also the treatment of 둘- and 다- consonant bases (bases 들- and 다- above).

The O or zero consonant sign which gets written before any syllable beginning with a vowel does not count as a consonant for the purposes of our rules.

8.2.2. The Honorific Polite Style: 하세요

We have already mentioned above the sorts of people that might qualify as esteemed, and therefore be worthy of honorification. Often, when questions are asked, the esteemed person is the listener (you).

17. 한국말을 무엇으로 배우세요?
   What do you learn Korean from? (Literally: with)? (The new particle is explained later this lesson.)

In the following sentence, a parent is spoken of in honorific terms.

18. 아버님은 매일 약을 드세요.
    Father takes medicine every day.

Just as important as showing esteem for others is to avoid showing it for yourself.

NEVER use

honorific verb forms

to describe your own actions.

Lesson Eight / 129
Compare the question and the answer from the conversation of this lesson:

19. 메시 리요즘 월 하세요?
What are you doing lately?

20. 유니스 한국말을 공부해요.
I'm studying Korean.

Ordinarily, a Polite Style verb in 해요 is made Honorific Polite by changing -어요 or -어요 to -으세요 when the verb base ends in a consonant, or just adding -세요 when the verb base ends in a vowel.

If the verb is an L-extending one, then the ㄹ is omitted, and the verb is treated as though it ended simply in a vowel (e.g., 사-ㄹ- live, becomes 사세요):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Polite</th>
<th>Honorific Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>looks for</td>
<td>찾아요</td>
<td>찾아서요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meets</td>
<td>만나요</td>
<td>만나서요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lives</td>
<td>살어요</td>
<td>살어서요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few verbs come in pairs—a neutral and an honorific one; that is, the neutral verb and the honorific verb are completely different and unrelated forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>sleeps</th>
<th>[somebody esteemed] sleeps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>자요</td>
<td>주무세요</td>
<td>[somebody esteemed] sleeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잊어요</td>
<td>[somebody esteemed] stays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹어요</td>
<td>[somebody esteemed] eats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ending -(으)세요 is sometimes written and sometimes pronounced -(으)시요, which is the contracted form of honorific -(으)시- plus -어요. However, it is considered more standard to use the forms in -(으)세요.

The ending -(으)세요 is the first two-shape verb ending you have seen. Here is a description of how it behaves with different verbs.

Lesson Eight / 130
Vowel-final bases attach to the vowel-less (i.e., 오-less) ending of two-shape endings:

가-  가세요?  Are you going?
보-  보세요!  Look at it!
파-  파세요!  Please sell it!

Consonant-final bases attach to the shape with initial 오-.

찾-  찾으세요?  Are you looking for it?
받-  받으세요!  Please take it!
입-  입으세요!  Put it on!
들-  들으세요?  Are you listening?
더-  더으세요?  Are you hot?

As the last example shows, the only tricky point to remember here concerns 움 ~ ㅂ verbs, for which the following rule holds:

\[
\text{W-} + \text{오} \rightarrow \text{فعال}
\]

In other words, the final 움 of a 움 ~ ㅂ verb base plus the initial 오 of a two-shape verb ending combine to yield the vowelفعال.

It is vital that you remember the following point: the honorific part of a verb has no connection whatever with the social style being used. All the verbs in this lesson are in the Polite Style; some of them are honorific, and some are not. Verb forms in any of the Korean social styles can either be made honorific or left as they are, without respect to the suffixes which show the social level on which the speakers are conversing. This means that the honorific marker can be put before the endings of any social style, not just the Polite Style, when the speaker uses the verb for the actions of an especially esteemed person.

On the next page is a list of some of the verbs you have learned, in the Polite (예요) Style and the Honorific Polite (하세요) Style.
### Gloss

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Polite</th>
<th>Honorific Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does (IRREG.)</td>
<td>해요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closes it</td>
<td>닫아요</td>
<td>닫으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes</td>
<td>와요</td>
<td>오세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drinks</td>
<td>마셔요</td>
<td>마시세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eats</td>
<td>먹어요</td>
<td>잡수세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finds; looks for</td>
<td>찾아요</td>
<td>찾으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gets up</td>
<td>일어나요</td>
<td>일어나세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gives</td>
<td>쩔어요</td>
<td>주세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goes</td>
<td>가요</td>
<td>가세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋아요</td>
<td>좋아해요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has (got)</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>있어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has not (got)</td>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>없으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is [copula]</td>
<td>이에요</td>
<td>계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stays</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there) is; is (there)</td>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>계세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there) isn't; isn't (there)</td>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>베우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learns</td>
<td>배워요</td>
<td>배우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is little (in size)</td>
<td>작아요</td>
<td>작으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are/has many</td>
<td>많아요</td>
<td>많으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sees, looks at, reads</td>
<td>보어요</td>
<td>보세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeps</td>
<td>자요</td>
<td>주무세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smokes</td>
<td>피워요</td>
<td>피우세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>가르쳐요</td>
<td>가르치세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waits for</td>
<td>기다리어요</td>
<td>기다리세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writes</td>
<td>써어요</td>
<td>쓰세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is bad</td>
<td>나쁨</td>
<td>나쁨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is big</td>
<td>크요</td>
<td>크세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opens it</td>
<td>열어요</td>
<td>열으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lives</td>
<td>살아요</td>
<td>사세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td>놀어요</td>
<td>노세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hears (즉 액: 들다)</td>
<td>들어요</td>
<td>들으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is hot (즉 액: 엎다)</td>
<td>더워요</td>
<td>더우세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

8.3. Verbs

The verb 해요, does or performs an action.

21. 요즘

What?

Secondly, it means...

22. A.

B.

8.3.1. Separate

There is a group of verbs that are in the habitual present, at least five of the following verbs:

- 쾌부
- 산부
- 손부
- 구경
- 일
- 청소

The verbal noun that precedes these verbs is often used to form a little difference.

구경해요, 구경

구경 (을)

Even if the verb is not present in the habitual present, it can be another one. When the verb 해요 is present in the habitual present,
8.3. Verbal Nouns: Processive and Descriptive

The verb 해요, as you have observed in this lesson, is a versatile word. First of all, it means does or performs an action, as in the following sentence.

21. 요즘 무엇을 해요?
   What are you up to [doing] lately?

Secondly, it means says, speaks.

22. A. 한국말 잘 하세요?
   Do you speak Korean well?

   B. 아직 잘 못 해요.
   I can’t speak well yet.

8.3.1. Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)

There is a group of verbal nouns which form phrases with 해요. You have now learned at least five of these:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>공부</th>
<th>study(ing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>공부(를) 해요</td>
<td>studies [Literally: performs studying]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보</td>
<td>a walk or stroll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>산보(를) 해요</td>
<td>takes [Literally: does] a walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경</td>
<td>(sight)seeing, viewing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경(을) 해요</td>
<td>views, watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>work, job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일(을) 해요</td>
<td>works [Literally: performs work, does a job]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소</td>
<td>cleaning up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>청소(를) 해요</td>
<td>cleans up, tidies up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verbal noun may be the direct object of the verb 해요 or it may precede it directly, with little difference in meaning.

| 구경해요 | watches, views         |
| 구경(을) 해요 | does watching/viewing = watches, views |

Even if the verbal noun itself is a direct object (i.e., has the particle 을~을 after it), there can be another direct object, as you have seen. Ordinarily, most Korean sentences have only one. When the verbal noun is not marked as the direct object of 해요 (e.g., 구경해요), the
whole expression as a unit may have a direct object. This means that any of the following combinations is possible.

**sees a movie**
- 영화을 (pause) (_PAUSE) 해요
- 영화를 (pause) (_PAUSE) 해요
- 영화를 (pause) 구경 해요
- 영화 구경해요

**studies Korean**
- 한국말을 (pause) 공부 해요
- 한국말 공부 (pause) 해요
- 한국말을 공부 (pause) 해요
- 한국말 공부해요

8.3.1.1 Using 안 and 못 with Separable Verbal Nouns (Processive)

As you have just learned, the negative words 안 and 못 are placed immediately before the verb they modify. The situation is no different for processive verbal noun plus 해요 structures. Since 하 is the verb, the negative word goes immediately before it.

**sees a movie**
- 영화을 (pause) 안 해요
- 영화를 (pause) 안 해요
- 영화를 (pause) 구경 안 해요

**studies Korean**
- 한국말을 (pause) 안 해요
- 한국말 공부 (pause) 안 해요
- 한국말 공부 (pause) 구경 안 해요

Of the three possibilities illustrated here, the first and second (which is really the first with the object particle dropped) are most common. The third possibility does not sound elegant in Korean, but you will hear it from time to time. A fourth possibility is to place 안 in front of the verbal noun; you may hear this from time to time, especially from younger speakers, but this is not considered standard, good Korean.

Lesson Eight / 134
You will learn another way to negate verbs in Lesson Twelve.

8.3.2. Nonseparable Verbal Nouns (Descriptive)

There are also descriptive verbal nouns in which 해요 means is rather than does: 깔끔해요 is clean, neat; 안녕하세요 is at peace (well, equivalent to 잘 있어요); 미안해요 is uneasy; sorry.

Notice that descriptive verbs never take the direct object particle 을~를 because they cannot be separated from the verb 하-. So you can never have something like:

*미안해요.

In theory, then, if you wish to negate a nonseparable verbal noun plus 해요 structure, you should be able to put 안 before the entire composite verb (remember that you can't use 못 before descriptive verbs).

*미안해요 isn't sorry, doesn't feel sorry
*안 깔끔해요 isn't clean, isn't neat

Again, you may hear such forms spoken in Korean, but these forms are not considered elegant. You will have to wait until Lesson Twelve to learn another way to negate such structures.

8.4. More on Adverbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs (fast in runs fast, 빨리 in 빨리 먹어요). Manner adverbs answer the question how? or in what manner? Time adverbs answer the question when? Place adverbs answer the question where? Degree adverbs are words like very, a little, etc. As you have seen, adverbs like these typically appear just before the verb they modify. They never serve as subjects or objects.

When different types of adverbs co-occur, they tend to follow the order: time, place, degree and manner.

Lesson Eight /135
Lately Manho smokes a lot at home.

Here are some useful adverbs in Korean.

**Manner Adverbs**
- 잘 (well; often, a lot)
- 함께 (together)
- 같이 (like, together)
- 깨끗이 (neatly)
- 안녕히 (at peace, in good health)

**Time Adverbs**
- 아직 (still, yet)
- 지금 (now)
- 늦 (always)
- 언제나 (always)
- 보통 (usually, normally)

**Place Adverbs**
We have not learned any place adverbs yet.

**Degree Adverbs**
- 참 (very, truly)
- 주로 (mainly, for the most part)
- 아주 (very)

Notice that some of the adverbs listed above end in -이 or -히. It is not always predictable when you can create an adverb like this from a verb base, and you should not attempt to create such adverbs on your own.

Some of the adverbs overlap in meaning: 잘 and 많이 share the meaning many, much, a lot, but only 잘 means well and often (often is also expressed by the adverb 자주). The adverb 많이 and the descriptive verb 많이 should not be confused with each other. The verb means there is much, there are many or (someone) has much/many; it is equivalent to 많이 있어요. The opposite of 많이 is 적이 (there is little, there are few or (someone) has little/few.

**Lesson Eight / 136**
There are a lot of exchange students.

Sujin doesn't say much. But Tongho talks too much.

I go to church mostly on Sundays.

Do you eat Korean food often?

Sometimes.

Do you still swim every day?

No. Lately I'm too busy.

Do you usually do it alone?

No. I go with a friend.

When English uses with plus the name of an object, with is often meant in a special sense, namely by or by means of. For example, you could take the sentence I wrote this with a pencil. This with is put into Korean with the particle (으)로. You have also seen (을)로 with the names of languages, to mean in (by means of) that language—한국말로 in Korean, 영어로 in English. This is a two-shape particle which is pronounced 으로 after all consonants except ㄹ, but 로 after ㄹ and vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>After most Consonants</th>
<th>After Vowels and ㄹ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>책으로</td>
<td>with a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>무엇으로</td>
<td>with what?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈으로</td>
<td>with money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>성냥으로</td>
<td>with matches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이로</td>
<td>with paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차로</td>
<td>by train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어로</td>
<td>in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필로</td>
<td>with a pencil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The particle (으)로 has a variety of meanings which can be set out as follows (there are certain others in addition which you will learn later).
a. Function: as, in the capacity of

29. 교환학생으로 한국에 가요.
   I'm going to Korea as an exchange student.

b. Direction: toward, to, in the direction of

30. 오른쪽으로 가세요.
    Please go to the right.

31. 이쪽으로 오세요.
    Please come this way.

c. Means: with, by, by means of

32. 이 펜을 연필로 쓰세요.
    I'm writing this letter with a pencil.

33. 비행기로 가세요?
    Are you going by plane?

d. Manner: -ly

34. 정열적으로 노래를 불러요.
    He sings passionately.

8.6. More New Particles: (이) 랑 and

The dialogue of this lesson had the following sentence, which illustrates the use of the next particle.

35. 경제학이랑 정치학도 배워요.
    I'm learning Economics and Politics, too.

The two-shape particle (이) 랑 has the shape 이랑 after nouns ending in a consonant, and 랑 after nouns ending in a vowel. It has exactly the same function as 하고, i.e., to link two nouns with the meaning and. It is somewhat more colloquial than 하고. In Korean, it is also possible to repeat these particles after the last noun enumerated. Here are examples.

36. A. 런던이랑 뉴욕
    London and New York
B. 어제랑 오늘
    yesterday and today
C. 고기를 양이랑
    meat and cooked rice
D. 돈이랑 편지랑 비행기랑
    money, a letter, and an airplane
8.7. Particle Sequences

A topic in a Korean sentence, i.e., a phrase ending with the particle 은 ~ 는, is most often a noun or noun phrase. But it may also be another particle phrase, i.e., an expression of time, place, manner and so on, such as 아침에 in the morning, 학교에서 from (or at) school, 펜으로 with a pen, 연필로 with a pencil, etc. When such a phrase becomes a topic, the result is a sequence (or string) of particles, the last one being the topic particle 은 ~ 는.

37. 아침에는 커피를 마셔요.
   In the mornings, I drink coffee.   (compared to what I do the rest of the day)

38. 학교에서는 야구를 해요.
   At school, we play baseball.   (talking about what happens at school, we play baseball there)

39. 자전거로는 못 가요.
   You can't go [there] by bike.   (talking about going by bike, you can't go there that way)

40. A. 메일 아침한테서는 편지를 받아요.
    B. 아침한테서는 안 받아요?
       A. I get a letter every day from my mother.
       B. Don't you get one from your father?   (but not from other relatives, by contrast)

Particles that do not enter into sequences with 도 or with 은~는 are 이~가, the subject particle and 을~를, the direct-object particle.

41. A. 한국말을 가르쳐요?
       Do you teach Korean?

       B. 아니오, 한국말은 김 선생님이 가르쳐요.
          No, it's Mr. Kim who teaches Korean.
          (Do you teach Korean? No, if it's Korean, Mr. Kim (is the one who) teaches it.)

42. A. 저녁에는 무엇을 해요?
       What do you do in the evenings?

       B. 노래를 불리요.
          I sing songs.

       A. 편지는 안 써요?
          How about letters: don't you write (any)?
Similarly, 르 appears instead of 이~가 or 을~를, not in combination with them.

43. A. 개가 있어요?
   Have you a dog?
   B. 네, 있어요.
   Yes, I have.
   A. 고양이도 있어요?
   Have you a cat, too?

44. A. 야구를 좋아해요.
   I like baseball.
   B. 수영도 좋아해요?
   Do you like swimming, too?

This means that some sentences with NOUN은~는 and NOUN도 are ambiguous, like sentences in which the subject particle 이~가 or direct object particle 을~를 is dropped. Ambiguity can usually be cleared up by marking either the subject or the object with what remains understood as the unmarked one, but it is not possible in Korean to specify the subject or object and at the same time mark it with 은~는 or 도.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Using 안 and 도

Here is a sentence with two blanks in it. Using one of the verb expressions from the list below, fill in the blanks. Use the same verb in both blanks.

선생님은 (____) 안 ____, 그리고 저도 (____) 안 ____.

1. waiting for a train
2. eating breakfast
3. giving books to the students
4. taking medicine
5. at home
6. open the door
7. living with (하고) his parents
8. taking a walk in the park
9. meeting a friend
10. teaching Russian
11. drinking alcohol
12. writing letters
13. watching television
14. cleaning the room
Exercise 2: Building Sentences from Phrases

Build a complete sentence around each of the following Korean expressions, translating the new sentences into English as you go.

1. 밥이  
2. 부모님하고  
3. 엄행에서  
4. 테이블 위에  
5. 점으로  
6. 대학교에서  
7. 분필로  
8. 회사에  
9. 공원에서  
10. 비행기로  
11. 정열적으로  
12. 정치학이랑 러시아말  
13. 개하고  
14. 뉴욕으로  
15. 다른 기차로  
16. 무엇으로  
17. 영어로  
18. 친구하고  
18. 오른쪽으로  
20. 오늘하고 난일  
21. 그림 말에  
22. 항상

Exercise 3: Practice with 안, 못 and -(으)시-

Convert the following questions to honorific forms, then answer each one negatively in turn (with a full sentence: No, I don't ______.) Then say what you do do instead.

1. 좋 미어요?  
2. 술 마시요?  
3. 학교에 가요?  
4. 야구 좋아해요?  
5. 자요?  
6. 런던에서 살아요?  
7. 텔레비전을 봐요?  
8. 연필로 펜지를 써요?  
9. 노래를 잘 불러요?  
10. 교회에 나가요?
Exercise 4: Honorifics in Questions and Answers

For the following sets of information you are required to ask two questions and to give two replies (either positive or negative). Make sure you give full sentences each time. The questions should use the honorific verb forms, the answers should not. For the first set of information, then, you make up Korean sentences corresponding to: Do you eat rice? Yes, I do eat rice. Do you drink water? No, I don't drink water.

1. 짜심 내 물 아니오
2. 고기 내 술 아니오
3. 닭배 내 주스 아니오
4. 친구 내 편지 아니오
5. 팡 내 우유 아니오
6. 한국말 내 일본말 아니오
7. 신문 내 잡지 아니오

Exercise 5: Honorific Questions

Each of the following sentences means I do something. Change the topic and the verb form so that the meaning is do you, sir, do something? Write out the changed sentence and then translate it. Make sure that you practice each one out loud as well. For example, if you are given 나는 학교에 가요 your answer should be 선생님은 학교에 가세요? Are you going to school?

1. 나는 운행에서 일해요.
2. 나는 책을 잘 사요.
3. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르쳐요.
4. 나는 아침에는 팡이랑 우유를 먹어요.
5. 나는 교회에 나가요.
6. 나는 미국 사람이에요.
7. 나는 수영을 안 좋아해요.
8. 나는 오늘 저녁에 바빠요.
9. 나는 중국말이 읽어요.
10. 나는 술을 잘 해요.
11. 나는 많이 못 먹어요.
12. 나는 친구를 기다려요.
13. 나는 담배를 안 피워요.
14. 나는 일찍 자요.

Lesson Eight / 142
Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Where appropriate, put the verb into the honorific form. [Note: it will not always be appropriate.]

1. Are you going to bed now? No, I'm getting up.
2. At the weekends I sometimes take medicine.
3. Mr. Murphy often goes swimming with his wife.
4. Do you smoke? No, I don't.
5. I receive money from my mother. And then I see a movie with my friends.
6. My father studies economics. He studies politics, too.
7. On that student's desk there is a notebook. And he always cleans his room real clean.
8. What subjects are you learning? What's your major?
10. You can't go there by airplane. I know!
11. Come quickly!
12. Please head to the right at that church.
13. I don't have a lot of time.
14. What foreign languages do you know, Mr. Ch'oe [최] ? Do you speak English? We learn English from [with] this textbook.

15. 나는 런던대학에서 한국말을 배우어요.
16. 나는 여기(서) 살아요.
17. 나는 안 먹어요.
18. 나는 항상 음을 먹어요.
19. 나는 다른 교제를 안 씀. (How is this sentence ambiguous?)
20. 나는 라디오를 들어요.
21. 나는 내일 몸 떼나요.
Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 의사 선생님은 테레비 안 보세요. 예기들도 안 봐요.
2. 우리 집 개는 공원에서 안 놀아요. 늦 집에 있어요. 참 착해요.
3. A. 고양이 있으면요? 커피?
   B. 좀 작아요.
   A. 다른 고양이들이랑 같이 자주 놀아요?
   B. 네, 그런데 고기를 많이 먹어요. 그리고 우유도 많이 마셔요.
4. 브로드 미스로 다녀요. 빨리는 못 가요.
5. 호텔은 미국 대사관 바로 맞은 편에 있어요. 우리 집 바로 옆에 있어요.
6. 우리 남편은 편지를 잘 안 써요.
7. 여자친구는 집에서 될 해요?
8. 오 선생님은 서울에 기차로 가세요. 저녁에는 항상 친구 집에 가요.
9. 저희 아버님은 매일 아침 아침이랑 같이 산보하세요.
10. 요즘 우리 집에서는 호주 교환학생 한 명이 살아요. 능 공부해요.
11. 경의 씨는 언제나 일찍 일어나요. 그리고 늦게 자요.
12. 내 방은 보통 깨끗해요. 거기서 가끔은 공부해요. 그렇지만 도서관이 나아요.
13. 박 교수님 사모님하고 배 선생님 부인은 매일 점심을 함께 드세요.
14. 야구는 혼자서 못 해요. 먼저 친구들에게 기다려요. 이 근처에서 잘 살아요.
In this lesson you will learn how to exchange pleasantries and strike up a relationship with a stranger. You will also learn how to talk about something you did in the past (over the weekend). In addition, you will learn two different ways to say like, how to express wishes want to, a new particle for and, and the purposive ending -(으)리.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

While waiting at Kimp'o Airport on Sunday to meet a colleague flying in from Britain, Chris Murphy is approached by a Korean businessman waiting in the same area. The businessman obviously thinks Chris has just flown in and wants to practice his English.

아저씨      어여 - 하우 두 유 두?
머피         네? 아, 예, 안녕하세요?
아저씨      아이구! 한국말을 하시는군요. 한국에 처음 오셨어요?
머피         네, 그런데 사실은, 작년에 왔어요. 서울에서 살아요.
아저씨      그러세요? 무슨 일로 오셨어요?
머피         사업 때문에 왔어요. 영국회사에서 일해요.
아저씨      그러면 얼마 동안 계세요?
머피         글쎄요. 아직 모르겠어요.
아저씨      미국부재요?
머피         아니네요, 영국사람이에요.

Lesson Nine / 145
They exchange namecards and go their separate ways.

Notes

네?
Excuse me? or I beg your pardon? [Literally: Yes? This is how you ask for a repeat in Korean.]

한국말 하시는군요
Oh, I see you speak Korean! Forms in -는군요 indicate a sudden, first realization. You will learn more about them in a later lesson.

그리세요?
Really? or Is that so? This is the polite honorific version of 그래요?

무슨 일로?
on what sort of business? [Literally: on account of/ by way of what matter?]
The whole sentence amounts to: What brings you to Seoul?

 얼마나 동안?
[for] how long? (pronounced: 얼마동안)

연제 한번
Some time or other. [Literally: some time 연제 one time 한번.]

Dialogue 2

Chris Murphy is talking to his secretary, Miss Lee, at the office.

머피

미스 리, 주말 재미 있게 보냈어요?

미스 리

네, 여제 사모님하고 극장에 갔었어요.

머피

이야기 들었어요. 극장에 사람들이 많았어요?

미스 리

네, 꽤장했어요. 남대문시장처럼 사람들이 많았어요.

머피

무슨 영화를 봤어요?

미스 리

한국 영화였어요.

머피

나도 한국영화를 한번 보고 싶어요. 영화 팬padł어요?

미스 리

별로 재미 없었어요. 그래서 중간에 나왔어요. 그리고 나서 사모님과 같이 차 마시러 다방에 갔어요.

Lesson Nine / 146
Notes
아리기 들었어요  I heard [all] about it. [Literally: I heard the story.]
한국 영화였어요  It was a Korean film. The past tense of the copula -였어요 can abbreviate to -었어요 after a noun ending in a vowel.

별로 + NEGATIVE  not particularly, doesn’t particularly
한번  one time, once
그리고 나서  after that, having done that

Vocabulary

Places
술집 [-집]  bar, tavern, drinking establishment
여관  small hotel; inn
우체국  post office
사무실  office
댁  house (honorific)
댁이 어디세요?  Where do you live? (not *댁이 어디에 있으세요?)
정원  garden
d바방  tearoom, tabang

People
사모(남)  prominent man/superior’s wife (elegant/honorific)
[Literally: teacher’s wife]
목사(남)  reverend, minister
신부(남)  (Catholic) priest
동생  younger brother or sister
여자동생  younger sister
남자동생  younger brother
영화배우  movie actor
배우  actor or actress
여자배우  actress
남자배우  actor
딸  daughter
아들  son
가족  family

Lesson Nine / 147
Things You Wear and How To Wear Them

- shoes, footwear in general
  - (dress) shoes
  - women’s shoes
  - a pair of shoes

- sneakers, tennis shoes
- boots
- socks
- (finger) ring
- gloves
- hat
- glasses
- scarf
- wear a watch; put on a watch
- wear a tie; put on a tie

Nouns you can use with 입 - wear

- clothes
- jacket
- suit
- shirt, dress shirt
- trousers
- jeans
- coat
- skirt
- sweater, jumper

Examples of 신 - wear (footwear)

- 구두를 신어요.
- 신발을 신어요.
- 양말을 신어요.

wears shoes, puts on shoes
wears shoes, puts on shoes
wears socks, puts on socks

Examples of 가지 - wear (gloves, ring)

- 반지를 가요.
- 장갑을 가요.

wears a finger ring, puts on a ring
wears gloves, puts on gloves

Examples of 쓰기 - wear (hat, glasses)

- 모자를 쓴어요.
- 안경을 쓴어요.
- 스카프를 써요.

wears a hat
wears glasses
wears a scarf

Lesson Nine / 148
Other New Nouns and Related Expressions

차
 Describe

*1- tea, 차

*2-

NOUN

a

*3-

UNIVERSITY, STATE UNIVERSITY

TIME PERIOD

the news (on radio, TV)
car, automobile
research
does research
(professor's) office
middle, midway
midway, in the middle
business
trade
trading company
new NOUN
I've bought a new suit.
price
How much is it [the price]?
namcard, business card
upstairs; the floor above
downstairs; the floor below
tooth, teeth

because of NOUN; on account of NOUN
I'm here [I've come] on business.
I couldn't sleep because of the baby.

for TIME PERIOD, during TIME PERIOD
for how long? for what duration?
for an hour

Some Adverbial Expressions

더

more

Please give me a little bit more.

Please do it one more time.

Moreover, What's more; (yet) again

fact; in fact

In fact; Actually

easily

very

Yesterday was very hot.
More New Verbal Expressions

just a moment ago, just now
(not) particularly
last year
last year
I don't really know. Let me think.
roast it, broil it
He cooks meat.
not interesting, boring; not fun
interesting; fun
interestingly; in a fun way
in such a way that it was interesting
Did you enjoy [watching] the movie?
No, I didn't find it very interesting.
go up
come up
ascend, go up
The price has gone up a lot.
go down
come down
descend; get off/out (bus, taxi)
The price has come down a lot.
Get off at Seoul Station.
come out
go out
be quite something, be impressive
arrive
get in touch, make contact
talk, chat
story
go (and come back)
Where have you been?
dad
He brushes his teeth.
be enjoyable, pleasant, fun
in an enjoyable way, enjoyably
Did you have a good ['enjoyable'] weekend?

Lesson Nine / 150
Lesson Notes

9.1. Verbs: Past Tense

9.1.1. Past Tense, Polite Style

As you know, Korean verb forms are made up of bases with endings on them. The present-tense forms you have learned are all in the Polite Style 해요 and have the particle 요 at the end to mark that style. As you learned in Lesson Seven, when you remove this 요, the part that remains is what we call the infinitive 해. The Korean infinitive is what the past tense is based on. The PAST BASE is made by adding -/ to the plain infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>해</td>
<td>했-</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>야-</td>
<td>많아</td>
<td>않았-</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>자</td>
<td>잔-</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>써</td>
<td>썼-</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빠르-</td>
<td>빠르</td>
<td>빠랐-</td>
<td>was fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>놀-</td>
<td>놀아</td>
<td>놀았-</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (ㄷ / ㄷ: 들다)</td>
<td>들어</td>
<td>들였-</td>
<td>listened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더 w- (ㅂ / w: 더다)</td>
<td>더워</td>
<td>더웠-</td>
<td>was hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구 w- (ㅂ / w: 곧다)</td>
<td>구워</td>
<td>구웠-</td>
<td>broiled it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

withdraw money (from/out of the bank)
want to; it is desired (see Grammar Note 9.6)
make a phone call
answer the phone
spend (time); send
Did you have a fun weekend?
mail it, post it
turn out a certain way
Is handsome/good-looking. [usually said of males]
Is ugly. [said of both males and females]
To the past base formed in this way you add the infinitive vowel 어 to give the past infinitive. Then you need to add a verb ending. If you are speaking in the Polite Style, which we have been learning up to now, you add the polite particle 요 in the normal way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do (irregular)</td>
<td>했어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet (somebody)</td>
<td>만났어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치-</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르쳤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시-</td>
<td>be; exist (hon)</td>
<td>계셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>매-</td>
<td>ties it</td>
<td>매었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-apses</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>쳤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>쳤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>쳤어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나쁘-</td>
<td>be bad</td>
<td>나빴어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>not to know</td>
<td>몰랐어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>call; sing (a song)</td>
<td>불렀어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>be; have; stay</td>
<td>있었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>not exist</td>
<td>없었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫았어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen to; take (a class)</td>
<td>들었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끄다</td>
<td>ask</td>
<td>물었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더우-</td>
<td>is hot</td>
<td>더웠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구우-</td>
<td>broils it</td>
<td>끕었어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>it is (copula)</td>
<td>되었어요/있었어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some more examples.

9.1.2. Passive Past

The past tense of verbs denoting actions are translated as 'he has been'. The past tense of verbs of going away (e.g., gone) are translated as 'he’s gone'. In the past tense, you can say that you are back now using the phrase PAST-PAST:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>미스 리</td>
<td>You will learn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that this lesson uses the following lessons:

a. simple past
b. the past tense

When you complete this lesson, your knowledge of the Korean past tense should be complete.

9.1.3. Past Perfect

To make something you did in the past perfect, you use the past perfect infinitive and...
The Polite Style past tense of the copula has two shapes. Nouns ending in a consonant take the shape in -이었어요, while nouns ending in a vowel take the shape in -있어요 (a spelling abbreviation):

\textit{wrote}. It was a suit.

\textit{was}. It was a shoe.

### 9.1.2. Past and Past-Past

The past tense is usually translated by the English \textit{did (was)} or \textit{had done (had been)}, but for verbs of going and coming a result is implied: \textit{정어요} means \textit{he went} (and is still gone); \textit{he's gone/left} and \textit{있어요} means \textit{he came} (and is still here); \textit{he's here}. To say \textit{he went} (but is back now) and \textit{he came} (but left again so he isn't here anymore), there is a special PAST-PAST form, like the one you saw in dialogue two of this lesson.

\textit{야서, yes, yesterday I went to the cinema with your wife (and now I'm back).}

You will learn more about Past-Past forms in a later lesson.

Notice that there are two ways to look at English expressions such as \textit{he's here/there}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item [a.] simple location \textit{여기/기기에 있어요.}
  \item [b.] the result of movement from another place \textit{있어요/있어요.}
\end{itemize}

When you can paraphrase \textit{he's here} by \textit{he's arrived, here he comes/her he is}, the second rendering is appropriate.

### 9.1.3. Past Tense, Honorific Polite Style

To make honorific forms past tense, you add the past-tense marker -\textit{어요} to the honorific infinitive and complete the form by adding a Polite Style ending.

\textit{Lesson Nine / 153}
### Honorific Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific Base</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Polite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>가서</td>
<td>가셨-</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>오시-</td>
<td>오서</td>
<td>오셨-</td>
<td>오셨어요</td>
<td>오셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얻-</td>
<td>얻으시-</td>
<td>얻으서</td>
<td>얻으셨-</td>
<td>얻으셨어요</td>
<td>얻으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들으시-</td>
<td>들으서</td>
<td>들으셨-</td>
<td>들으셨어요</td>
<td>들으셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구-</td>
<td>구우시-</td>
<td>구우서</td>
<td>구우셨-</td>
<td>구우셨어요</td>
<td>구우셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-</td>
<td>노시-</td>
<td>노서</td>
<td>노셨-</td>
<td>노셨어요</td>
<td>노셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나(-/-)</td>
<td>나으시-</td>
<td>나으서</td>
<td>나으셨-</td>
<td>나으셨어요</td>
<td>나으셨어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some of the verbs you have learned so far, in the polite past and the honorific polite past.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Polite Past</th>
<th>Honorable Polite Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>했어요</td>
<td>하셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>게시-</td>
<td>exist; stay</td>
<td>[see 잇-, 잇-]</td>
<td>게하셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다리-</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>기다랗어요</td>
<td>기다리셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>it is</td>
<td>이루어요</td>
<td>이루어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>치어요</td>
<td>주셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>갔어요</td>
<td>가셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>be big</td>
<td>컸어요</td>
<td>컸어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
<td>왔어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배웠어요</td>
<td>배웠셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at, see; read</td>
<td>찾아요</td>
<td>찾아셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>샀어요</td>
<td>샀셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬었어요</td>
<td>쉬셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>노-</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>놀았어요</td>
<td>노하셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살았어요</td>
<td>살았셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be, exist; have; stay</td>
<td>있었어요</td>
<td>있었셨어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>not exist</td>
<td>없앴어요</td>
<td>없으셨어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Nine / 154

---

9.2. The two-shape pattern

The two-shape patterns, such as 쓰고 and (이)행, are followed by vowels or specific consonants.

Like other parts of speech, inflection means that if you have a certain verb, you have a word for and, in this case, the past tense.

중이와(이)는

Once two or more consonants are followed by what is called a two-shape pattern, e.g.

*연필과, 아버님과, 상웃과*.

Sometimes 과~과 쓰이는데요.
## 9.2. The Particle 과 ~ 와 and

The two-shape particle 과 ~ 와 means with or and, just like the more colloquial particles 하고 and (이)랑. 과 ~ 와 is a two-shape particle that is pronounced 과 after consonants and 와 after vowels.

### Consonants

- 양말과
- 그 여권과
- 우체국과

### Vowels

- and socks
- and that inn
- and the post offic
- and the telephone
- 내 코트와
- 창바지와
- and my overcoat
- and the jeans

Like other particles, 과 ~ 와 is pronounced as though it were part of the word before it. This means that if you are going to pause between nouns linked by 과 ~ 와, you pause after the word for and, instead of before it as in English.

![Image](image_url)

Once two or more nouns have been linked with this particle, the group as a whole is followed by whatever particle is necessary to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. For example:

- pencil and paper (as topic)
- father and mother (as subject)
- the store and the inn (as object)

Sometimes 과 ~ 와 is added after the last noun before putting on the relational particle: 연필과 종이와는.
9.3. Ways To Say (together) with

The adverb 합계 means together, and, like 같이, it can follow noun plus 과~와, noun plus (이)랑, or noun plus 하고 to mean together with [so-and-so] or simply with [so-and-so]. The noun in these expressions usually denotes a person or other living being. The word 합계 is used in exactly the same way as 같이. [Also see Section 6.4.]

아버님과 같이
아버님하고 같이
아버지랑 같이
아버지랑 합계
아버지하고 합계
아버지랑 합계

친구와 같이
친구하고 같이
친구랑 같이
친구하고 합계
친구랑 합계

같이 갔어요
함께 갔어요

or (together) with Father
or 
or 
or 
or 

9.4. Ways To Say like

9.4.1. The Particle 처럼

The particle 처럼 means like as in does something like NOUN. Here are some examples.

1. 나처럼 정치학을 전공했어요.
   He majored in political science like me.
2. 친호 씨는 어머니처럼 착해요.
   Chinho is good-hearted like his mother.
3. 그 여자는 영화배우처럼 예쁘죠.
   That woman is pretty, like a movie actor.

9.5. The PURPOSE

The PURPOSE pattern is illustrated by the extended base;
4. 우리 신부님은 가수처럼 노래를 잘 부르세요.
   Our priest sings well, like a pop singer.

5. 저 외교관은 영국 사람처럼 말해요.
   That diplomat speaks like an Englishman.

The word 같다, in addition to meaning together, also means like.

- 나같이: same as
- 선생같이: same as

9.4.2. The Verb 갈아요

In order to express be like NOUN, you have to use a different pattern: NOUN 갈아요. This is illustrated below:

6. A. 그게 뭐예요?
   What's that?

   B. 약 갈아요.
   It looks like medicine, or It seems to be medicine.

7. 우리 한국말 선생님은 영화배우 같으세요.
   Our Korean teacher is like a movie actor.

8. A. 저 사람을 누구예요?
   Who's that?

   B. 진영 씨 친구 같아요.
   It looks like Chinyong's friend, or It seems to be Chinyong's friend.

9.5. The Purposive Form - (으)리

The PURPOSESIVE form -(으)리 is used to express going or coming for the purpose of... This pattern is typically used with verbs of motion like 가- and 오-. The ending is attached straight on to the base of the verb. L-extending verbs attach the -(으)리 ending to the extended base; for example, 여- → open becomes 열리.

9. 편지를 쓰려 위층으로 올라갔어요.
   He's gone upstairs to write a letter.

Lesson Nine / 157
10. He's gone out to the station to meet a friend.

11. I'm going to the cafeteria to eat lunch.

12. They came to our place to drink (booze).

13. Come over sometime (to play, have fun, relax).

주의!

Purposive forms are made only with PROCESSIVE verb bases; there is no - (으.) 려 form for descriptive verbs, nor for the copula.

9.6. Expressing Wishes with -고 싶어요

This pattern allows you to express that you wish to do or would like to do something (the action specified by -고). The pattern consists of a processive base plus the one-shape ending -고, followed by the descriptive auxiliary verb 싶어요 (base 싶-). Descriptive verbs cannot appear in this pattern.

The pattern in -고 싶어요 can be used in two meanings: (1) I (or we) want or would like and, (2) Do you want or Would you like? In other words, it is used for first-person statements and second-person questions. To make questions or statements about third persons (he, she, it, they), you use -고 싶어요 (base 싶어요) instead of -고 싶어요.

Note that the base of the auxiliary verb (싶- or 싶어요-) does all the work with past tense and honorifics: 전화를 걸고 싶었어요 wanted to make a phone call, and 새 양복을 입고 싶었습니다? Do you want to wear your new suit? Here are some more examples.


15. I wanted to wear my new gloves.

Lesson Nine / 158
16. Do you want to study well (Do you want to do well in school?)

17. Would you like to read this book?

18. I want to live in a new house.

19. I wanted to have fun over the weekend (I wanted to spend the weekend enjoyably).

20. I want to listen to the news.

The 고- form is a one-shape ending: it is always -고, regardless of the kind of base it is attached to. L-extending vowel bases attach the 고- form (and all other one-shape endings that begin with 스, 틸, or ㄱ) to the extended shape (with the ㄹ): 어-ㄹ- open has the 고- form 열고. In contrast, the consonant bases that end in -ㄹ (ㄴ ~ 르 verbs) change this to 려 and this is shown in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation, so the 고- form of 들- listens is 들고, pronounced (by automatic change) 들고. Consonant bases that end in -w (ㄴ ~ w verbs) change the -w to ᄀ, so the 고- form of 구w broils it is 굽고, pronounced (by automatic change) 굽고.

Statements in 고 싶어요 are ordinarily used only of one's own desires; to state other people's wishes, you use the expression 고 싶어요. But you can use the simpler form for you when asking a question:

21. I want to go.

22. Ch'ol-su, do you want to go (with us)?

23. Ch'ol-su wants to go.

The particle that follows the object of a transitive verb with 고 싶어요 is usually marked as 을 ~을, but this can sometimes be changed to the particle 이 ~ 가, since 싶어요 is an auxiliary descriptive verb meaning it is desired. In this case, marking the object with 이 ~ 가 shows that you have a particularly strong feeling or affection for the object.

24. I want to eat lunch.

Lesson Nine / 159
25. I want to eat ice-cream.

Verbal nouns which act as the object of 하- do not normally take 이- 가 here.

* I want to study well.

Note that the pattern in -고 싶어 (해)요 is incompatible with the copula. For I want to be a doctor or the like, you have to use the verb 되- become (the thing you become takes the subject marker 이- 가. This is a fact about the verb 되-, not a feature of the pattern -고 싶어 (해)요).

26. I want to be a professor (when I grow up).

Here are some more examples of this construction.

27. Would you like to go out with me to see a movie?
28. I want to see my mother.
29. I want to drink (some) water.
30. I want to stay in a Korean inn.
31. I wanted to rest yesterday too.
32. I want to learn Japanese too.
33. Does Mr. Kim want to go to the US?
34. Mr. Kim, do you want to go to the US too?
35. Do you want to go with me to meet my friend?

Lesson Nine / 160
Finally, notice that it is best to avoid negating this pattern in -고 싶어요 with 안 (negating it with 못 is out of the question, as 싶 is a descriptive verb). The negation pattern with 안 preceding the verb sounds best when 안 is followed by a short and succinct verb, but sounds progressively worse as the verb or verb expression being negated gets longer. You will learn another way to negate verbs by placing a negative element after the base in Lesson Twelve.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Past Tense

Each of the following sentences means someone does something. Change the verb form so that the meaning is someone did something. Write each one out and translate.

1. 친구를 만나세요?
2. 무슨 영화를 보요?
3. 어머니는 친구들한테 편지를 많이 쓰세요.
4. 개가 문을 열어요.
5. 아버지가 말이 적으세요.
6. 그렇게만 친구가 많으세요.
7. 실온, 고기를 많이 못 맛어요.
8. 사모님도 그 책을 읽으세요?
9. 그 영화가 좋아요?
10. 사장님의 나한테 돈을 많이 주세요.
11. 나는 공원에서 아이와 같이 놀아요.
12. 사모님은 언제 도착하세요?
13. 나는 우체국에서 와요.
14. 누가 우리를 봐요?
15. 동생은 언제 호주로 떠나요?
16. 그게는 참 헛어요.
17. 나는 런던 대학(학)생이에요.
18. 박 교수님은 런던에서 사세요.
19. 내 장갑이 여기 있어요.
20. 김 선생 양은 잘 쓰레요.
21. 무슨 연구를 하세요?
22. 정원이 예뻐요.
Exercise 2: Using -고 싶어(해)요

Each of the following sentences mean someone does or did something. Change the verb expression in each so that the meaning is someone wants or wanted to do something using the -고 싶어(해)요 pattern.

1. 나는 세 자동차를 사요.
2. 나는 다른 빅타이를 매요.
3. 서울에 갈이 올라가세요?
4. 택시를 불리요?
5. 선생님은 학교에 전화를 가세요.
6. 만호 씨는 지난 주일에 부산에 내려갔어요.
7. 나는 한국사람한테 편지를 써어요.
8. 나는 중국말도 배워요.
9. 수진 씨는 얘기와 같이 놀어요.
10. 동호 씨는 청바지를 입어요.
11. 옛집 아들은 영화배우가 됐어요.
12. 나는 명함 하나를 받았어요.
13. 예기는 신발은 안 빼였어요.

Exercise 3: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that the important thing is to get the idea across, not to translate literally.

1. Where did you go yesterday? I went to the market.
2. What did you do last night? I slept.
3. Did you come home late last night? No. I came home early.
4. What did you buy at the department store yesterday? I bought trousers and an overcoat.
5. What did you do with your brother? I played in the park.
7. Were there many people on the bus?
8. Did you find the post office easily?
10. Yesterday I didn't polish my shoes. And I didn't brush my teeth, either.

Lesson Nine / 162
Exercise 4: Purposives

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember that the important thing is to get the idea across, not to translate literally.

1. He went out to make a phone call.
2. My daughter went to Korea to research the Korean language.
3. Mother went to the market on Tuesday to buy new shoes.
4. My younger brother went to the store on Friday to buy gloves.
5. I went to the bathroom to brush my teeth.
6. The student came out to open the door.
7. Father went to the bank on Monday to get money [use 갔다오-].
8. Father went to meet a friend.
9. My friend has gone to Korea to teach English.
10. Last night I went out to drink.

Exercise 5: Do/Be Like

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Remember to distinguish between처럼/같이 and 같아요.

1. That movie actor speaks English like an English person.
2. He sings well, like a singer.
3. Here there are always lots of people, like a market.
4. A. Who is that person over there?
   B. Gee, I'm not really sure. It looks like Manho.
5. Are you busy tomorrow too, like today?
6. I want to study well like my friend.
7. She sometimes dresses like a movie actress.
8. My friends and I are like a family.
9. Their garden is really big. It's like a park!
10. Today is good. It's like the weekend.
11. In the evenings this room is like a bar.
12. I bought these shoes last year. But they look like new ones.
13. This hat is the same as (is like) that one.
Exercise 6: Fill in and Translate

Copy the following passage and insert the correct particles in the blanks. If there is more than one possibility, then give alternatives too.

요일일에는 수미 씨가 나 ___ 편지를 썼어요.
그래서 나는 화요일에 수미 씨 ___ 진화를 걸었어요.
그리고 어제 만났어요.
수미는 제호 ___ 같이 왔어요.
우리는 공원 ___ 같이 산보했어요.
제호 씨 ___ 시간이 별로 없었어요. 그래서 빨리 갔어요.
나는 수미 ___ 같이 극장에 갔어요.
영화 ___ 참 재미 있었어요.

Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation

1. 서울 구경하러 갔다왔어요.
2. 학생들은 담배를 피우러 나갔어요.
3. 오늘은 안 나가고 싶어요?
네. 일찍 자고 싶어요.
4. 오늘 아침에는 아주 더웠어요. 그런데, 저녁에는 별로 안 더웠어요.
5. 영화는 별로 재미 없었어요.
6. 선후배도 좀 쉬리 나가셨어요.
7. 영화 끝내었어요?
아직 안 끝내었어요.
8. 친구한테 진화 걸고 싶어요?
9. 아버지는 택시를 부르러 나가셨어요.
10. 공원에 산보하러 나가셨어요.
11. 제가 고양이를 물었어요.
12. 어제 그 새 식당에서 저녁을 먹었어요?
네. 그런데, 음식은 별로 맛 없었어요.
13. 위층에 술집에 올라가고 싶어요.
14. 대학에서는 경제학 공부를 했어요. 그런데, 별로 재미 없었어요.
15. 어제 연 선후배 댕에 놀러 갔어요.

Lesson Nine / 164
16. 어디 갔다왔어요?
방금 우체국에서 왔어요.
17. 영화가 방금 끝났어요.
18. 차를 마시러 다방에 가고 싶어요.
19. 수업에는 좀 쉬고 싶어요.
20. 친구는 무역회사에 다녀요.
21. 이 새 구두 때문에 돈이 많이 나갔어요.
22. 다 왔어요? 아니요, 아직 멀었어요.
23. 사실은 전화를 안 걸었어요.
24. 작년에는 교환학생으로 연대에서 공부했어요.
25. 편지를 부치러 우체국에 방금 갔다왔어요.
26. 아버지는 사업 때문에 유럽에 자주 가세요.
27. 여자친구한테 메일 전화를 걸어요.
28. 돈을 찾으러 은행에 갔다왔어요.
10.1. Vocabulary Review

Below is a list of most of the major verbs you have learned. Make sure you (1) know the meaning of each base, and (2) know how to make the Polite Style 해요-form for each base.

가-: 먀나-
가르치-: 마시-
갖다오-: 번나-
잘-: 맛-
결리-: 말(을) 들-
케시-: 맛 없-
기다리-: 맛(이) 있-
حما-: 메-
끌나-: 마-르-
끼-: 먹-
나(으)나-: 모르-
나가-: 무-르-
나쁘-: 볼-
나오-: 바쁘-
내리가-: 받-
노-르-: 배우-
노래 부르-: 벗-
다니-: 보-
닭-: 보내-
단-: 부르-
다- 움-: 비싸-
되-: 빠르-
드리-: 사-
들-: 사-르-

서-: 전화 거-르-
쉬-: 전화 받-
신-: 좋-
쓰- (x2!) 좋아하-
아-르-: 주-
않-: 주무시-
알아 들-: 즐거w-
아리w-: 찾-
없-: 치-
어-르-: 크-
오-: 파-르-
올라가-: 피우-
-이-: 하-
일어나-: 힘(이) 드-르-
입-: 잔부(를) 하-
입-: 구경(을) 하-
자-: 도착(을) 하-
자르-: 말(을) 하-
작-: 부탁(을) 하-
길수시-: 산보(를) 하-
재미있-: 수영(을) 하-
재미있-: 야구(를) 하-
적-: 연구(를) 하-
연락(을) 하-
일(을) 하-
전공(을) 하-
헷갈하-
미안하-
착하-

Exercise

In each of the following questions, write the Korean equivalents related to each word. Be sure to use the Polite Style 해요-forms for each word.

1. 나
누구
당신
아내
우리
그 사람

2. 친구
누구
무슨 일
무엇
어디
어느 것

3. 여기
말에
오른편
사이에
저기
문

4. 잠자리
상점
학생
신문
그림
책상
Exercise 1: Find the Misfit

In each of the following sets of six Korean words, five words have meanings which are related to each other, while there is one word which doesn't belong. Read aloud all the words in each group, then name the misfit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>2.</th>
<th>3.</th>
<th>4.</th>
<th>5.</th>
<th>6.</th>
<th>7.</th>
<th>8.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>나</td>
<td>잡지</td>
<td>친구</td>
<td>회사원</td>
<td>여기</td>
<td>잡지</td>
<td>사모님</td>
<td>부인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누구</td>
<td>책</td>
<td>누구</td>
<td>교수</td>
<td>밑에</td>
<td>상점</td>
<td>부인</td>
<td>아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>탕신</td>
<td>종이</td>
<td>무신 일</td>
<td>은행원</td>
<td>오후 편</td>
<td>학생</td>
<td>아버지</td>
<td>아이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내</td>
<td>공책</td>
<td>무엇</td>
<td>의사</td>
<td>사이에</td>
<td>신문</td>
<td>아이</td>
<td>어머님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>우리</td>
<td>금급</td>
<td>어디</td>
<td>가수</td>
<td>저기</td>
<td>그림</td>
<td>어머님</td>
<td>다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 사람</td>
<td>신문</td>
<td>어느 것</td>
<td>남편</td>
<td>문</td>
<td>책상</td>
<td>다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9. 배워요
공부해요
산부해요
싸요
가르쳐요
읽어요

10. 물
속
받
위
안
알

11. 집
영화관
여관
악
학교
대사관

12. 언제나
분별
종
메일
가끔
방금

Exercise 2: Related Words

Now, here are some sets of three Korean words each—all of similar meanings. Your task is
to supply two or three additional Korean words for each set which match the meanings of
the words in the original group.

1. 선생
 교수
 의사

2. 상점
 은행
 학교

3. 오후
 아침
 낮

4. 밥
 국
 다음

5. 영국
 러시아
 미국

6. 아내
 애기
 아버지

7. 자요
 일어나요
 먹어요

Lesson Ten /168

10.2. Particle

Here is a list of partiles. Use these to express the relationship between two words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이 ~ 가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은 ~ 는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>을 ~ 를</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에서</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 2: Related Words

Here are some sets of three Korean words each—all of similar meanings. Your task is
aloud, putting in a slight pause in your speech between each word in a set, to supply two or more
than one appropriate, additional Korean word. Choose the most appropriate among the

1. 나

2. 나

3. 누 (구)

4. 일요일

5. 저녁

6. 집

7. 대학

8. 알아 들리다

9. 교회

10. 남자친구

11. 도서관

저기, 저곳,
10.2. Particle Review

Here is a list of the particles you have learned so far in the course.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이~가</td>
<td>subject</td>
<td>한테</td>
<td>to a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>은~는</td>
<td>topic</td>
<td>한테서</td>
<td>from a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도</td>
<td>too, also, even</td>
<td>예게</td>
<td>to a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의</td>
<td>possessive</td>
<td>예게서</td>
<td>from a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에</td>
<td>static location; direction (to)</td>
<td>(으)로</td>
<td>with, by means of, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하고</td>
<td>and; with</td>
<td>(이)합</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>을~를</td>
<td>object</td>
<td>과~와</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에서</td>
<td>dynamic location; from a place</td>
<td>처럼</td>
<td>like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>도 도</td>
<td>both/and, neither/nor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise 3: Fill in the Blanks

Here are some sentences with all the particles replaced by blank spaces. Say each sentence aloud, putting in the particles that are appropriate for each blank. (Remember that when you pause in your speech to think what particle to use, pause before you say the noun, not between noun and particle.) You will find that some sentences can be completed in more than one appropriate way.

1. 나 ___ 린던 대학 ___ 한국말 ___ 배워요.
2. 나 ___ 공원 ___ 산보해요.
3. 누(구) ___ 선생님이예요? 저 분 ___ 선생님이예요.
4. 일요일 ___ 선생님 ___ 일찍 일어나세요?
5. 저녁 ___ 집 ___ 무엇 ___ 해요? 보통 편지 ___ 씀요.
6. 집 ___ 무엇 ___ 보세요? 신문 ___ 잡지 ___ 바요.
7. 대학 ___ 나 ___ 정치학 ___ 전공했어요.
8. 알아 들었어요? 아니오, ___ 알아 들었어요.
9. 교회 ___ 나가세요?
   네. 주로 아침이 ___ 함께 다녀요.
10. 남자친구 ___ 전화 ___ 왔어요.
11. 도서관 ___ 어디 ___ 있어요?
    저기, 저 건물 옆 ___ 있어요.

Lesson Ten / 169
Exercise 4: Making Sentences from Phrases

Here is a list of noun-plus-particle phrases. Build a Korean sentence around each phrase, and practice saying your sentence aloud so it comes out smooth and fast. The exercise will do you more good if you write nothing down.

1. 친구와
2. 술집 야주미니가
3. 전화로
4. 러시아 사람한테
5. 책상 위에
6. 나무 밑에서
7. 무역회사의
8. 아버지한테서
9. 박선생님의
10. 교환학생한테서
11. 일요일날에는
12. 사모님과
13. 동생한테도
14. 무엇이
15. 어머니의
16. 딸도 아들도
17. 치마가
18. 이를
19. 일본말로
20. 성냥하고
21. 이 교실에
22. 저 영화배우가
23. 이 좋이는
24. 명함을
25. 밖에서
26. 회사에서
27. 그 분을
28. 점심도
29. 그림도 책도
30. 의사선생님한테
31. 그 방에서
32. 우체국에서
33. 영국사람에게
34. 영화관에서
35. 약도
36. 시장에서도
### 10.3. Verb Review

Here is a chart of the major verb endings you have learned so far with some representative bases ("—" means the form is odd or does not exist).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-어요/-아요</th>
<th>-(으)세요</th>
<th>-(으)러</th>
<th>-(으)세요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>-이래요</td>
<td>-이세요</td>
<td>-이러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하래요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
<td>하러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되-</td>
<td>되래요</td>
<td>되세요</td>
<td>되러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>만나래요</td>
<td>만나세요</td>
<td>만나러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>서래요</td>
<td>서세요</td>
<td>서러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>보래요</td>
<td>보세요</td>
<td>보러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>쉬래요</td>
<td>쉬세요</td>
<td>쉬러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피우-</td>
<td>피우래요</td>
<td>피우세요</td>
<td>피우러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>쓰래요</td>
<td>쓰세요</td>
<td>쓰러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁘-</td>
<td>바쁘래요</td>
<td>바쁘세요</td>
<td>바icrous러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>다니래요</td>
<td>다니세요</td>
<td>다니러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>모르래요</td>
<td>모르세요</td>
<td>모르러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>부르래요</td>
<td>부르세요</td>
<td>부르러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>혐드-로-</td>
<td>혐드래요</td>
<td>혐드세요</td>
<td>혐드러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드시-</td>
<td>드시어요</td>
<td>드시세요</td>
<td>드시러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>입어요</td>
<td>입으세요</td>
<td>입으러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈-</td>
<td>갈어요</td>
<td>갈으세요</td>
<td>갈으러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>신어요</td>
<td>신으세요</td>
<td>신으러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬w-</td>
<td>쉬워요</td>
<td>쉬워세요</td>
<td>쉬우러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들어요</td>
<td>들으세요</td>
<td>들으러</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나(으)-</td>
<td>나어요</td>
<td>나으세요</td>
<td>나으러</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 5: Questions and Answers

Express each of the following brief questions aloud in Korean; then answer your own question negatively. The first one, for example, will be the Korean equivalent of: *Is he studying political science?* The answer? *No, he's not studying political science.* (Remember, sentences in Korean do not require you to specify a subject (i.e., *he* in these cases), though you can if you wish, to avoid ambiguity for example).

1. Is s/he studying Political Science?  
2. Is s/he waiting for his friend?  
3. Is s/he sleeping?  
4. Is s/he living alone?  
5. Is s/he learning Russian?  
6. Are there many Koreans here?  
7. Is s/he looking for his socks?  
8. Did s/he come on [because of] business?  
9. Is s/he at home?  
10. Is s/he watching a movie?  
11. Is s/he a doctor?  
12. Does s/he work in a trading company?  
13. Does s/he get many namecards?  
14. Is s/he drinking wine?  
15. Is s/he speaking Japanese?  
16. Is s/he a teacher?  
17. Is s/he staying here?  
18. Has the price come down a bit?  
19. Does s/he go to bars frequently?  
20. Does s/he work at the bank now?  
21. Does s/he watch TV too much?  
22. Did s/he understand [catch] it?  
23. Does s/he wear blue jeans often?  
24. Does s/he know very much?  
25. Is s/he room clean?  
26. When does s/he arrive in Pusan?

Exercise 6: Questions and Answers (Honorific)

Now, ask and answer the following questions aloud in Korean, showing special respect for the person to whom you are referring.

1. 텔레비전을 봐요?  
2. 방금 나갔어요?  
3. 아이들이랑 같이 자주 놀아요?  
4. 부모님과 함께 살아요?  
5. 아침 일찍 일어나요?  
6. 영화관을 많이 가요?  
7. 지금 사무실에 있어요?  
8. 주말을 재미 있게 보냈어요?  
9. 한국 사람이에요?  
10. 대사관에 전화를 걸었어요?  
11. 중국말을 배워요?  
12. 자동차를 팔았어요?  
13. 어디에 갔다왔어요?  
14. 가수예요?  
15. 보통 늦게 자요?  
16. 사립대학교에서 가르쳤어요?  
17. 영어를 배워요?  
18. 다른 외국어도 해요?  
19. 명함을 써어요?  
20. 집에 일찍 들어왔어요?  
21. 그 여자를 공원에서 만나요?  
22. 보통 회사에 늦게 가요?

Lesson Ten / 172
Exercise 7: Negative Honorifics

Repeat the answers to the questions in Exercises Five and Six above, making them mean *No, he doesn't* or *can't do something* whenever possible. Don't copy them. Simply practice asking the question and giving the answer as fluently as possible.

Exercise 8: Opposites

Express the following group of questions aloud in Korean and answer them by using a verb of different or opposite meaning, for example, *Is it large? No, it's small. Is he reading? No, he's writing.*

1. Is the building large?
2. Is s/he opening the door?
3. Are there many students?
4. Is s/he giving Mrs. Kim some money?
5. Are you teaching Korean?
6. Did s/he put on the sweater?
7. Is s/he getting up?
8. Did the food taste good?
9. Did s/he sell the car?
10. Does s/he obey the teacher's words?
11. Were the gloves expensive?
12. Does s/he usually stay home?
13. Is s/he working?
14. Did s/he just leave?

Exercise 9: Opposites (Honorific)

Now repeat the sentences of Exercise 8 above, both questions and answers, changing them so that they refer to someone highly esteemed.
10.4. Sentence Review

Exercise 10: Korean to English Translation

Here are fifty Korean practices using the vocabulary and constructions you have learned in the first nine lessons. Read each one aloud, then translate it into English. In English, convey the meaning of Korean, but without necessarily making a word-for-word translation.

1. 시간이 다 됐습니다. 시작합시다.
   A. 그 사람은 선생이에요?
   B. 아니오, 학생이에요.
2. A. 지금 무엇을 하세요?
   B. 뉴스를 보세요.
3. A. 이 반지는 누구의 반지예요?
   B. 내 반지예요. 주세요.
4. A. 어디서 한국말 공부를 하세요?
   B. 고려대학교에서 해요.
5. A. 식당에 가세요?
   B. 친구집에 놀러 가요.
6. A. 저녁에는 공부를 하세요?
   B. 네, 가끔 해요.
7. A. 몸 아파요?
   B. 아니요, 좀 어떠셨어요.
8. A. 잘 하세요.
   B. 네, 보통 일찍 자요.
   B. 그레요.
B. 그래요? 어느 나라에서 오셨어요?


15. 오후에 안 바쁘세요? 부탁 하나 있어요.

16. A. 여기서 멀어요?
B. 아니오, 별로 안 멀어요. 갈이 가요.

17. A. 저 분이 미국 분이 아니세요?
B. 네, 영국 사람이에요.

18. A. 한국말이 어리워요?
B. 네, 합이 들어요.

19. 저 사람이 만호 씨의 여자친구가 아니에요?

20. A. 한국말 가르치요?
B. 아니요, 영어를 가르치요.

21. A. 어디서 가르치요?
B. 성당에서 가르치요.

22. 우리 집 밖에는 나무가 많아요. 정말로 예쁘에요.

23. 열방에서 누가 주무세요?

24. A. 옷 건물은 석양이에요?
B. 아니요, 술집 갈아요.

25. A. 보통 공무를 학교에서 해요, 집에서 해요?
B. 집에서 해요. 학교에서는 잘 안 해요.

26. A. 계 있어요?
B. 네, 있어요. 아주 착해요. 고양이도 있어요.

27. A. 지금 아버님께 대에 계세요?
B. 네, 계세요. 조금 기다리세요.

28. A. 아이들은 어디에 있어요?
B. 집 앞에서 놀아요.

29. 오늘은 영화관에 못 가요. 미안해요.

30. A. 집앞은 보통 학교식당에서 먹어요?
B. 아니오, 거기는 맛 없어요.

Lesson Ten / 175
Lesson Ten / 176

31. A. 차표 샀어요?
   B. 아니오, 아직 못 샀어요. 표소는 어디에 있어요?

32. 전주행 기차는 언제 떠나요? 그리고 몇 시간 걸려요?
   A. 어디에 갔다왔어요?
   B. 세 구두를 사리 갔다왔어요.

33. A. 몇 시간 걸려요?
   B. 두 시간 걸려요.

34. A. 러시아말은 어디서 배우셨어요?
   B. 러시아에서 배웠어요.
   A. 그래요? 러시아에는 얼마나 동안 계셨어요?

35. A. 외국어를 배우세요?
   B. 네, 외국어를 많이 배우고 싶어요.

36. 이에, 연대와 서강대는 다른 신촌에 있어요. 서울대에서는 좀 멀어요.
   고데에서도 좀 멀어요.

37. A. 일요일은 보통 일찍 일어나세요?
   B. 아니요, 일요일은 늦게 일어나요.

38. A. 이 근처에 구두가게 있어요?
   B. 네, 자기 대학 정문 뒤편에 있어요.

39. 우리 집 차는 언제나 깨끗해요. 그래서 새 것 같아요.

40. A. 누구를 기다리세요?
   B. 아버님하고 어머님을 기다려요.

41. 보통 학교에서 바로 집에 가요.

42. 오후에는 우체국 앞에서 친구를 만나요.

43. A. 실례지만, 부탁 하나 있어요.
   B. 네, 말씀하세요.

44. A. 밥 먹었어요?
   B. 아니요, 아직 안 먹었어요.

45. A. 천천히 가세요. 시간이 아직 많아요.
   B. 천천히 가세요. 시간이 아직 많아요.
Exercise 11: English to Korean Translation

Here are forty-five English practices for you to put into Korean. Write them out and then practice them aloud until you can say each one smoothly. Make sure you use some honorifics.

1. A. Where's the Korean teacher?
   B. She's in the classroom.
2. A. Are you American?
   B. I'm afraid not. I'm English.
3. A. What are you doing here?
   B. I work at an English trading company.
4. A. Are there Korean newspapers in the library?
   B. Yes, there are.
5. A. Isn't your wife going to Korea with you?
   B. Yes, she is.
6. A. Are you learning Japanese?
   B. Yes. I go to Japan often on business.
7. A. Have you any cigarettes?
   B. Yes, there are both cigarettes and matches on my desk.
8. It was really fun. The time went quickly.
9. A. Do you read magazines and books in the evening?
   B. I usually read the newspaper first.
10. A. Who did you hear it from?
    B. It's true. I heard it from my brother.
11. A. Do you live with your parents?
    B. No, I live with a friend near city hall.
12. A. Have you got a pen?
    B. I'm sorry, I haven't either a pen or a pencil.
13. A. What are you doing?
    B. I'm looking for my namecards.
14. Mr. Kim doesn't smoke. He doesn't drink either.

Lesson Ten / 177
15. I can't go to the movies with you this evening. I'm too busy.
16. I usually stay at home in the evenings. And I go to bed early.
17. A. Are there many gardens and parks in Korea?
   B. Yes, a few. But there are more in England.
19. A. Are you learning Japanese at school?
   B. No, I'm learning Chinese. But I can't speak it well yet.
20. A. Have you got any paper in your briefcase?
   B. Yes, here's some.
21. I haven't got either matches or cigarettes. Have you got (any)?
22. A. Is your house large?
   B. No, it's not particularly large. But it's nice.
23. Yesterday was really enjoyable. I want to go again.
24. A. Have you got a cat?
   B. No, we haven't got either a dog or a cat.
25. I work at a bank daytimes. And at night I work in a hotel. Because of my work I'm always busy.
26. I meet my friend in front of this store in the evenings. Then we go to the movies.
27. A. Do you usually go for walks in the park by yourself?
   B. No, I usually go with a friend of mine. [Literally: my friend]
28. I eat very early (in the morning). Then I go to school.
29. I drink a lot of water. But I don't eat much meat.
30. I'm going to the restaurant to eat lunch.
31. Have you taken your medicine?
32. A. Which one is better?
   B. This one is.
33. I have a little bit of time this evening.
34. I wanted to phone my friend.
35. But he has gone out.
36. Sometimes he works in the garden.
37. Then he can't answer the phone.
38. I want to go straight home now.
39. It was really hot in the theater. So I took off my sweater.
40. I wanted to brush my teeth. However, I didn't have the time.
41. A. Where did you go this morning?
   B. I went to the market to buy some new jeans.
42. A. I want to go by bicycle.
   B. You can't go by bicycle. It's too far.

Lesson Ten / 178
43. A. Do you usually eat bread and milk in the morning?  
   B. No. I like rice.
44. I wanted to give my brother some money. But I didn’t have any.
45. I want to get up early tomorrow.

10.5. Korean Conversations

Conversation 1

Practice the following conversation aloud, taking turns with the roles. Speak them as naturally and easily as you can. Try to sound as much like a native Korean speaker as you can. Make sure you know what each sentence means.

선생: 안녕하세요?
학생: 네, 안녕하세요.
선생: 시간이 다 됐습니다. 시작할까요?
학생: 그럼에, 시작해요.
선생: 오늘은 한국말로 하세요.
학생: 최송합니다. 다시 말해 주세요.
선생: 오늘은 한국말로 하세요. 알아 들었어요?
학생: 아니, 알아 들었어요.
생생: 이 책이 누구의 책이예요? 대답하세요.
학생: 김 선생님의 책이예요.
선생: 좋아요. 저 공책도 내 공책이예요?
학생: 아니요, 그 공책은 저 학생의 공책이에요.
선생: 이 학교 선생들이 어느 나라 사람이예요? 영국 사람들이예요?
학생: 아니요, 다 한국 분이에요.
선생: 좋아요. 시간이 다 됐습니다. 십분만 십시다.
Conversation 2

만호 유니스 씨, 어디 가세요?
유니스 학교에 가요.
만호 학교에서 무엇을 해요?
유니스 한국말이랑 다른 과목도 공부해야.
만호 아침에 일찍 일어나세요?
유니스 네, 아침에 아주 일찍 일어나요.
만호 한국말 공부는 오후에도 해요?
유니스 아니요, 오후에는 수업이 없어요. 그래서 친구들이랑 같이 놀아요.
집에는 보통 늦게 가요.
만호 저녁에는 무엇을 해요? 영화구경을 가세요?
유니스 아니요, 보통 집에 있어요. 그리고 잠지리를 봐요.

Conversation 3

수진 지금 어디에 가요?
진희 우체국에 가요.
수진 우체국에서 일을 해요?
진희 네, 이제 시작했어요. 오후에는 또 다른 일도 해요.
수진 그래요? 오후에는 무슨 일을 해요?
진희 다방에서 일해야.
수진 그러면, 집에는 늦게 가요?
진희 아니요, 보통 일찍 가요. 집에서는 쉬어요.

Lesson Ten / 180
In this lesson, you will learn how to establish age-based hierarchies with your peers and others, and describe the gory details of a party and the food and drink consumed there. In other words, you learn how to manipulate numbers, times, and dates, also how to count and name hours, days, months, years, etc. You also learn how to manipulate telephone numbers and some particles useful for time, numbers and dates. Finally, you learn a new speech style, the FORMAL Style in Korean.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris and Eunice’s college age son Eric has struck up a new friendship with a Korean student at Korea University.

영칠 에릭 씨, 집이 어디에요?
에릭 평창동에요.
영칠 그래요? 부자 동네에서 사는군요! 집에서 학교까지 얼마나?
에릭 한 시간쯤 걸려요.
영칠 에릭 씨 나이가 몇 살이에요?
에릭 스물한 살이에요. 칠십육년생이에요.
영칠 그래요? 그러면 저하고 동갑이네요! 생일이 언제예요?
에릭 팔월이십사일이에요. 왜요?
영칠 하! 그럼 에릭 씨가 형이네요! (jokingly) 형님!
잘 부탁드립니다. 찐, 집 전화번호가 몇번이에요?
에릭 삼오이국의 일공철삼이에요. 찐, 영철 씨, 이번 주말에 우리 한국어 반에서 파티를 해요. 꼭 와요.

Lesson Eleven / 181
Notes
사용 균요!  Oh, I see you are living (in a rich neighborhood)! Forms in -는군요 indicate a sudden, first realization. You will learn more about them in a later lesson.
동감이네요!  Why, we’re the same age! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요. later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.
행이네요!  Why, that makes you my 형! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요. later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.
잘 부탁드립니다.  Please look out for me. Please take good care of me. This idiomatic expression is often used by subordinates to those higher ups upon meeting for the first time.

Dialogue 2
Eric meets up again with 영철 again the day after Eric’s party.

영철  
어제 파티에 몇 사람 왔습니까?

에릭  
한 일다섯 사람 왔어요.

영철  
그럼습니까? 술을 많이 마셨습니까?

에릭  
맥주를 칠십 병 먹었어요.

영철  
안주도 많이 먹었습니까?

에릭  
오징어 열 마리하고 갑자강 두부 봉지하고 사과 한 상자 먹었습니다.

영철  
몇시에 끝났습니까?

에릭  
세벽 두시에 끝났습니다. 그런데 왜 안 왔어요?

영철  
미안해요, 에릭 씨, 잊어버렸어요. (jokingly) 용서하십시오.

에릭  
알았어요, 편찮아요. 그런데 지금 몇시에요?

영철  
열두시 삼십분입니다. 빨써 점심 시간이네요.

Notes  
알았어요.  [Literally: I’ve understood. This idiomatic expression has the effect of Got it; I see; OK, I get your point.]

Lesson Eleven / 182
Really? This is the Formal Style version of 그림습니다. The Formal Style version of the statement is 그림습니다.

Why, it's lunchtime! You learn more about mild surprise forms in -네요 later. For now, memorize this as part of the dialogue.

Reading Passage

일곱 사람이 음식점에 있습니다.

남자 세 명과 여자 네 명이 있습니다.

식탁 위에 맥주가 일곱 병 있습니다. 사람마다 맥주를 한 병씩 시켰습니다.

과일과 안주도 많이 있습니다.

사람들이 맥주를 마십니다. 안주도 먹습니다.

사람들이 밤 늦게까지 제미 있게 이야기합니다.

Vocabulary

Counting and Time Expressions

몇

러시

메질 게십니까?

얼마나

변호

전화번호

전화번호가 어떻게 됩니까?

여러 NOUN

여러 가지 음식

여러분

한 NUMERAL

한 두 시간 걸립니다.

전에

후에

두 시간 후에 만납시다.

how many? (some/several)

how many days? (a few days)

How many days are you staying?

about how much? approximately how much?

number

telephone number

What’s your telephone number?

several, various NOUN

all kinds of food

all of you, everybody

about, approximately (NUMERAL)

It takes about two hours.

earlier, before

afterwards, later, later on

Let’s meet in two hours.
Lesson Eleven / 184
Other New Nouns

부자  a rich person
동네 neighborhood, part of town
dining table, kitchen table
식탁 a class
반 party
파티 beer
taxu food to go with alcoholic beverages
お昼に potato(es)
dinner table, kitchen table
crispy fried potatoes, potato chips
감자 감자깡 squid
오징어 squid chips
오징어깡 shrimp
class
새우 shrimp
crunchy fried potato, potato chips
새우깡 apple
사과 fruit
과일 shrimp chips
파일 apple
동갑 a person of the same age
영터리 something or someone fake or bogus; rubbish, piece of junk, hogwash

청소를 영터리로 했어요. I did a half-baked job of cleaning up.
물건 goods
길 road, way, street
끌 the end
처음 the beginning
처음에는 at first, in the beginning
처음부터 끝까지 from beginning to end
발화 school vacation

New Verbs

고생(을) 하- suffer, endure hardship
용서(를) 하- forgive
용서하십시오. Forgive me; I beg your pardon.

 Configure where to aha.

어디서 태어나셨습니까? Where were you born?

철- be young
고마워 be grateful, thankful
고맙습니다. Thank you.

Lesson Eleven / 185
spicy, spicy hot
begin
be different
English is different from Korean.
Everybody is different.
do part-time work as a student
part-time work for students
put/place it
order (at a restaurant)
help
Please help me.
it finishes
When does the film finish?
finishes it
Please finish this job quickly.
forget

why?
The reason is, It’s because
without fail, by all means, for sure
Please be sure to come.

In addition, you are responsible for all the numerals and counters in this lesson.

Lesson Notes

11.1. Numbers and Counting

Korean has two sets of numerals. One of these (열, 이, 삼, etc.) was borrowed from Chinese; the other set is native (하나, 두, 세, etc.). Up to 99, both sets are used. For units of 100 and above, only the Chinese set is used; but in compound numbers (like 121) you will hear both (백 이십일 and 백 스물 하나).

In general, the numerals above 10 are combinations of the first ten: 11 is 10 + 1 (열 하나; 십일), 12 is 10 + 2 (열둘; 십이), and so on. The pure Korean (i.e., native Korean as opposed to Chinese) numerals 20, 30, 40, etc., are special words, but in the Chinese system, 20 is 2 x 10 (이십), 30 is 3 x 10 (삼십), etc.

Lesson Eleven / 186
Below are all the numerals you will need to know in Korean. In cases where the actual pronunciation of a numeral differs from the 한글 spelling, we have noted this in square brackets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean Numerals</th>
<th>Pronunciation before Nouns</th>
<th>Sino-Korean Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ordinary Pronunciation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 하나</td>
<td>한</td>
<td>일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 들</td>
<td>두</td>
<td>이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 셋</td>
<td>세~석¹</td>
<td>삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 넷</td>
<td>네~녁¹</td>
<td>사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 다섯</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 여섯</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>육~육²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 일곱</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>칠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 여덟 [여덟]</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 아홉</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 열</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 열여덟</td>
<td>열한</td>
<td>십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 열두 [열두]</td>
<td>열두 [열두]</td>
<td>십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 열셋</td>
<td>열세~석¹</td>
<td>십삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 열넷</td>
<td>열네~녁¹</td>
<td>십사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 열다섯 [열따섯]</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 열여섯 [열여섯]</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십육 [십육²]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 열일곱</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십칠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 열여덟 [열여덟]</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 열아홉</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>십구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 스물</td>
<td>스무</td>
<td>이십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 스물한나</td>
<td>스물한</td>
<td>이십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 스물둘 [~둘]</td>
<td>스물두 [~두]</td>
<td>이십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 스물셋</td>
<td>스물세~석¹</td>
<td>이십삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 스물넷</td>
<td>스물네~녁¹</td>
<td>이십사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 서른</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>삐십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 서른셋</td>
<td>서른세~석¹</td>
<td>삐십삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 마흔</td>
<td>same</td>
<td>사십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 마흔넷</td>
<td>마흔네~녁¹</td>
<td>사십사</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eleven / 187
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean Numerals</th>
<th>Sino-Korean Numerals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ordinary Pronunciation</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pronunciation before Nouns</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>원</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>선타섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>여순</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>여순여섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>일흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>일흔일곱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>여든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>여든여덟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>아흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>아흔아홉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*주의*  
When the pure Korean numerals for 3 and 4 are used before counters which begin with the sounds 씨 and 싸, they can be pronounced 석 and 념, respectively.
Note that the Sino-Korean word for *six* has two shapes: 육십 in word-initial position or after a pause and 육십육 elsewhere.

The surname *Lee* behaves in a similar way: it is pronounced as *Lee* in word-initial position or after a pause, and *Lee* elsewhere.

These cases of *Lee* showing up in one position but disappearing again in another are originally from Chinese: at one stage in its history Korean underwent a sound change whereby word-initial *h* and *l* dropped before *i* and *y*, and the alternation here is the legacy of this earlier sound change.

Each of the Korean numerals from one to four (하나, 둘, 셋, 넷) and twenty (스무) is peculiar in this respect: when used right before the word it is counting, the numeral drops its last sound. Here are some common examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>one person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 사람</td>
<td>one person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 개</td>
<td>one object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한시</td>
<td>one o’clock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둘</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>two months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두달</td>
<td>two months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두분</td>
<td>two esteemed people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두병</td>
<td>people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셋</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>three bottles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세병</td>
<td>three kinds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 가지</td>
<td>three pieces (of paper)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(중이) 세 장</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>four (animals)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 마리</td>
<td>four (animals)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 살</td>
<td>four years (of age)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 시간</td>
<td>four hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무</td>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>twenty times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 번</td>
<td>twenty times</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 대</td>
<td>twenty vehicles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Lesson Eleven / 189*
English allows one to say either *two cows* or *two head of cattle*, but when counting dogs, there is but one choice: *two dogs*. Korean uses both types of construction, but often the latter: 개 두 마리 *two dogs*. The word 마리 is a special kind of COUNTER (also called a CLASSIFIER). It classifies nouns for counting purposes according to some common characteristic. Things counted with 마리 are animals and fishes, things counted with 감 are thin, flat, sheet-like things, and so on.

Other kinds of counters are MEASURES, used to say how much there is of something that can be measured out—by the cupful, the kilogram, pound, the mile (of distance), the dollar or 원 (of money). English has measures, like Korean, and also a few counters (such as head for cattle), but Korean has more of these than English has. That is why there is no ready English equivalent for the counters in 쌍 세 권 *three (volumes of) books*, 집 세 채 *three (buildings of) houses*.

As the lists to follow show, there are some counters which go with the pure Korean numerals and others which require the Sino-Korean numerals. The distinction is sometimes crucial, as in the case of 면.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>한 면</th>
<th>1 esteemed person</th>
<th>일반</th>
<th>1 minute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>두 면</td>
<td>2 esteemed people</td>
<td>이면</td>
<td>2 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 면</td>
<td>3 esteemed people</td>
<td>삼면</td>
<td>3 minutes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A NUMERAL EXPRESSION is either a numeral by itself or a numeral plus a counter. When you are using particles with numeral expressions, you enjoy a certain amount of freedom as to where you can put the particle in the sentence. Numeral expressions have the following four usages.

1. **Numeral Expressions can modify counters:**
   
   두 사람이 있어요. There are two people.

2. **Numeral Expressions can have particles after them:**
   
   가게 두 닥이 있어요. There are two shops.
   책 두 권이 있어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
   책이 두 권이 있어요. There are two (volumes of) books.
   책을 두 권을 쌓아요. There are two (volumes of) books.
   쌓이 두 권을 쌓아요. There are two (volumes of) books.
   쌓이 있어요. There are two.
   두 권이 있어요. There are two (volumes).

Lesson Eleven / 190
3. Numeral expressions can be used as adverbs.

책이 들 있어요.  There are two books.
책이 두 권 있어요.  [Literally: Books exist to the tune of two or two-wise]

There are two (volumes of) books.  [Literally: Books exist to the tune of two volumes]

4. Numeral expressions can be used before the copula.

두 시입니다.  It is 2:00 o'clock.

Here are some examples of numerical expressions in sentences.

1. 이 방 안에는 창문이 일곱 개 있어요.  There are seven windows in this room.

2. 부산행 기차표 두 장 주세요.  Please give me two train tickets to Pusan.

3. 나는 우체국 앞에서 자동차 여섯 대를 봤어요.  I saw six cars in front of the post office.

4. 신문을 세 부 샀어요.  I bought three newspapers.

5. 그 집에 방이 몇 개 있어요?  How many rooms are there in that house?

6. 석 달 후에 영국에 가요.  I'm going to England in [after] three months.

7. 그 서점이 몇 층이에요?  How many floors is the bookshop? or Which floor is the bookshop?

8. 백화점에는 여러 가지 물건을 팔아요.  They sell many/several/all kinds of goods in department stores.

The following counters are used with pure Korean numerals up to the number twenty, after which Sino-Korean numerals may also be used. Note that some counters can also function as independent nouns. Those counters which cannot function as independent nouns, and are therefore bound, are preceded by a dash: -. Those counters which can function as either a counter or an independent noun are preceded by a dash in parentheses: (-):

Lesson Eleven / 191
Counters used with Pure Korean Numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>唐代</th>
<th>-시</th>
<th>o'clock</th>
<th>(-)시간</th>
<th>hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(-)달</td>
<td>-달</td>
<td>months</td>
<td>(-)해</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 사람</td>
<td>- 사람</td>
<td>persons, people</td>
<td>- 군데</td>
<td>places, institutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 명</td>
<td>- 명</td>
<td>persons, people</td>
<td>- 갑</td>
<td>pack (of cigarettes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 분</td>
<td>- 분</td>
<td>esteemed people</td>
<td>(-) 상자</td>
<td>box; case; chest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 마리</td>
<td>- 마리</td>
<td>animals, fish, birds</td>
<td>- 부</td>
<td>newspapers; books (if bought in multiple copies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 살</td>
<td>- 살</td>
<td>years of age (but not for esteemed individuals)</td>
<td>- 장</td>
<td>flat objects; pieces of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 잔</td>
<td>- 잔</td>
<td>cupsfuls</td>
<td>- 채</td>
<td>buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 대</td>
<td>- 대</td>
<td>vehicles, machines</td>
<td>- 개</td>
<td>items, units, objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 가지</td>
<td>- 가지</td>
<td>kinds, varieties</td>
<td>(-) 부지</td>
<td>paper bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 병</td>
<td>- 병</td>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>- 권</td>
<td>bound volumes; books or magazines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-) 번</td>
<td>- 번</td>
<td>times</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주의!
The counters above can usually be used with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numbers above the number twenty. Thus, one can say either 한국 병 or 칠십 병 for seventy bottles.

Counters used with Sino-Korean Numerals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>阶</th>
<th>-분</th>
<th>minutes</th>
<th>(-)초</th>
<th>seconds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일</td>
<td>-일</td>
<td>days</td>
<td>-도</td>
<td>degrees (temperature)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>년</td>
<td>-년</td>
<td>years</td>
<td>-개월</td>
<td>months (time or duration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>층</td>
<td>-층</td>
<td>floors (of a building)</td>
<td>-원</td>
<td>money unit: dollar, won, yen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>볼</td>
<td>-볼</td>
<td>dollars</td>
<td>-리</td>
<td>Korean mile (li) = 1/3 U.S. mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달라</td>
<td>-달라</td>
<td>dollars</td>
<td>-원 (달)</td>
<td>month names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파운드</td>
<td>pounds (sterling)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

주의!
In the case of the counters above, note that for the numbers 101-119, one is more likely to hear 邑 + pure Korean number than all Sino-Korean numbers. For example, 邑십 병 is more common than 百十 병 for 104 bottles.

Lesson Eleven / 192
Counting Days

Counting days in Korean is somewhat awkward since there are two options, at least when counting up to twenty: pure Korean expressions or Sino-Korean expressions. After twenty, only Sino-Korean expressions are used. Furthermore, the pure Korean words used do not follow any immediately obvious pattern and have to be learned separately. Unfortunately there is no substitute for this.

**Pure Korean**
The following expressions are widely used by Koreans of all generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>머칠</td>
<td>how many days?</td>
<td>하루</td>
<td>one day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이틀</td>
<td>two days</td>
<td>사흘</td>
<td>three days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나흘</td>
<td>four days</td>
<td>달새</td>
<td>five days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following expressions are used rather less by Koreans of younger generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>six days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>eight days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열</td>
<td>ten days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following expressions are used primarily by Koreans of older generations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>eleven days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열/GPL</td>
<td>thirteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열딸새 [-딸새]</td>
<td>fifteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열이레</td>
<td>seventeen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>nineteen days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sino-Korean**
Besides the pure Korean expressions above, one can also use Sino-Korean expressions for counting days up to twenty.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>일일</td>
<td>one day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼일</td>
<td>three days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오일</td>
<td>five days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Above twenty, the Sino-Korean numerals are used.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이십일</td>
<td>twenty days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이십일</td>
<td>twenty-one days, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Less than twenty, the Sino-Korean numerals can also be used for dates, in which case it is common in colloquial Korean to add the word 날 day (somewhat redundantly).

오일 (날) the fifth day of the month
The 날 here is optional, like the 달 in 이월 달 February, but is frequent in colloquial usage.

Counting Weeks

Korean has the following words for week:
주일 week
주간 week [‘s time]

Weeks are counted with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numerals, but note in the following list that the Sino-Korean expressions on the right are more common.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pure Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한 주일</td>
<td>일 주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 주일</td>
<td>이 주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 주일</td>
<td>삼 주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 주간</td>
<td>일 주간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 주간</td>
<td>이 주간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 주간</td>
<td>삼 주간</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the Sino-Korean numerals, 주일 week can be shortened to 주.

일주 one week 이주 two weeks

Counting Months

Months are counted with either pure Korean or Sino-Korean numerals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
<th>How many?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>몇 달</td>
<td>몇 개월</td>
<td>how many months?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 달</td>
<td>일 개월</td>
<td>one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 달</td>
<td>이 개월</td>
<td>two months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>석 달, 세 달</td>
<td>삼 개월</td>
<td>three months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 달, 네 달</td>
<td>사 개월</td>
<td>four months</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Eleven / 194
Talking about Months

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Pure Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>무슨 달</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>복월 (여월)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>월월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td>정월</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>육월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>칠월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>팔월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십일월 (달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십이월 (달)</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>심달</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지난 달</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이번 달</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 달 (optionally pronounced 달)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Counting Years

As with counting days, Korean has two options for counting years: pure Korean and Sino-Korean. To count years in pure Korean up to 99, one uses a pure Korean numeral with 해 year.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Pure Korean</th>
<th>Sino-Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>몇 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>how many years?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>one year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>two years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>three years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>four years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>eight years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>twenty years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아흔 아홉 해</td>
<td></td>
<td>ninety-nine years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Starting with 100, one uses Sino-Korean numerals with 년.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100 년</th>
<th>100 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

However, it is most common to count and name all years (including 1-99) using Sino-Korean, and you will rarely hear Koreans using pure Korean beyond 두 해 two years.

Lesson Eleven / 195
what year? [e.g., 1970] or how many years?

one year; Year One

two years; Year Two

three years; Year Three

four years; Year Four

eight years; Year Eight

ten years; Year Ten

twenty years; Year Twenty

ninety-nine years; Year Ninety-Nine

11.2. Numerals in Time Expressions

11.2.1. Telling the Time

To tell the time in Korean, you use the pure Korean numerals followed by 시 which is equivalent to o'clock.

한 시
다섯 시
영두 시 [영두시]

one o'clock
five o'clock
twelve o'clock

To say half past, you put 반 and a half after this expression.

한 시 반
다섯 시 반
영두 시 반

1:30
5:30
12:30

A specific number of minutes after the hour is expressed by the Sino-Korean numerals with -분 minute after the expression.

한 시 십 분
다섯 시 십오 분
영두 시 이십삼 분

1:10 [Literally: one o'clock 10 minutes]
5:15 [Literally: five o'clock 15 minutes]
12:23 [Literally: twelve o'clock 23 minutes]

To express the number of minutes before the hour, you use the same expression but add 전 before at the end.

한 시 십 분 전

12:50 [Literally: one o'clock 10 minutes before]

Lesson Eleven / 196
For AM and PM, you use 아침 or 오전 morning, 오후 afternoon, or 밤 night at the beginning of the expression.

오전 세 시 (or 아침 세 시 )
오 후 네 시
밤 아홉 시 반

3:00 A.M.
4:00 P.M.
9:30 P.M.

To say exactly such-and-such a time, you put 정각 after the time expression.

한 시 반 정각 가) (at) exactly 1:30

The word 시 means hour only in the sense of a point in time, an o'clock. For length or duration of time, 시간 hour is used (as you know, 시간 also means time in general).

9. A. 몇 시간 일쳤어요?
   How many hours did you work?

   B. 여섯 시간 일쳤어요.
   I worked (for) six hours.

10. 놀마다 다섯 시간 반씩 공부했어요.
    I study for five and a half hours every day.

11.2.2. Dates

11. 오늘은 몇 월 몇 일이에요?
    What is today's date? [Literally: Today is which month, which day?]

Dates are given in Korean by proceeding from the longest to the shortest time element; English does the opposite. For example:

12. 천구백오십이년, 시월 십일, 금요일, 오후 세 시 십오 분
    3:15 P.M., Friday, 10 October 1952

Lesson Eleven / 197
This breaks down to:

1952
[Literal: thousand—nine-hundred—fifty—two-year]

10 October
[Literal: October—ten—day]

Friday

3:15 P.M.
[Literal: afternoon—three o’clock—fifteen minutes]

11.2.3. Telephone Numbers

When reading a telephone number in Korean, there is a choice between three closely related patterns. For example, here is how one could read the number 949-1806.

In the full pattern, you spell out everything and round it off with -변 number.

A. 949의 1806 구택사십구국의 천팔백육번
[Literal: 949-exchange’s 1806-number]

However, just as in English one is unlikely to read this number as nine hundred forty-nine, one thousand eight hundred and six, in Korean this pattern can also be abbreviated. The first thing is to omit the 국, meaning (telephone) exchange, in which case the -변 number is optional.

B. 949의 1806 구택사십구의 천팔백육번
[Literal: 949’s 1806]

The most usual way to read a number is to omit the 국 and the 번, and just read each number separately:

C. 949의 1806 구락구의 일팔공육
[Literal: 9—4—9’s 1—8—0—6]
11.3. Four New Particles: 마다, 만, 씩, 족

11.3.1. 마다 Each, Every

13. 아침마다 학교 수영장에서 수영을 합니다.
   *I swim in the school swimming pool every morning.*

14. 일요일마다 서점들이 문을 닫습니다.
   *Every Sunday the bookstores close.*

15. 날마다 여덟시부터 열시까지 아르바이트하다 갑니다.
   *Every day I go to do my part-time job from 8 o'clock till 10 o'clock.*

With time expressions, 마다 is more normally expressed in English by the indefinite article a(n): 날마다 여덟 시간 (literally: every day eight hours) *eight hours a day.* (But to say three days a week 한 주일에 사흘 is more natural than 주일마다 사흘.)

11.3.2. 만 Only, Just

The particle 만 restricts the noun expression it follows. It limits the meaning of the noun to no more than what is specified.

16. 이것만 있습니다.
   *This is all there is.* [Literally: There is only this.]

17. 저만 갑니다.
   *I'm the only one who's going.* [Literally: Only I am going.]

When 만 follows a noun, the particles 이~가, 은~는, and 을~를 are not normally used with the same expression.

18. 사과만 있습니다.
   *There are only apples.*

19. 유니스 씩만큼 합니다.
   *Only Eunice knows.*

20. 요즘 공부만 합니다.
   *Lately all I do is study.*
Occasionally you will run across such combinations as 만이, 만을, and 만은. 만 may be used at the end of other noun-plus-particle expressions, as follows.

21. 우체국에 만 갑니다.
   I'm going only to the post office.

22. 한국말로만 하십시오.
   Speak only in Korean.

23. 공원에서만 산보를 합니다.
   I only take walks in the park.

24. 에릭 세한테만 이야기했습니다.
   I only told Eric.

When 만 is used in sentences with numerical expressions, its meaning is to limit the amount to what is specified.

25. 두 시간만 공부했습니다.
   I studied for two hours.
   [만 limits the time to two hours: Two hours is the length of time I studied.
    I studied for two hours but not longer.]

26. 책 열 권만 샀습니다.
   I bought ten books.
   (만 indicates that ten is exactly the number of books bought.)

In this latter sense, 만 represents a shade of meaning which usually goes unexpressed in English; it contrasts in meaning with the particle 틀, discussed in section 11.3.4 below.

11.3.3. 채 Per, Apiece

The particle 채 is one which expresses an idea not often made explicit in English. It has a distributive function or expresses the idea of regularity. When English says I study for three hours per night, Korean says the equivalent of Every night I study [three hours per]. In other words, the distributive particle goes on the expression of time or quantity, not as in English. Take a look at the following sentence.

27. 하루에 여덟 시간씩 갑니다.
   I sleep 8 hours a day. [Literally: In one day I sleep 8 hours each.]

채 is used at the end of numerical expressions, but it refers to some other element in the sentence. This may be a subject or object or it may be a time expression generalized with 만.
다. It would be on this item of the sentence that *per* would be added in English. You would not use this particle to say *Yesterday I studied for three hours*, since there is no regularity about that (you would use *세 시간 동안* for a duration of 3 hours). But it is used in the following examples in which there is the idea of regularity.

28. 여자친구랑 날마다 세 시간씩 전화로 이야기합니다.
   *I speak on the phone with my girlfriend three hours every day.*

29. 은행에서 날마다 몇 시간씩 일을 하실니까?
   *How many hours (apiece) a day do you work at the bank?*

It is also used in a sense more like the English, when the dominant idea is more literal distribution. The next sentence should illustrate this:

30. 학생들에게 책 한 권씩 줍니다.
    *I gave the students one book each (apiece).*

### 11.3.4. About, Approximately, By

The particle *About* is used with time expressions. When the time expression refers to a point in time, *About* means *at about* [that time].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>알고시 (예)</td>
<td>(at) about time?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>알 시간 풀(예)</td>
<td>(at) about 10:30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With expressions referring to duration of time, *About* means *by* (that time) or *for about* (that length of time).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>네 시간 풀</td>
<td>(for) about four hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

한 *about, approximately* used at the beginning of a numerical expression has the same meaning as *About* at the end of it, as in.

31. 한 열 명 있습니다 same as 열 명 가 있습니다.
    *There are about ten people.*

Be careful not to confuse this 한, which is always followed by a numerical expression, with the short form of a *한* which is always followed by a noun or a counter. Note also that 한, cannot be used with 언제: *한 언제 vs. the acceptable 언제예요? Approximately when?*
한 meaning *about, approximately* is often used in combination with a particle of the same meaning, reinforcing the imprecise character of the expression.

32. 어제 밤 한 이십 명이 왔습니다.
   *About twenty people were here (came) last night.*

33. 한 두 시점 저녁에 오십시오.
   *Please come to our house about two o'clock.*

**주의!**

Notice that *cannot* combine with the copula in an expression like *It is approximately two o'clock.*

Instead, an expression with *is* is preferred:

*It is [Literally: has become] approximately two o'clock.*

11.4. The Particles 부터 *from* and 까지 *to*

You have learned ways to say *from* (에서) and *to* (에), and this lesson also introduces the particles 부터 *from* and 까지 *to*.

부터 *from* is usually used with *time* expressions:

다섯 시부터
from five o'clock
오늘부터
from today

예서 *from* or (happening) *at*, on the other hand, is used *only* in *place* expressions: *from home or (happening) at home.* 부터 is often used to translate *at* in time expressions with *begin* (though 에 may be used in these expressions, as well): *We begin at 10 o'clock.*

Used with both *time* and *place* expressions, 까지 means *to* in the sense of *as far as, up to or until.* 에 with time expressions, you recall, means *at or in that time* 저녁에 *in the evening,* 밤이 *at night.* With place expressions it means either (being) *in, at or on that place*—static location, as in *He's at home;* 의자에 앉습니다 *sits on the chair;* 공원에 있습니다 *it's in the park—or to that place: *학교에 갑니다 goes to school.*

Lesson Eleven / 202
Here are examples of 부터 and 까지 in sentences.

34. 학교는 내일부터 시작합니다.
   School starts tomorrow.

35. 대사관에서는 아침 아홉시부터 일을 시작합니다.
   I start work at the embassy every morning at nine o'clock.

36. 두시부터 네시까지 사무실에서 잡니다.
   I slept in the office from two o'clock till four o'clock.

37. 처음부터 끝까지 영어리였습니다.
   It was rubbish from beginning to end.

38. 아침부터 밤까지 고생을 합니다.
   I suffer from morning till night.

11.5. Formal Style

The Formal Style is used under conditions where formality is called for: in business situations where the relationship between the speakers is official and impersonal, in social situations where the speakers are newly acquainted and the ice is not yet broken, or in any case where reserve seems indicated or desirable. It is also often used in greetings and other conventional expressions (recall some of the basic expressions of Lessons One and Two). This style gives way gradually as the formality of the situation ebbs, i.e., when two speakers have progressed beyond the initial overtures of getting acquainted and feel more at ease, then Formal and Polite Style are often mixed together.

Male speakers are advised to use formal forms occasionally, even when speaking to people with whom one need not be formal: overuse of polite forms in ㄷ strikes some Koreans as "talking like a woman."

Notice that the keynote to the style that speakers are employing (aside from certain vocabulary items like 저 for 나 (I), rests entirely in the verbs at the end of sentences. All other nonfinal verb forms are neutral in this respect.

Formal statements are made by attaching to the verb at the end of the sentence, an ending which has the shape -습니다 (pronounced -씀니다) after consonants and -입니다 (pronounced -입니다) after vowels.
If the base is an L-extending vowel base, the ending is added to the unextended base (without the -가-): 사-가- → 삼니다 live. If the base ends in w, this w changes to 달 (remember that w counts as a consonant in our system): 더-달나다 달습니다 hot. If the base ends in -가 (i.e., in the case of 보-가 verbs), this changes (by our rules) to 들- → 들니다 listen. Finally, ^-irregular verbs add the ending to the form with 달: 달습니다 improve.

Formal questions are made by replacing the final 달 of the formal statement with 갑. In other words add an ending that has the shape -습니가 (pronounced -습니가) after consonants and the shape -습니가 (pronounced -습니가) after vowels. Here are some examples with typical verb bases.

### Vowel Bases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Statement</th>
<th>Pronounced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>가-</td>
<td>갑니다</td>
<td>갑니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie, wear a tie</td>
<td>망-</td>
<td>망니다</td>
<td>망니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see, look at</td>
<td>보-</td>
<td>보니다</td>
<td>보니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>주-</td>
<td>주니다</td>
<td>주니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>쓰니다</td>
<td>쓰니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>되-</td>
<td>되니다</td>
<td>되니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기다리-</td>
<td>기다리니다</td>
<td>기다리니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(honorable)</td>
<td>-(으)시-</td>
<td>-(으)심니다</td>
<td>-(으)심니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>아-가-</td>
<td>아닙니다</td>
<td>아닙니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>모르니다</td>
<td>모르니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the increased ㄷ in the Past Base as predicted.

Formal (honorific) statements are made by attaching the shape of -습니가 (pronounced -습니가) after consonants and the shape of -습니가 (pronounced -습니가) after vowels. Here are some examples with typical verb bases.

Lesson Eleven / 204
**Consonant Bases**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Statement</th>
<th>Pronounced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입-</td>
<td>입습니다다</td>
<td>입씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want to</td>
<td>싶-</td>
<td>싶습니다다</td>
<td>싶씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받습니다다</td>
<td>받씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>빼-</td>
<td>빼웁니다다</td>
<td>빼씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek/find</td>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>찾습니다다</td>
<td>찾씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>먹습니다다</td>
<td>먹씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polish</td>
<td>닦-</td>
<td>닦습니다다</td>
<td>닦씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>읽습니다다</td>
<td>읽씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>젊습니다다</td>
<td>젊씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear shoes</td>
<td>신-</td>
<td>신습니다다</td>
<td>신씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>앉습니다다</td>
<td>앉씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>놓-</td>
<td>놓습니다다</td>
<td>놓씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>많-</td>
<td>많습니다다</td>
<td>많씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be disliked</td>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>싫습니다다</td>
<td>싫씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exist/have</td>
<td>있-</td>
<td>있습니까</td>
<td>있씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(past)</td>
<td>-있-</td>
<td>-있습니다</td>
<td>-있씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack</td>
<td>없-</td>
<td>없습니다다</td>
<td>없씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td>나(·)</td>
<td>나옵니다다</td>
<td>나씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>더앞(·)</td>
<td>더앞웁니다</td>
<td>더씀니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen, hear</td>
<td>들-</td>
<td>들습니다다</td>
<td>들씀니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the inclusion of past bases in the list above. The Formal Style endings attach to the Past Base as they would to any other consonant base: -씀니다 ~ -씀니까. Thus, 했씀니다 did it, 했씀니까 Did you see it?, 들اعتم니다 heard it, etc.

Formal (honorific) commands are made by adding -(으)십시오 to bases that end in consonants and -(으)시오 to bases ending in vowels. -(으)시오. is added to the unextended shape of -는-extending vowel bases (that is, to the shape without the -는-, e.g., 역시오 Open it!). This ending is often misspelled -(으) (십)시요.

Note that the formal honorific command in -(으)십시오 is much more common than the simply formal command -(으)시오. This latter ending is perceived now as belonging to the authoritative or 하오 style. It tends to be used in controlled fits of anger by indignant individuals displeased with service, etc. It should be used with care or else ironically. You are safe with formal (honorific) commands in -(으)십시오, and here are examples of them:
The greetings from Lesson One can also be expressed in the formal honorific style.

안녕히 계십시오! and 안녕히 가십시오!

Inherently honorific verbs which already include -시- in their base add -시오 to the honorific base.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>계시-</td>
<td>계십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주무시-</td>
<td>주무십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잠수시-</td>
<td>잠수십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

The last verb also appears without -시- (but remains honorific): 잠수- from which is derived 잠수시오 Eat!

Formal suggestions (Let's do it.) are made by adding the ending -십시오 to consonant bases and -시오 to vowel bases (including the unextended shape of 은- extending vowel bases).

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Formal Suggestion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>입을십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>갑시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받을십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>보십시오</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Lesson Eleven / 206
Base | Formal Suggestion
---|---
앉- | 앉으시다  
노-르- | 노으시다  
구- (으 ~ 와: 굽다) | 구으시다  
물- (으 ~ 르: 들다) | 물으시다

Let’s sit down!  
Let’s play!  
Let’s broil it!  
Let’s listen!

주의!
Note that many Korean speakers consider it inappropriate, even rude, for a person of lower status to use a suggestion form in - (으) 보십시오 to them. When making a suggestion to somebody with whom you might otherwise use honorifics, you are advised to include the honorific in your suggestion: 가십시오! Let’s go! or else use a different strategy entirely.

Since the endings - 보나, - 보카, -(심)시오 and - 보시다 are added to the unextended shape of - extending vowel bases, the resulting forms look as if they might be ordinary vowel bases: thus, from the spelling you can’t tell whether 삐니다 means 삐어요 (from 사- 르-) lives or 삐요 (from 사-) buys. The context will help you tell.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Numerals and Counters

Count quickly in Korean from one to twelve, putting the following words after each number, in order: one table, two years old, three minutes, and so on. Repeat, from fifteen to twenty-nine; from thirty to forty-four; from forty-five to fifty-nine; from sixty to seventy-four; and so on up to ninety-eight.

1. 양말 ____ 편레  
2. -살  
3. -분 (minutes)  
4. -블  
5. -명  
6. -주  
7. -년  
8. -잔  
9. 고양이 ____ 마리  
10. (으) 병  
11. -일  
12. -권  
13. -개월  
14. (으) 상자

Lesson Eleven / 207
Exercise 2: Numerals and Counters

Say the following expressions in Korean:

1. 오늘 아침에 ___에 일어났습니다.
2. 나는 ___ 왔습니다.
3. 나는 보통 ___쪽에 잡니다.
4. 나는 ___ 있습니다.
5. 나는 사무실에서 ___ 일했습니다.
6. 겸기서 ___ 있었습니다.
7. 나는 ___에 아침을 먹었습니다.

Exercise 3: Answer the Questions

Answer these questions in Korean (short answers only and be sure to write out the numbers in 한글).

1. 어떤 일에요?
2. 오늘은 먹칠이에요?
3. 몇 학년이십니까?
4. 크리스마스는 어느 달에 있어요?
5. 생일이 언제에요?
6. 나는 아침 여덟시 반에 일을 시작했습니다. 저녁 다섯 시까지

Lesson Eleven / 208
Exercise 4: Fill in the Missing Particles and Counters

Here are Korean sentences with some of the particles and/or counters missing. Read each sentence aloud and fill in the blanks with appropriate particles you have learned in this lesson.

1. 해___ [every] 머칠 ___ 놀니까? [i.e., have the day off]
2. 학교는 내일 ___ 시작해요.
3. 수요일 ___ [every] 집에서 쉬어요?
4. 그 상 위에는 과일 ___ [only] 있어요.
5. 오늘 세벽 두시 ___ 세시 반 ___ 에기 때문에 고생을 많이 했어요.
6. 보통 몇 시간 ___ 주무세요?
7. 사무실에서 아战斗力 반 ___ 네 시 반 ___ 일을 해요.
8. 아침 ___ 몇 시 ___ 일어나요?
9. 아침 뉴스는 아침 시 ___ 시작해요.
10. 시장에서 오징어 열 ___ 하고 사과 두 ___ 하고 맥주 스무 ___ 샀습니다.

Exercise 5: Formal Style

Each of the following sentences is a simple statement in the Polite Style. Change each one so that it is four different expressions in the Formal Style: (1) a simple statement; (2) a question; (3) an honorific command; and, (4) a suggestion. Watch out for trick questions!
Part One: Easier Verbs
1. 여기 앉아요.
2. 높게 떼나요.
3. 가기 있어요.
4. 친구를 거다려요.
5. 얘기한테 음식을 빌어요.
6. 빨리 시작해요.
7. 술집에 가요.
8. 편지를 쓰세요.
9. 교회에 나가요.
10. 전화를 받아요.
11. 심분만 쉬어요.

Part Two: Trickier Verbs
1. 라디오를 들어요.
2. 택시를 불러요.
3. 사장님한테 전화를 걸어요.
4. 고기를 구워요.
5. 즐겨워요.
6. 오늘은 삼 쌍워요.
7. 나는 이 사람을 잘 알아요.
8. 한국 음식은 아주 매워요.
9. 밥이 좀 추워요.
10. 내 동생은 서울에서 살아요.

Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation
Translate each of the following sentences into Korean, using the Formal Style.

1. I brush my teeth three times a day.
2. I am very busy from today.
3. Until when will you stay?
4. Let’s go out for a walk.
5. Everybody is different [every person].
6. When do you wish to meet?
7. I’ve come to look for part-time work.
8. Every student likes that teacher.
9. I stayed in that inn until Saturday.

Lesson Eleven / 210
10. Why are you late?
   Please forgive me.
11. About what time are you going?
12. This year I forgot my wife’s birthday.
13. Please give them 10,000 won each.
14. Let’s start from nine o’clock.
15. About when are you leaving for Seoul?

Exercise 7: Vocabulary Drill

This is a rapid-fire drill. Call off the Korean for each group below. Use numeral and counter, and, if appropriate, a noun.

1. One person, one building, one o’clock.
2. Two months, two years, two days.
3. Three honored people, three o’clock, three years old.
4. Four dollars, four dogs, four newspapers.
5. Five li, five days, five houses.
6. Six pounds, six floors, six years old.
7. Seven months, seven books, seven years.
8. Eight hours, eight cars, eight minutes.
9. Nine times, nine days, nine cats.
10. Ten cents, ten people, ten o’clock.
11. One o’clock, two o’clock, three o’clock.
12. Two years old, three years old, four years old.
13. Three years, four years, five years.
14. Four people, five people, six people.
15. Five days, six days, seven days.
16. Six sheets of paper, seven sheets of paper, eight sheets of paper.
17. Seven magazines, eight magazines, nine magazines.
18. Eight days, nine days, ten days.
20. Ten times, eleven times, twelve times.
21. Eleven pounds, twelve pounds, thirteen pounds.
22. Twelve cats, thirteen cats, fourteen cats.
23. Thirteen days, fourteen days, fifteen days.
24. Fourteen years old, fifteen years old, sixteen years old.
25. Fifteen months, sixteen months, seventeen months.
This lesson introduces how to make suggestions to go and do things. It also covers how to suggest not to do things. Further points covered are how to express likes and dislikes, how to say one feels like doing something or not, and how to ask someone for a date. Finally, we introduce a new way to link two sentences with but, a new way to make sentences negative, and the new particle (이)나.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Chris and Eunice’s college-age daughter, Sandy, has recently struck up a relationship with a Korean boy, 석만. They have met at a 카페 near campus.

석만 뭐 마실래요?

sand이 아무거나 좋아요. 커피나 한잔 할까요?

석만 (to 아가씨) 아가씨! 여기 커피 두잔 주세요.

(to Sandy) 그런데 심심하지 않아요? 오늘 우리 뭐 할까요?

sand이 글쎄요. 음악회에 갈까요? 아니면 연극 보러 갈까요?

석만 음악회에는 가지 마다. 나는 연극을 좋아하지만, 음악은 별로 좋아하지 않아요.

sand이 그럼, 연극을 보러 강니다. 나도 연극을 좋아해요.

석만 그런데 나는 한국 연극이 보고 싶어요. 센디 씨는 어떻게요?

sand이 글쎄요. 아직 한번도 못봤어요. 한번 볼시다!
Dialogue 2

Eric is hitting the 커피숍 scene, too. While waiting for 영철 at their favorite hangout, Eric tries his luck with one of the 아가씨 working there.

Eric: 아가씨, 저하고 같이 차나 한잔 하실까요?

A girl: 지금은 좀 바쁜데요.

Eric: 그럼, 저녁에는 시간 있주세요? 어디 좀 늘리 가실래요?

A girl: 저녁에도 바쁜데요.

Eric: 아, 그래요? 알겠습니다. 실패했습니다. (Eric backs off)

A girl: 잔잔만요! 내일은 바쁘지 않아요.

Notes

바쁜데요. I'm afraid I'm busy. The ending is treated in detail in a later lesson.

Reading Passage

우리는 이제 저녁에 한국식당에 갔습니다.
식당에 사람들이 아주 많았습니다.
저는 냉면을 주문했지만 제 친구는 비빔밥을 시켰습니다.
한국음식은 맛이 좋지만 별로 비싸지 않습니다. 그리고 건강에도 좋습니다.
저도 언젠가 한국요리를 배우고 싶습니다.

Lesson Twelve / 213
### Vocabulary

**New Nouns: Food and Drink**

- coffee
- ice coffee
- ice water
- cold noodle dish
- cola
- ice
- cooking, cuisine
- Chinese cuisine
- Italian cuisine
- ice cream
- Korean rice vodka, soju
- whiskey; western spirits
- sugar
- add/put in sugar
- Do you take sugar?
- add/put in sugar
- cream
- fresh cream
- nondairy creamer
- black tea, English tea
- draft beer
- pizza
- a Korean soft drink like Seven-up™
- shaved ice/ice slush, usually with fruit toppings
- sandwich
- hamburger
- hotdog
- *coffee
- *ice coffee
- *ice water
- *cold noodle dish
- *cola
- *ice
- *cooking, cuisine
- *Chinese cuisine
- *Italian cuisine
- *ice cream
- *Korean rice vodka, soju
- *whiskey; western spirits
- *sugar
- *add/put in sugar
- *Do you take sugar?
- *add/put in sugar
- *cream
- *fresh cream
- *nondairy creamer
- *black tea, English tea
- *draft beer
- *pizza
- *a Korean soft drink like Seven-up™
- *shaved ice/ice slush, usually with fruit toppings
- *sandwich
- *hamburger
- *hotdog

---

*Lesson Twelve* / 214
Other New Nouns

가페
양담배
미인

아주 미인입니다.
미남
폴
폴(울) 먹이-
때
아무때나 오세요.
그 때에는
잠깐
잠깐만 기다리십시오.
만화

꽃

꽃이 피-
꽃들이 다 피어요.
음악
음악회
체즈
체즈음악

영국
산
시골
바다
비치
도시
교외
북도
손님
마음

café (more upscale than a tabang)
western cigarettes; non-Korean cigarettes
a beautiful woman
She's a real beauty.
a handsome man
starch; glue
starch something [feed it starch]
time [when]
Come any time.
At that time
a moment
Please wait a moment.
comics, cartoons (both the written variety and the TV variety)
flower(s)
fowers bloom, blossom
All the flowers have bloomed.
music
concert
jazz
jazz music
play, drama
mountain
countryside, the country
the ocean, the sea
the beach
city
suburb(s)
hallway, corridor
customer; guest
mind, heart

Lesson Twelve / 215
Dhr has a good heart, is good natured.

New Verbs and Related Expressions

be bright, intelligent
marry
get engaged
Are you married?

New Adverbs

be/feel bored
be tired

New Adjectives

put in, insert

Lesson Twelve
be heavy
be light [in weight]
finish it
[stomach] be full
I’m full.
goes back, returns there
comes back, returns here
dances (a dance)
how is it? how about it?
How do you like Seoul?
[same as above, but Formal Style]
come in, enter; return home
I got in late last night.
go in, enters
be good; be liked
I like Seoul.
like it
I like Seoul.
be disliked, distasteful
dislike it
order [at a restaurant]
be healthy
health

New Adverbs

어떻게?
별로 + NEGATIVE
갈자기
별่ะ
인제, 이제
아니면

NOUN A 아니면 NOUN B?

how? in what way?
(not) particularly
suddenly
already
now (finally)
Or (sentence-initially)
NOUN A or NOUN B?
How to Get the Attention of Service Personnel

저기요! (Hey there! [a bit brusque, or even rude])
저기! (same as above, but even less cultured)
여보세요! (Hello! Excuse me!)
여기 좀 봐요! (Say there! Excuse me!)
학생! (if the server looks to be a student)

If the Server is Female:
언니! (older sister [usually used by young women to other women, but also used, in jest, by some cheeky men])
아가씨! (Girl! Usually used by men to (presumably) unmarried women, but some women take offense now.)
누나! (older sister [usually used by young men to older women, especially if it looks like they might be offended by either 아가씨! or 아주머니!])
아주머니! (Ma'am' [used about or to any woman who looks married])
아줌마! (same as above but more familiar)

If the Server is Male:
아저씨! (Mister [used about or to any man who looks married])

Lesson Twelve / 218
Lesson Notes

12.1. Verbs: Suspective Form -지

Korean verbs with the suffix -지 attached to them are in the SUSPECTIVE form. L-extending vowel bases attach -지 to the extended shape: 여- is open has the suspective form 열지. The consonant bases that end in -있다 (i.e., -있다 bases) change this to -있다, so the suspective form of 열- listens is 들지 pronounced (by automatic change) [ 들지]. See the examples for -고 싶어요 in Lesson Nine.

The suffix -지 is a one-shape ending: it is always -지, regardless of the kind of base it is attached to. In pronouncing the resulting form you have to follow the usual rules of sound change, as is the case for the -고 form.

Here is a list of the -지 forms for some representative verbs you have learned with the pronunciation (when different) shown between square brackets:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Suspective</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>하지</td>
<td>했지</td>
<td>해서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>be...</td>
<td>이지</td>
<td>있었지</td>
<td>이어서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>자지</td>
<td>찾지</td>
<td>자서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주지</td>
<td>찾지</td>
<td>채서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바로-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>바로지</td>
<td>배웠지</td>
<td>배워서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타리-</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기타리지</td>
<td>했지</td>
<td>와서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>오지</td>
<td>했지</td>
<td>와서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at</td>
<td>보지</td>
<td>쫓았지</td>
<td>쫓어서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬지</td>
<td>쫓았지</td>
<td>쫓어서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>쓰지</td>
<td>쫓았지</td>
<td>쫓어서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>크지</td>
<td>쳐서</td>
<td>쳐서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>not know</td>
<td>모르지</td>
<td>몰랐지</td>
<td>몰라서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사- 르-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>살지</td>
<td>살았지</td>
<td>사서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉지 [안자]</td>
<td>앉았지</td>
<td>안자서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹지 [먹져]</td>
<td>먹았지</td>
<td>먹어서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋지 [조차]</td>
<td>많았지</td>
<td>조아서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>많지 [만치]</td>
<td>많았지</td>
<td>마나서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싫-</td>
<td>be disliked</td>
<td>싫지 [심치]</td>
<td>싫았지</td>
<td>시리서</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Twelve / 219
12.2. Uses of the Suspective - 지

12.2.1: Any Base + -지만 but

1. A. 형제 있으세요?
   Do you have brothers and sisters?
   
   B. 언니는 있지만 동생은 없어요.
   I have an older sister, but no younger siblings.

2. A. 그 집 애들이 공부를 잘 해요?
   Are the children in that family good students?
   
   B. 말은 독특하지만, 아들은 공부를 못 해요.
   The daughter is bright, but the son isn't much of a student.

3. 날이 좀 덥지만, 테니스나 친가요?
   The day is a bit hot, but shall we play some tennis or something?

4. A. 아버님이 뭐 하세요?
   What does your father do?
   
   B. 대학 교수였지만, 이제는 은퇴하셨어요.
   [He] used to be a college professor, but now he's retired.

5. A. 저분은 연세가 많으세요?
   Is that person old?
   
   B. 나이는 많지만, 마음은 젊어요.
   He is old in years, but his heart is young.

Lesson Twelve / 220
Phrases consisting of a verb base plus -지 않아요 mean (such-and-such) but... English can retain the Korean phrasing by using though, although: Although I have an older sister... Though the daughter is bright... The translation but, of course, is much more natural and conveys the Korean more realistically.

The special phrase 그림지만 [Literally: It is so, but...] is used at the beginning of sentences in the same way English uses however or on the other hand, on the contrary. The expression 그림지만, then, is a device to put together two sentences that could be said separately, with the second introduced by 그림지만.

12.2.2: Long Negatives in -지 않아요, -지 못해요

In addition to the short negative forms that you have learned to make by prefixing verbs and adjectives with 안 and 못, there is a more complex type of negative made with:

plain base plus -지 않아요 or plain base plus -지 못해요

6. A. 언니는 요즘 뭐 해요?
What’s your older sister up to these days?

B. 언제는 우리하고 같이 살지 않아요.
She doesn’t live with us anymore.

7. A. 저집 딸이 똑똑합니까?
Is the daughter in that family bright?

B. 딸은 똑똑하지만, 아들은 똑똑하지 못합니다.
The daughter is bright, but the son isn’t bright at all.

8. A. 샌디 씨, 오빠가 결혼했습니까?
Sandy, is your older brother married?

B. 아니오, 오빠는 아직 결혼하지 않았습니다.
No, he isn’t (hasn’t) married yet.

9. A. 피아노를 치세요?
Do you play the piano?

B. 아니오, 피아노를 치지 못합니다.
No, I don’t know how.
The long negative is a phrase which consists of a plain base plus -지 followed by a negative element. The -지 form names the verb. The element following it carries the other meanings for the phrase—negativeness and tense, as well as the meaning carried in its ending (e.g., Polite Style).

The element 앞- following the -지 suspensive form in long negative phrases is, in origin, a negative form of the auxiliary base 하-, that is, a form of 안 하- shortened to 않아요. It is, in effect, a new verb with the base form 앞-, which behaves in the same way as the base 앞 (-there are) many.

The past tense of a long negative is made by putting 앞- into the past tense. The -지 suspensive form remains unchanged.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>안 앉아요.</td>
<td>앞 앉아요.</td>
<td>앞지 앉아요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>안 자요.</td>
<td>앞 자요.</td>
<td>앞지 자요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>안 좋아요.</td>
<td>앞 좋아요.</td>
<td>앞지 좋아요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>안 읽어요.</td>
<td>앞 읽어요.</td>
<td>앞지 읽어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>안 많아요.</td>
<td>앞 많아요.</td>
<td>앞지 많아요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>안 먹어요.</td>
<td>앞 먹어요.</td>
<td>앞지 먹어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>안 와요.</td>
<td>앞 와요.</td>
<td>앞지 와요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>안 써요.</td>
<td>앞 써요.</td>
<td>앞지 써요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-르-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>안 살어요.</td>
<td>앞 살어요.</td>
<td>앞지 살어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>안 들어요.</td>
<td>앞 들어요.</td>
<td>앞지 들어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w-</td>
<td>broil</td>
<td>안 구워요.</td>
<td>앞 구워요.</td>
<td>앞지 구워요.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Twelve /222
Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아니-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>안 앉앗어요</td>
<td>안지 앉앗어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>안 자겠어요</td>
<td>자지 않겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>안 좋겠어요</td>
<td>좋지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>안 읽겠어요</td>
<td>읽지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>안 많겠어요</td>
<td>많지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>안 먹겠어요</td>
<td>먹지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>안 와겠어요</td>
<td>오지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-여-</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>안 살겠어요</td>
<td>살지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>안 써겠어요</td>
<td>쓰지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>listen</td>
<td>안 들겠어요</td>
<td>들지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w-</td>
<td>broil</td>
<td>안 구워겠어요</td>
<td>구워지 않겠습니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long negatives with the STRONG NEGATIVE 못 cannot, emphatically not rather than 안 not are made in the same way.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Short Strong Negative</th>
<th>Long Strong Negative</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아니-</td>
<td>못 앉앗어요</td>
<td>안지 못해요</td>
<td>can't sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>못 자겠어요</td>
<td>자지 못해요</td>
<td>couldn't sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>못 좋겠어요</td>
<td>좋지 못해요</td>
<td>is no good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>못 읽겠어요</td>
<td>읽지 못해요</td>
<td>was no good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>못 먹겠어요</td>
<td>먹지 못해요</td>
<td>can't eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>못 와겠어요</td>
<td>오지 못해요</td>
<td>couldn't eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-여-</td>
<td>못 살겠어요</td>
<td>살지 못해요</td>
<td>can't eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>못 써겠어요</td>
<td>쓰지 못해요</td>
<td>couldn't write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들-</td>
<td>못 들겠어요</td>
<td>들지 못해요</td>
<td>can't hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구w-</td>
<td>못 구워겠어요</td>
<td>구워지 못해요</td>
<td>couldn't broil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice with descriptive verbs, long strong negatives have the added nuance of dissatisfaction on the part of the speaker or a sense that the situation was not up to expectation.

Lesson Twelve / 223
The short negative with 안 occurs for processive verbs (안 가요 doesn't go), less commonly for adjectives (안 작아요 is not small), and in a slightly different form for the copula (책이 아닙니다 it is not a book). The short negative with 못 occurs only for processive verbs (못 가요 can't go; definitely doesn't go). There is no corresponding form for descriptive verbs or the copula, so that you will never hear 못 좋아요 or 해이 못이에요.

There are long negatives with 못 for both processive verbs (가지 못해요 can't go; definitely doesn't go) and descriptive verbs (작지 못해요 definitely isn't small), though not for the copula. There are no long negatives for the copula at all.

In the examples above the long negatives have the Polite Style endings. Other endings are also possible, when you want to put the negative into some larger sentence, for example, you can put a negative sentence into the construction with -지만 but discussed above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Short Negative</th>
<th>Long Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>심심하다</td>
<td>feel bored</td>
<td>안 심심해요</td>
<td>심심하지 않아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹고 싶다</td>
<td>want to eat</td>
<td>안 먹고 싶어요</td>
<td>먹고 싶지 않아요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finally, note also that the long negatives are more appropriate for longer verbs (i.e., bases with three or more syllables) and complex verb expressions (e.g., -고 싶어요) that sound awkward or marginal (hence the ① preceded by 안):

12.2.3. Negative Commands and Suggestions in -지 마- 라-

You have noticed that the polite forms in 요 can be used as a statement (가요, I'm going), a question (가세요? Are you going?), a command (가세요! Please go!), and occasionally even a suggestion (가요! Let's go).

Lesson Twelve / 224
The negative forms of these can be used as statements (안 가요 or 가지 않아요, I'm not going. 못가요 or 가지 못해요, I can't go) and as questions (안 가세요? or 가지 않으세요? Aren't you going? 못가세요? or 가지 못하하세요? Can't you go?), but not as commands or suggestions.

*안지 않아요! for Don't sit!
*보지 않아요! for Don't look!

Negative Commands

Instead, you make negative commands (prohibitions) and negative suggestions (dissuasions) with another auxiliary verb 먹-~ avoid (an L-extending base) added to the suspensive ~지.

10. Base 들- listen
    들지 마세요!
    들지 말아요!
    Don't listen!
    들지 마십시오!

11. Base 앉- sit
    앉지 마세요!
    앉지 말아요!
    Don't sit down!
    앉지 마십시오!

12. Base 보- see; look
    보지 마세요!
    보지 말아요!
    Don't look!
    보지 마십시오!

Negative Suggestions

You have learned the ending for suggestions in the Formal Style, with the shape -(으)ㅂ시다 as in 시작합시다! Let's begin! To make negative suggestions you add this ending to the unextended base of 먹-~ and produce the form 막시다 to use after the suspensive ~지.

13. 책을 보지 막시다!
    Let's not look at our books!

14. 오늘은 걸어서 가막시다! 시간이 없어요.
    Let's not go on foot today; there's no time.

Lesson Twelve / 225
15. A. What shall we drink? Shall we have some whiskey?
   B. Let’s not do any drinking today.

12.2.4. Negative Honorifics

In speaking about an esteemed person, you can add the honorific element to the long negative in any of several ways.

a. You can make the verb honorific (가요 → 가세요) and then build the negative on this: 가지지 않아요. This is the most common.

b. You can make the verb negative (가요 → 가지 않아요), then build the honorific on that: 가지 않으세요. This is also common.

c. You can make the verb honorific (가요 → 가세요), build a negative on this (가지요 → 가지지 않아요) and build a further honorific on that: 가지지 않으세요.

Usually such double honorifics are overdoing things so you would do well to avoid them.

The 못 negative behaves in the same way: 가지지 못해요, 가지 못하십시오, and 가지지 못하십시오 are all somebody (esteemed) can't/won't go.

12.3. The Particle 도: Noun Agreement

Observe the following sentences:

16. A. Sandy, aren't you going to the beach with the kids in the other class?
   B. I can't go; I have neither the time nor the money.

17. My brother doesn't frequent either bars or tabangs.

As you know, the particle 도 often occurs twice in a sentence, showing a kind of tandem agreement between noun phrases (both A and B do; neither A nor B does). In affirmative sentences, the 도 mean both ... and. When the verb is negative, they mean neither ... nor.
The literal wordings both . . . and and neither . . . nor are actually somewhat formal in English. In conversational style some other phraseology is more usual.

Notice that the phrases with 도 must agree with each other; that is, you are saying the same thing about both of them. To say different things about two noun expressions, you do not use 도.

18. 딸은 똑똑하지만 아들은 똑똑하지 못 합니다.
*The daughter is bright, but the son isn't bright at all.*

12.4. Suggestions and Tentative Questions with -(으)ㄹ까(요)?

Observe the following sentences:

19. A. 맥주를 한잔 할까요?
*How about a beer?* [Literally: Shall we do a beer?]

B. 네, 그럼시다.
*Sure, let's do it.

20. A. 걸어 갈까요?
*How about walking (there)?

B. 아니오, 택시로 갚시다.
*No, let's take a taxi.

21. A. 테니스를 칠까요?
*How about playing tennis?*

B. 네, 언제 치레요?
*Sure. When would you like to play?*

22. 설탕을 넣을까요? 맛가요?
*Shall I put sugar in or not?*

The ending -(으)ㄹ까요 is a two-shape verb ending, the third you have seen (the others were honorific polite -(으)세요 and purposive -(으)는데). The -(으)ㄹ preceding the 까 is the prospective modifier, about which you will learn more in Lesson Twenty-three. The little word 까 is a post-modifier—a noun that always has a modifier in front of it—with the meaning [it's a] question [of] (it is related to the 까 of Formal Style questions in 합니까).

Lesson Twelve / 227
Let us review how verb bases attach to two-shape endings. Vowel-final bases attach to the vowel-less ending of two-shape endings.

가-  갈까요?  Shall we go?
보-  볼까요?  Shall we look at it?

With L-extending verbs, the ending attaches to the unextended base, but note that this is somewhat camouflaged.

사-  살까요?  Shall we live?

That is, this form is 사- +  살까요, and not 사- +  살까요. Contrast this with  빌- verbs.

23. A. 음악이나 들을까요?
   Shall we listen to some music or something?

B. 네, 어떤 음악을 좋아해요?
   Sure. What kind of music do you like?

Consonant-final bases attach to the shape with initial -ㅁ-.

 찾-  찾을까요?  Shall I look for it?
받-  받을까요?  Shall I receive it?
입-  입을까요?  Shall I put it on?
들-  들을까요?  Shall I listen to it?
구-  구울까요?  Shall I broil it?

The only tricky point to remember here concerns  빌- verbs, for which you learned the following rule (repeated from section 8.2.2).

In other words, the final  빌- of a  빌- verb base plus the initial -ㅁ- of a two-shape verb ending combine to yield the vowel -으-. Another example:

dwa- + -을까요?  →  들을까요?
Do you suppose it will be hot?

Lesson Twelve / 228
The 합까요? pattern makes future or tentative questions and has two distinct usages.

a. In the examples above, the questions are usually directed to the first person I/we. Shall we do thus-and-so? Shall I do such-and-such? or How about doing thus-and-so? These mean about the same thing as suggesting let's do thus-and-so. Sometimes these questions are rhetorical (not expecting an answer). You can only use processive bases with this meaning.

b. The second usage refers to third-persons (he, she, it, they), and translates as Do you suppose? or I wonder: does/is? For this, you can use either a processive or a descriptive base.

24. 상자가 너무 무겁까요?
   Do you suppose the box is too heavy?

25. 박 선생님이 지금 교실에 계실까요?
   Do you suppose Dr. Pak is in the classroom now?

In this second usage, the pattern can also be used on the past base, as follows.

26. A. 볼써 왔을까요?
   Do you suppose he's already come?

   B. 네, 방금 복도에서 봤어요.
   Yes, I saw him just a moment ago in the corridor.

Here are some more examples of how 늘 ~ w verbs attach to this two-shape ending.

27. 그래 너무 어려울까요? (어려w-)
   Do you suppose that is too difficult?

28. 내일 더울까요? (더w-)
   Do you suppose tomorrow will be hot?

29. 어머니: 불고기를 좀 더 구울까요? (구w-)
    Shall I broil some more pulgogi?

   아버지: 됐어요. 배 부리세요.
   It's OK. I'm full.

Lesson Twelve / 229
12.5. Thinking of Doing... with -(으)ㄹ 땅가 해요.

Another construction involving 가 is -(으)ㄹ 땅가 해요, which means is thinking of [doing] thus-and-so, as follows.

30. A. 내일 뒤 합니까?
   What are you doing tomorrow?

   B. 테니스를 치러 합니까.
   I'm thinking of playing tennis.

31. A. 음악회에는 어떻게 가요?
   How are you getting to the concert?

   B. 지하철로 갈니까 해요.
   I'm thinking of going by subway.

32. A. 요즘 피곤해요?
   Are you tired lately?

   B. 네, 시간에 좀 쉬러 갈니까 해요.
   Yes. I'm thinking of going to the countryside for a rest.

We see that the verb 해요 besides meaning does and sometimes (as an auxiliary) is, also means thinks. This construction can be regarded as the equivalent of I'm thinking, shall I VERB? Here are some more examples.

33. A. 점심을 언제 먹어요?
   When are you eating lunch?

   B. 두 시쯤에 먹을니까 해요.
   I'm thinking of eating at around two o'clock.

34. A. 아이들 학교가 괜찮습니까?
   Is the kids' school OK?

   B. 빛 지형인데도, 다른 학교에 보낼니까 합니다.
   It's not bad, but I'm thinking of sending them to another school.

12.6. The Adverb 포

12.6.1. Advanced

The adverb 포 has the same form as its present particle counterparts. Familiarity is the major distinguishing factor; however, since 포 is more formal than -려, it is more often used in non-routine expression, unlike the present particle. For example, when using 포 in a sentence with both formal and informal words, the particle and 포 are used.

35. 여기에 행선지 팔 것 있어요?
   There's something to go around here

저기에 가시려고 하세요?
   There's something to go around there

An occasional use of 포, especially in some environments.

36. 여기에 생필품 팔 것 있어요?
   There are some necessary items here

체 (pause)
   There are some necessary items here

12.6.2. The Present Particle

The present particle -(으)ㄴ/는/다/다-(으)나/고/고 (is) has the shape of a present particle -(으)는/가/다/다-(으)나/고/고 for its past particle -(으)나/가/다/다-(으)나/고/고

1. about/along
day
2. generally
3. or
12.6. The Adverb 뒤, Particle 도, and Pseudo-particle (이)나

12.6.1. Adverb 뒤 Versus Particle 도

The adverb 뒤 has the same general type of meaning as the particle 도 and, again, too. However, since 뒤 is an adverb it is independent and does not have to be attached to a noun expression, unlike the particle 도. The adverb 뒤 at the beginning of a sentence means and also or and furthermore. You have also had 그리고 in this meaning, and you can start a sentence with both of them: 그리고 도 And moreover. Notice the similarity between 도 the particle and 뒤 the adverb in such sentences as the following.

35. 여기에 종이도 있습니다.
   There’s some paper here, too.

저기에 종이(는) 도 있습니다.
   There’s still some more paper over there.

An occasional accident of sound change may even make 도 and 뒤 sound the same in some environments (책도 here).

36. 여기에 책도 있습니다.
    There are books here, too.

책 (pause) 도 있어요.
   There are some more books over there.

12.6.2. The Particle (이)나

The particle (이)나, like the copula, has two shapes. After nouns ending in a consonant, it has the shape 이나. After nouns ending in a vowel it loses the 이 and has the shape 나. The particle (이)나 has several meanings, grouped into three headings.

1. about/approximately
2. generalizer
3. or

Lesson Twelve/231
Korean is often less precise about numbers than English is. Thus, such words as (이)나 (usually written 나 after vowels) are often used with numerical expressions (especially in questions) to make them sound more vague and hence less abrupt.

37. A. 몇 시간이나 걸립니까?
   About how many hours does it take?

   B. 한 세 시간 반 걸립니다.
   It takes about three and a half hours.

38. A. 몇 개나 삽가요?
   About how many should we buy?

   B. 스무 개쯤 삽시다.
   Let's buy about twenty.

Note in (38 A) above that (이)나 replaces the object particle; i.e., one cannot say *몇 개를 이나 or *몇 개나를. In this respect, (이)나 behaves like 도.

2. Question word + (이)나: Generalizer any/every

When used after certain question words, (이)나 removes the interrogative meaning and generalizes the scope of the word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>누구</th>
<th>who?</th>
<th>누구나</th>
<th>anyone; everyone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>무엇</td>
<td>what?</td>
<td>무엇이나</td>
<td>anything; everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제</td>
<td>when?</td>
<td>언제나</td>
<td>any time; all the time; always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>어디나</td>
<td>anywhere; everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어디서</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>어디서나</td>
<td>[happening] anywhere; everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. A. 누구를 부를까요?
   Whom shall we invite?

   B. 누구나 좋아요.
   Anybody is fine.

Lesson Twelve / 232
40. A. 주말에 어디에 갈까요?
   Where shall we go (this) weekend?

   B. 어디나 좋어요.
   Anywhere is fine.

41. 우리 오빠는 언제나 어디서나 노래를 불러요.
   My older brother is always singing wherever he goes.

42. A. 어느 것을 살까요?
   Which one shall we buy?

   B. 어느 것이나 좋어요.
   Either one is fine.

A similar meaning can be obtained with the word 아무, which by itself means anyone, anybody, but in front of another noun means any, any old.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>아무나</th>
<th>anyone, anybody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>아무 것이나</td>
<td>anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무 때나</td>
<td>any time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무 테서나</td>
<td>any place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무 책이나</td>
<td>[happening at] any place; from any place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아무 [thing]</td>
<td>any book [at all]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

43. 저기는 아무나 못 가요.
   Not just anybody can go over there.

44. A. 뭐 드릴까요?
   What can I get for you?

   B. 아무거나 주세요.
   Give me any old thing (anything at all).

45. A. 언제 놀러 갈까요?
   When shall we come over? (When would you like us to come [to play]?)

   B. 아무 때나 오세요 - 별로 바쁘지 않아요.
   Come any time. I'm not particularly busy.

46. 아무 테서나 담배 피우지 마세요!
   Don't just smoke anywhere you please!

Lesson Twelve / 233
47. A. 어떤 꽃을 살까요?
   What kind of flowers should we buy?

   B. 아무 꽃이나 좋아요! 핫라 사세요!
   Any old flowers are OK! Hurry up and buy some!

   The only way to make a negative version of this type of expression is with the 아무 pattern followed by 도 instead of (이)나. Note that the verb must be in the negative.

   아무도, nobody; nobody at all
   아무 것도, nothing; nothing at all
   아무 테도, nowhere; not any place
   아무 테서도, not [happening at] any place

48. A. 파티에는 사람 많이 왔어요?
   Did a lot of people come to the party?

   B. 아무도 안 왔어요.
   Nobody came.

49. A. 주말에는 뭐 했어요?
   What did you do over the weekend?

   B. 아무 것도 안 했어요.
   Nothing at all.

50. 왜 가요, 주말에는 아무 테도 못 갑니다.
   Because of the baby, we can't go anywhere on weekends.

51. 그 책은 아무 테서도 안 팔습니다.
   They don't sell that book anywhere.

3. (이)나 meaning or: Two Related Patterns

   Sub-pattern 1: Noun₁(이)나 Noun₂ meaning Noun₁ or Noun₂

   The particles 도 and (이)나 are alike in some ways. You have just seen (이)나 in its meaning about, approximately and as a generalizer of questions words (누구나 anybody at all). Like 도, (이)나 can be used twice in a sentence to show tandem agreement, but (이)나 shows freedom or indifference of choice.

52. 노트도, 연필도 안 됩니다.
   Neither notebooks nor pencils will do.

Lesson Twelve / 234
Either notebooks or pencils will do.

Whereas 도 is definite, (이)나 is vague or unspecific.

Both this one and that one are OK.

Either this one or that one is OK.

The particle (이)나, then, when it is used after each of two (or more) comparable noun expressions, means (either) . . . or (. . . or yet something else).

Sub-pattern 2: NOUN(이)나 meaning NOUN or something, NOUN or the like

When (이)나 follows just a single noun, it still retains the sense of indifference to choice (even slightly denigrating the choice), but is best translated in English as or something.

A. 영화나 볼까요?
Shall we see a movie or something?

B. 네, 그럼시다.
Yes, let's do that.

A. 술이나 마실까요?
Shall we have something [alcoholic] to drink [or something]?

B. 아니오, 아이스크림이나 먹읍시다.
No, let's eat some ice-cream or something.

12.7. More Ways To Say or

The phrase 또는 means or (else) between plain noun expressions.

A. 커피 또는 홍차
coffee or (else) black tea

Another way to do the same thing is to link two words with the word 아니면 or.

A. 커피 아니면 홍차
coffee or (else) black tea

At the beginning of a sentence, the phrase 또는 also has this contrastive idea, as in the following sentence.

Lesson Twelve /235
Nor (on the other hand) have I been to any concerts either [and I do like concerts].

[Background: I haven't been to a single movie this fall, hating them as I do.]

The word 아니면 can also begin a sentence, but has the meaning of Or else.

Or (else) shall we take a taxi?

또는, (이)나, and 아니면 thus all translate as or. (이)나 and 아니면 accept either choice indifferently where 또는 excludes one of the choices, by contrasting it with the accepted choice.

12.8. The wanna Form in -(으)ㄹ래(요)

Observe the following exchange:

62. A. 뭐 마실래요?
   What do you feel like drinking?

   B. 나는 커피를 마실래요.
   I think I'd like a coffee.

A plain processive base followed by -(으)ㄹ래(요) means something like I feel like VERBing. I wanna VERB, I've a mind to VERB, I'd prefer to VERB (if I had a choice), I'd like to VERB. L-extending bases attach the full ending -ㄹ래(요) onto the unextended form, so that we get 안 알래요, I'd rather not know (about it) [base 아니- plus -ㄹ래(요)]. The pattern expresses a weak intention, inclination, and/or desire. It is used only in first person statements and second person questions, as in the exchange above. This is a highly colloquial form, though not quite as informal as English wanna (we have glossed the pattern this way because, like English wanna, the Korean form is a contraction in origin.)

63. A. 소주로 할래요, 양주로 할래요?
   Would you prefer soju or whiskey?

   B. 백주 마실래요.
   I think I'd prefer beer.
Would you like to dance?

No, I can’t dance.

In general, the form in -(으)르래요 has the force of a gentle suggestion and implies a choice. You should use this form rather than -고 싶어요 in questions, since the latter forces the other person into a yes or no answer.

12.9. Meanings for 좋아요 and Related Words

The descriptive verb 좋아요 means (1) is good or fine or all right and, (2) is liked. In the first meaning, only one noun phrase is involved, but in the second meaning, it often has two subjects, or else a topic and a subject.

This is good.

I like this. [Literally: As for me, this is liked.]

The processive verb phrase 좋해야 does means finds it good or likes it and takes direct objects.

I like this.

This phrase also has the emotional connotation [someone] is happy (glad) which is commonly used in speaking of someone else, but sometimes for special emphasis to mean I am happy/glad. Notice the negative forms of each of these.

[something] isn’t good or isn’t liked

[someone] doesn’t like [something]

The opposites are comparable expressions.
70. 나는 중국요리가 싫어요.
   I don't like Chinese cuisine.
   [Literally: As for me Chinese cuisine is disliked, hence the thing disliked is the subject]

71. 우리 남편은 빵수를 싫어요.
   My husband dislikes shaved ice.
   [The thing disliked is the direct object]

72. 나는 뉴욕을 싫어요.
   I don't like New York.

73. 나는 뉴욕이 싫어요.
   I don't like New York.

Notice that in English the meanings of the negative phrase doesn't like and the affirmative phrase dislike usually fall together as the phrase doesn't like. The Korean 좋아하지 않아요 implies simple absence of fondness, without actual aversion. 싫어요, on the other hand, implies an active or positive dislike. You can, of course, make a negative out of the dislike phrases too: 싫지 않아요 I don't dislike it, 싫어하지 않아요 he doesn't dislike it.

Exercises

Exercise 1: Manipulating -지만

Here is a series of sentence pairs. The first sentence ends in -어요 and the second begins with -지만. Put the sentences together into one so that the first clause ends with -지만 but... Then translate the new sentence. For example, the first will be 택시를 불렀지만 아직 안 왔어요. I called a taxi, but it hasn't come yet.

1. 택시를 불렀지만, 그렇지마자 아직 안 왔어요.
2. 아기는 자요, 그렇지마자 어머니는 안 주무세요.
3. 음악회는 가지 않아요, 그렇지마자 연극도 가요.
4. 내 아이는 여든살이예요, 그렇지마자 오십년 더 살고 싶어요.
5. 점심때까지 일을 마치고 싶었어요, 그렇지마자 손님이 갑자기 오셨어요.
6. 택시는 좋어요, 그렇지마지소주는 싫어요.
7. 지금 잠자리를 보고 싶지 않아요, 그렇지마자 만화는 보고 싶어요.

Lesson Twelve / 238
Exercise 2: Suggestions and Tentative Questions

Here are a series of sentences that end in -어요. Change each sentence to the suggestion/tentative question pattern in -(으)르(가)요 and then translate each resulting sentence. Some will translate as Shall we? and others as Do you suppose? For example, the first will be 집에 돌아가요? Shall we go home?

1. 집에 돌아가요?
2. 그 책을 읽어요?
3. 춤을 춘어요?
4. 길에서 코트를 벗어요.
5. 걸어요.
6. 음악회에 같이 가요?
7. 소주를 시켜요? 아니면 생맥주를 시켜요?
8. 언니가 그 남자와 결혼해요.
9. 그 이야기를 다시 한번 들어요?
10. 어머니가 백화점에서 어떤 옷을 사요?
11. 김 선생님은 여자 친구하고 같이 오세요?
12. 한국 옷을 입어요?
Exercise 3: The wanna Form

Here is a series of sentences that end in -어요. Change each sentence to the Do you wanna... question form with -(으)래요? and then translate each resulting sentence. For example, the first will be Do you feel like drinking?

1. 13. 다른 집에서 살아요.
   Do you wanna live in another house?
   
2. 14. 택시를 불러요?
   Do you wanna call a taxi?
   
3. 15. 크림을 넣어요? 아니면 프리마를 넣어요?
   Do you wanna put cream in or not?
8. 저 아저씨는 부자 동네에서 살아요.
9. 아들은 출을 찾어요.
10. 아이들은 날마다 학교에 가요.
11. 그 여자는 그 남자와 약혼하고 싶어해요.
12. 수미 씨는 오후와 같이 라디오를 들어요.
13. 일요일에 나는 성당에 나가요.
14. 커피에 설탕이란 크림을 타요?

**Exercise 5: Negative Commands**

Here are a series of honorific polite commands in -(으)세요. Convert them to negative commands and translate the resulting sentences.

1. 책을 보세요.
2. 여자 친구를 만나세요.
3. 술을 많이 마시세요.
4. 담배를 피우세요.
5. 그 의자에 앉으세요.
6. 일음을 넣으세요.
7. 샐러드를 타세요.
8. 늦게 들어오세요.
9. 남마다 술집에 다니세요.
10. 그 남자랑 춤을 추세요.
11. 모레 떠나세요.
12. 걸어가세요.
13. 혼자 다니세요.
14. 내년에는 은퇴하세요.
15. 그 사람한테 전화번호를 주세요.
16. 이 샌드에 풀을 먹이세요.
17. 이 바지를 세탁하세요.

**Exercise 6: English to Korean Translation**

Translate the following sentences into Korean. Use long negatives wherever possible.

1. Don’t go to either tabangs or pubs.
2. I didn’t want to eat an ice cream, but my brother gave me one.
3. Is it already 7 o’clock (PM)? Then don’t stay here; go home.
4. I went back to Korea last year, but I didn’t like it.
5. Please put some sugar in this coffee.
6. Do you feel like a whisky or soju?
7. I don’t drink alcohol. Don’t you drink, either!
8. A. Let’s play baseball.
   B. I don’t feel like it (wanna). I feel like resting upstairs.

*Lesson Twelve / 241*
9. My older brother doesn't come home early nowadays.
10. Neither my son nor my daughter are very bright.

Exercise 7: Korean to English Translation

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 난 선생님은 음악을 좋아하지 않으세요. 저희 집 사람들 안 좋아해야.
2. 저 공원에서 산보나 핑계 합니다.
3. 이 물건들은 아주 무거워요. 좀 도와주세요.
4. 집에는 언제 들어왔어요?
5. 불교기를 맛이 있계 구워졌지만, 아무도 먹지 않았어.
6. 어째 우리 집 게가 아버지를 깨자기 풀었어요.
7. 이 크림은 비싸지만, 맞은 하나도 없어요. 먹지 마세요!
8. 김 선생님은 매우 잘이 예쁘세요.
9. A. 클라 마실래요? 아니면 막수 마실래요?  
   B. 둘 다 싫어요. 막주 한병 주실래요?
10. 오늘 저녁에 부산에 갈까 해요. 같이 갈래요?
11. 전화를 여러번 걸었지만, 아무도 받지 않았어요.
12. A. 워 샐래요?  
   B. 아무것도 사고 싶지 않아요.
13. 한국말 잘 하십니다. 몇 년이나 배우셨어요?
14. 심심해요. 다방에나 갈까요?
15. A. 양주나 소주는 건강에 나쁘니까요?  
   B. 금세요. 마시지 마다.
Lesson 13

아까 전화하니까, 아무도 받지를 않아요.

This lesson centers on families and kinship relations. We introduce new patterns meaning since/because and as soon as, two new honorific particles, PROBABLE FUTURES in -(으)로 거예요, the is doing pattern with -고 있어요 and RHETORICAL RETORTS in -حسب아요.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Eric and 미스 꽃, the waitress from the 커피 숍, have met at a tabang for their '데이트'.

에릭      어디 다른데로 갈까요? 아니면 여기 그날 있을까요?
미스 꽃     반이 추우니까 여기 그날 있어요.
에릭      미스 꽃, 형제가 많으세요?
미스 꽃     오빠 한 명하고 언니 한 명 있어요.
에릭      돌 다 결혼하셨어요?
미스 꽃     오빠만 결혼했어요. 아들도 하나 있어요. 언니는 아직 미혼이지만, 대학을 졸업하자마자 결혼할 거예요. 에릭 씨는 가족이 어떻게 되세요?
에릭      나는 어머니랑 아버지랑 여동생이 하나 있습니다. 동생 이름은 선디에요.
미스 꽃     실례지만, 아버지께서는 필 하세요?
에릭      무역회사에 다니고 계세요.
미스 꽃     아버지께서 연세가 많으신니까?
에릭      네, 이번 구월에 쌓 삼이 되세요.
미스 꽃     아이, 아직 왼으시지않어요?!
Dialogue 2

Back at Chris Murphy’s office, Chris has asked Miss Lee to get Mr. Nam, a colleague, on the phone.

Chris:나 샀장님하고 통화했어요?
Miss Lee:아, 맞아요. 오늘은 안 계실 거예요. 급요일이니까, 골프를 치고 계실 거예요.

Reading Passage

오늘은 일요일입니다.
그래서 가족들이 모두 집에 있습니다.
할아버지께서는 보통 공원에서 운동을 하시지만, 오늘은 비가 쏟아지고 있으니까 못 나가십니다.
아버지께서는 마루에서 무손 스포츠 프로를 보고 계십니다.

일요일에는 일어나시자 마자 텔레비전을 보고 싶어 하십니다.
어머니께서는 부엌에서 설것이를 하십니다.
나는 내 방에서 친구 전화를 기다리고 있습니다. 전화가 오자 마자 친구를 만나러 나갈 겁니다.
# Vocabulary

## Family and Relatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>식구</td>
<td>members of the family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>식구가 몇 명이세요?</td>
<td>How many people in your family?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌</td>
<td>cousin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌누나(누님)</td>
<td>cousin (boy's older female cousin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌형(님)</td>
<td>cousin (boy's older male cousin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌언니</td>
<td>cousin (girl's older female cousin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사촌동생</td>
<td>cousin (boy or girl's younger cousin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>삼촌</td>
<td>uncle (on father's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>의삼촌</td>
<td>uncle (on mother's side)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>큰아버지</td>
<td>uncle (father's elder brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작은아버지</td>
<td>uncle (father's younger brother)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이모</td>
<td>aunt (mother's sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이모부</td>
<td>aunt (mother's sister's husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모</td>
<td>uncle (father's sister)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모부</td>
<td>uncle (father's sister's husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아드님</td>
<td>son (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>따님</td>
<td>daughter (honorific)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아저씨</td>
<td>uncle (generic); mister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아주머니</td>
<td>aunt (generic); ma’am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아주머니</td>
<td>auntie (casual for 아주머니)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Brothers and Sisters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>형(님)</td>
<td>elder brother (for males)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남매</td>
<td>brother and sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저 두 사람은 남매에요.</td>
<td>Those two are brother and sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자매</td>
<td>sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누나</td>
<td>elder sister (for males)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>남동생</td>
<td>younger brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여동생</td>
<td>younger sister</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## In-laws

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>장인</td>
<td>father-in-law (for males)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인여론</td>
<td>father-in-law (elegant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장모</td>
<td>mother-in-law (for males)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Thirteen / 245
Verbal Expressions

가다 
어라 
맞다 
네, 맞습니다.
어혼(을) 하세요.
어혼했어요.
출업(을) 하세요.
런던대학교

네가이(를) 받다
콘텐트렌즈(를) 받아

Nouns

숙제
-데
스포츠
프로
프로 야구
The weather has become cloudy/clouded over, rain comes (it rains)
It is pouring down/It is raining buckets.
snow comes (it snows)
sports; exercise
do sports; exercise
sports stadium
golf
play golf
(is) unmarried
(somebody esteemed) says; humbly say
humbly say, say to somebody esteemed
Shall I tell the boss?
be late
be strange, odd
go through; (a language/message) is understood, gets across
be cold
be close, nearby
(a child) be young; be childish
be right, correct; hit the mark
Yes, that’s right.
get divorced
is divorced
graduate
I graduated from the University of London.
(not with 에서)
put on/wear a tie
wear contact lenses
throw it away

Nouns
homework
a place
sports (especially in the newspaper or on TV)
pro (sports); TV program
professional baseball
Lesson Thirteen

13.1. Verbs have a special ending -(으) 르 거예요. to make past tense.

Korea's rainy season, Korea's seasonal rains
the rainy season sets in
The rainy season in Korea comes in the summer.
spring
summer
autumn, fall
winter
soldier, serviceman
missionary
both, both of them [Literally: all two]
kitchen

Adverbs

아까
모두
그냥
맞지마스런 그냥 먹어요.
만호: (What should I bring to the potluck?)
수진: 그냥 오세요.

이렇게
그렇게
그렇게 어렵지는 않아요.
저렇게
멀리
멀리 가지 마세요.
멀리서
그러니까

아마
아마도

a television comedy show
weather
the living area in a Korean-style apartment/house;
wooden floor
cooked rice (honorific equivalent of 밥)
Grandfather, the meal is served.
Korea's rainy season, Korea's seasonal rains
the rainy season sets in
The rainy season in Korea comes in the summer.
spring
summer
autumn, fall
winter
soldier, serviceman
missionary
both, both of them [Literally: all two]
kitchen

a short while ago; just a moment ago
all, everyone
just (as one/it is), without doing anything; just
It doesn't taste like much, but let's eat (it as it is).
Just come anyway (as you are, without anything).
in this way, like this
in that way, like that; so
It's not so difficult.
in that way
far
Don’t go far.
from a distance
So, what I mean to say is; So, what you’re saying is
maybe, probably (often used with -(으) 르 거예요 and -(으) 겠어요)
maybe, probably (but a bit more tentative than just 아마)

Verbs have a special ending -(으) 르 거예요. to make past tense.

The sequence -(으) 르 거예요. (the honorific way) is used mainly in

There is also -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요.

13.1.1. -(으) 르 거예요.

The sequence -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요. -(으) 르 거예요.

1. 시간
It has
2. 너무
It’s too
3. 오늘
I’m not
4. 오늘
We’re not
Lesson Notes

13.1. Verbs: the Sequential Form - (으)니(까)

Verbs have a sequential form, which is made by attaching the ending -(으)니(까) to them: -(으)니(까) after consonants, -(으)니(까) after vowels. The ending may also be attached to past bases to make past-tense forms -(으)니(까), and to the probable future in -(으)ㄹ 거예요: -(으)ㄹ 거니(까) (see section 13.4 in this lesson for more on the probable future). For example:

- 하니(까) as/since [he] does
- 했으니(까) as/since [he] did
- 할 거니(까) as/since [he] will do
- 먹으니(까) as/since [he] eats
- 먹었으니(까) as/since [he] ate
- 먹을 거니(까) as/since [he] will eat

The sequential form in -(으)니(까) is called the extended sequential and is widely used in colloquial speech. It can also be heard as -(으)니(까) or -(으)니(까) with the particle 음/는 or its abbreviation.

There is also a short sequential form, which is obtained by dropping the -(으)니(까), i.e., -(으)니. This short sequential form is bookish or literary/poetic, and does not occur much in colloquial Korean.

13.1.1. -(으)니(까) As, Since, Because

The sequential ending -(으)니(까) can mean as or since or because or in view of the fact that. In this usage, the second clause often contains a suggestion or a command. Here are some examples.

1. 시간이 늦었으니(까) 밥을 타리 가십니다.
   *It has become late, so let's hurry.*

2. 너무 작으니(까) 버릴 까요?
   *It's too small; let's throw it away.*

3. 오늘은 좀 바쁘니(까) 그 일은 내일 할 날시.
   *I'm rather busy today, so let's take care of that matter tomorrow.*

4. 오늘 저녁은 박 선생님댁에서 밥을 거니(까) 많이 잊으시지 마세요.
   *We're going to eat at Mr. Pak's house tonight, so don't eat much (now).*
5. 버스에 사람이 많으니까, 걸어갑시다.
There are too many people on the bus, so let's walk.

6. 일이 끝났으니까, 택시나 한 장 할까요?
Since the work is finished, shall we have a beer or something?

7. 시간이 다 됐으니까, 빨리 끝내시다.
Time is up, so let's finish quickly.

8. 한국말을 잘 모르니까, 천천히 말씀하세요.
I don't know Korean very well, so please speak slowly.

13.1.2. -(으)니(가) When . . . , [I realized or discovered . . . ]

Both sequential forms, but particularly the extended sequential, also have the meaning when
in the past [something happened], then [I found/realized/discovered], indicating a close
sequence of actions. In this usage, the sequential ending cannot appear on a past base. In
addition, the subject of the -(으)니(가) clause is usually the speaker (I), and the subject of
the following clause is something or someone different. Here are some examples.

9. 전화를 하니까, 받지 않았어요.
When I telephoned, they didn't answer [literally: receive it].

10. 내가 가니까 그 사람이 신문을 보고 있었어요.
When I went [to see him], he was reading the newspaper.

11. 멀리서 보니까 학교 같습니다.
When I look at it from a distance, it looks like a school.

12. 방에 들어 가니까, 장인들이 신문을 보고 계셨어요.
When I entered the room, [I found that] my father-in-law was reading the newspaper.

13. 한국말을 공부하니까, 너무 재미 있어요.
Now that I study Korean, I find it is incredibly fun.

14. 한국사람을 사랑하니까, 한국음식도 맛이 있어요.
Now that I [am in] love [with] a Korean, Korean food tastes good, too.

15. 영국에 오니까, 날씨가 너무 안 좋아요.
Now that I'm here in England, I find that the weather is really not very good.

Lesson Thirteen / 250
13.2. Honorifics: Nouns and Particles

When you are talking in Korean about someone who has relatively high social status—a government official, a foreign guest, a minister, a teacher—you use some special forms called honorifics. Remember that when you are talking to someone of high status, you use either the Polite Style or the Formal Style, depending on which endings you put on the verbs at the end of sentences. Honorifics are also used frequently to refer to the second person. This is a way of honoring your listener, as well as showing that you mean you without actually using a pronoun. There are several kinds of honorifics.

13.2.1. Nouns

Some English nouns are translated by two different Korean nouns, one neutral and the other honorific:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean Neutral</th>
<th>Korean Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>house, home</td>
<td>집</td>
<td>덕</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(years of) age</td>
<td>나이</td>
<td>연세</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>사람</td>
<td>분</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooked rice</td>
<td>참</td>
<td>진지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td>아이</td>
<td>자녀분</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some kinship terms also have separate honorific forms; see section 13.3 below.

13.2.2. Particles

The Particle 개: Honorific 에게/한테

The particle 개 is honorific; it means the same thing as 에게 and 한테, to [a person], but is used only after nouns denoting a specially honored person.

아버님개 to [esteemed] father

The Particle 개서(는): Honorific 이/가

The combination 개서 marks as subject an esteemed person and is the honorific equivalent to the two-shape subject particle 이/가.

Lesson Thirteen / 251
16. 선생님께서 오셨어요.
The [esteemed] teacher came.

The honorific subject marker 케서 can be used either alone or followed by the topic particle

17. 아버님께서 무엇을 하세요?
What does your father do?

The honorific particle 케서 is used only for persons. Here are some examples of 케 and 케
서 (는).

18. 할머님께 편지를 써었습니다.
I wrote Grandmother a letter.

19. 교수님께 저한테 부탁하셨어요.
My professor asked a favor of me.

20. 할아버지께 자동차가 없으세요?
Doesn’t your grandfather have a car?

21. 아버님께서 애에 안 계세요?
Isn’t your father at home?

22. 사장님께 연락했습니다?
Did you get in touch with the company president?

13.3. Kinship Terms

The Korean words for relatives can be divided into two types: those for which some of the
words differ according to the gender of the person (that is, whether you are speaking about a
man’s brother or a woman’s brother), and those for which the words are the same regardless
of the gender of the person related. You will have noticed also that Korean does not allow
its speakers to refer to brothers and sisters (or cousins, who are regarded as extended
siblings) without specifying whether that person is older or younger than the person related.

The words for grandfather 할아버지 and grandmother 할머니 are also used to mean old
man and old woman. Similarly, the words for uncle 아저씨 and aunt 아주머니, 아주머니 are
used to mean (older) man and (older) lady, particularly in expressions used by children, or
in speaking to children, such as Say hello to the man, dear or the lady who lives next door.
The word 집 (택) house may also used in the way English uses the word family: 우리집이 커요. Our house [family] is large. 식구 [Literally: mouths to feed] means members of the family. To ask or tell how many people there are in someone's family, you can use a form of either 있- (there) are or 이- (the copula).

23. 식구가 몇명이세요?
   Your family members are how many (people)?

24. 식구가 몇명이 있어요?
   Your family members, how many of them are there?

You may have noticed that Korean often prefers the plural we/us where English would require I/me: 우리 개 my dog. [This is extended even to cases where the explanation given earlier (belonging to our family) is not so convincing.] 우리 남편 is the usual way of saying my husband and 우리 아내 my wife.

Kinship Terms

In the following lists, honorific kinship terms are in AppleGothic Bold (고딕).

a. Relatives for which the terms differ according to the sex of the person related.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A male's</th>
<th>A female's</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>장인, 장인어른</td>
<td>시아버지, 시아버지님</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장모, 장모님</td>
<td>시아버지, 시아버지님</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아내 (부인)</td>
<td>남편</td>
<td>spouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형제</td>
<td>(오빠들과 남동생들)</td>
<td>brothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>형(님)</td>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>older brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누나, 누남</td>
<td>언니</td>
<td>older sister</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Relatives for which the terms do not differ according to the gender of the person related.

조부모, 조부모님      grandparents
할아버지, 할아버지님  grandfather
할머니, 할머님         grandmother
부모, 부모님            parents
아버지, 아버님           father

Lesson Thirteen / 253
13.4. Probable Futures with -(으)ㄹ 거예요

13.4.1. Probable Futures in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 on Plain Bases

Dialogue One from this lesson contained the following sentence.

25. 네, 이번 주말에 선 살이 되실 거예요.
   Yes. He's going to be (become) fifty this September.

The usual way to make a future tense in Korean is to add -(으)ㄹ 거예요 to the plain or honorific base of any verb, processive or descriptive. It can also be added to the past base to mean probably VERBed, must have VERBed. We will look at this probable past usage of -(으)ㄹ 거예요 later on in the section. First, here is the construction on a plain base.

먹을 거예요  is going to eat, will probably eat
있을 거예요  is going to have, probably will have
눈이 차올 거예요  is going to wear a tie, will probably wear a tie
추울 거예요  is going to be cold, will probably be cold
들울 거예요  is going to listen, will probably listen
살 거예요  is going to live, will probably live
바влечен 거예요  is going to be busy, will probably be busy
빠를 거예요  is going to be quick, will probably be quick

Lesson Thirteen / 254
As can be seen from the examples above, verbs like *listen* retain the *n* as the base-final consonant, as is always the case when the base is followed by a two-shape ending. The *w ~ u* verb base *w-* *cold* also ends in a consonant (*w*), but the *w + u* of the ending combine to give *wstring* so *w ~ u* verb bases when combined with two-shape endings always change to *wstring*. L-extending bases attach this ending in their unextended shape: *사-니- live → 사- + -는 거예요 → 살 거예요*.

**주의!**

Note that all verb endings that attach to a plain base of a verb can also be attached to the plain base with the honorific ending -(으).syn- attached. From now on, therefore, when we refer to an ending being attached to a plain base, we mean one either with or without the honorific form included in it.

You will also see the spelling -을 거예요 for this form, because the *예요* portion is actually the copula (-이예요, squished to -예요), but people pronounce -을 거예요.

**주의!**

Remember to tense up the *ㄴ* of -거예요: -을거예요 in pronunciation.

In origin, this ending is complex, built on the prospective modifier -(으)로 plus *것* thing; *fact* plus the copula. For now, you need not worry about the prospective modifier (wait until Lesson Twenty-three). Simply keep in mind that it is the -(으)로 here which lends the future or forward-looking meaning to the construction (and which tenses up the *ㄴ* of 거 ← 것). What you are really saying is it *is a prospective case/matter of VERBing*. Since the last element is just the copula, you can change this to other styles or put other endings on.

먹을 집니다 is going to eat, will probably eat (formal)

You can also undo the rather colloquial contraction of *것* to *거*.

먹을 것일니다 is going to eat, will probably eat (formal)

먹을 것이예요 is going to eat, will probably eat (polite)

*Lesson Thirteen / 255*
Note, however, that if you wish to use an honorific, this must appear on the verb base, not on the copula involved in the probable future ending.

Note, however, that if you wish to use an honorific, this must appear on the verb base, not on the copula involved in the probable future ending.

Often, especially with the copula, forms in -(으)르 거예요 can mean a probable present.

26. 그 미국사람이 군인일 거예요.
That American must be a soldier.

27. 그것이 크리스 씨의 집이 아닐 거예요.
That surely wouldn't be Chris' house.

Here are more examples of the probable future.

It will [probably] rain tomorrow.

29. 내년에 [아마] 졸업을 할 거예요.
He will [probably] graduate next year.

30. 방에 [아마] 추울 거예요.
It will [probably] be cold at night.

Mr. Pak is [probably] living in Pusan.

13.4.2. Probable Futures in -(으)르 거예요 on Past Bases

The following examples show the way in which you can add the -(으)르 거예요 form to a past base to make a probable future perfect (likely will have done) or a probable past (must have done).

32. 영국으로 떠났을 거예요.
He must have departed for England.

33. 아마 한국에서 영어를 좀 배우셨을 거예요.
He probably studied some English in Korea.
13.5. Rhetorical Retorts in -잡아요

Recall the following exchange from this lesson's conversation.

34. B. 내, 이번 구월에 선 살이 되실 거예요.  
   Yes. He'll be fifty years old this September.
   A. 아직 잘으시지 않아요?!  
   Oh, go on. He's still young [don’t you think?].

In origin, this verb ending is a squished (contracted) long-form negative. Thus, the example above is obtained from the sentence below by adding a rhetorical twist to your intonation:

절-오시지 않아요?  
Is he not young? [stupid question—of course he is!]

The squish process went like this: -지 않아요 → -잡아요 → -잡아요. We regard this squished negative as a new and separate verb ending because it behaves differently from the negatives in -지. Like -지, this is a one-shape ending, and extending bases keep their 팀: 잡잡아요! But whereas negatives in -지 attach only to plain (and honorific) bases, the ending -잡아요 can attach to any base.

-잡아요 on Plain Bases

35. A. 빨리 와요!  
   *Hurry up!*
   B. 그런데 이제 무겁잡아요!  
   *But this thing is (so) heavy!* [isn’t it/can’t you see?]

36. A. 왜 이렇게 늦을까요?  
   *Why do you suppose he’s so late?*
   B. 비가 오잡아요!  
   *But it’s raining!* [isn’t it/can’t you see?]

37. A. 이 음식이 왜 이렇게 맛없잡아요?  
   *Why do you suppose this food is so tasteless?*
   B. 영국음식이잡아요!  
   *But it’s English food!* [isn’t it/can’t you see?]

38. 에릭 외국사람이 처음이세요?  
   *Is this your first time with a foreigner?*
   미스 괴 네, 그래서 좀 이상해요.  
   *Yes, so it’s a bit strange.*
Go on, what's so strange about it? Aren't I a person, too?

-고 있어요 on Past Bases

39. A. 오늘 밤 선생님을 만날 거예요.
   I'll probably meet Mr. Pak today.

   B. 그런데, 벌써 떠나셨어요!
   But he's already left! [hasn't he/didn't you know?]

40. A. 오늘 우리 한국말 시험인가요?
   Is today our Korean language exam?

   B. 어제였겠어요!
   It was yesterday! [wasn't it/didn't you know?]

13.6. Is doing with -고 있어요

A phrase consisting of a -고 form and a form of 있- is; stays corresponds to English verb phrases like is writing, is eating, is buying, as opposed to simple forms like writes, eats, buys.

41. 어머니는 아침을 아직 잡수시고 계세요.
   Mother is still eating breakfast.

42. 고모가 밤에서 기다리고 있으니까, 빨리 해요.
   Auntie (father's sister) is waiting [for you] outside, so hurry up.

43. 동생이 아직 자고 있어요.
   My little brother (or little sister) is still asleep.

44. 시어머니께서 새 옷을 입고 계셨어요.
   The mother-in-law was wearing [or had on] a new dress.

This correspondence is by no means 100 percent, however; English says is going where Korean uses the single verb 가요. For most cases of 고 있어요 you can substitute a simple verb, so that 먹어요 eats covers about the same ground as 먹고 있어요 is eating. This does not work in the other direction, though. You may not automatically substitute a -고 있어요 phrase for every simple verb form.

Lesson Thirteen / 258
The -고 of this pattern behaves in the same way as the -고 of -고 있어요. In other words, it keeps the 고 of -고-extending verbs: 살고 있어요 is living. Insofar as this pattern emphasizes that a particular action or process is in progress, it can only be used with processive bases.

Note that, with verbs of donning (verbs related to the putting on and wearing of clothes) this pattern creates an ambiguity.

45. 나는 넥타이를 매고 있어요.
   * I am wearing a necktie, or I am putting on my tie.

46. 모자를 쓰고 있습니다.
   * I am wearing a hat, or He is putting on his hat.

To show tense, you change the verb 있어요: 쓰고 있어요 is writing becomes 쓰고 있겠어요 was writing. For other sentence types you also make the change on the last verb, as you can see in 쓰고 있지만 is writing, but.

For honorific expressions you substitute 계세요 for 있어요, so that 쓰고 있어요 becomes 쓰고 계세요 (or 쓰시고 계세요) to mean (someone esteemed) is writing.

The negative can be made either on the underlying verb or on the expression as a whole, with slightly different meanings. If you merely want to deny an assertion you can say 쓰고 있지 않아요 is not writing, but if you want to imply that the subject goes along nicely without the activity, you say 쓰지 않고 있어요 is not writing [for the time being, these days, etc.] or gets along (manages to get by) without writing or keeps away from one's typewriter. Both kinds of negative can be put into the various other sentence types, so that for the meaning isn't writing, but, you will hear both 쓰고 있지 않지만 or 쓰고 있지 못하지만, usually as a denial of an assertion, and 쓰지 않고 있지만 or 쓰지 못하고 있지만. Here are some more examples.

47. 큰아버지의 요즘도 술을 드시지 않고 계십니다.
   * My uncle is keeping off the booze lately (still/ too).

48. 이모는 아직 콘택트 렌즈를 찾지 못하고 있어요.
   * Auntie (mother's sister) still can't find her contact lens.
13.7. As soon as with -자 마자

The pattern for as soon as is made by attaching the one-shape ending -자 to verb bases. The pattern is usually intensified in spoken language with -자 마자: 오자 or 오자 마자 as soon as [someone] comes/came. Note that even if the event in the second clause is past, the verb with the -자 마자 ending still attaches to a plain base—the verb at the end of the whole sentence does all the work of showing the tense. Here are some more examples.

49. 내가 서울역에 도착하자마자, 기차가 떠났어요.
   The train left as soon as I arrived at Seoul station.

50. 수업이 끝나자 마자 점심을 먹으러 갈 걸니다.
   We're going to go eat lunch as soon as class finishes.

51. 숙제를 마치자마자, 집에 돌아갔어요.
   He went home as soon as he finished his homework.

52. 밥을 먹자 마자 손님이 왔어요.
   I had no sooner eaten than someone came.

53. 부산에서 내리자마자 사촌동생을 만났어요.
   I saw (or met) my cousin as soon as I got off at Pusan.

54. 방학이 되자 마자 시끌에 쉴러 가고 싶습니다.
   As soon as vacation comes, I want to go to the countryside to take a rest.

55. 버스에서 내리자 마자 비가 온아갔어요.
   As soon as I got off the bus, it poured.

Exercise 1:

Join each of the sentences in the following list and translate the resulting sentences.

1. 법에 눈이.
   빛에 눈이.

2. 저씨 어머니.
   저씨 어머니.

3. 한국말이 있다.
   한국말이 있다.

4. 오늘 좋다.
   오늘 좋다.

5. 나는 중국 맥주를 좋아한다.
   나는 중국 맥주를 좋아한다.

6. 극장 앞으로 갔다.
   극장 앞으로 갔다.

7. 방 안으로 들어갔다.
   방 안으로 들어갔다.

8. 밤에 나갔다.
   밤에 나갔다.

9. 연구실에 갔다.
   연구실에 갔다.

10. 서울역에서 타고 다닐 것이다.
    서울역에서 타고 다닐 것이다.

Exercise 2:

Each of the following sentences will be 동생은 교내에 있다. The blank will be 동생은 교내에 있다.

1. 동생은 교내에 있다.
2. 시아버지는 사망했다.
3. 신생님은 집에 있다.
4. 할아버지가 바라.
5. 내일 숙제를 쫓다.
6. 내일 비가 왔다.
7. 오늘 밤에 안 도착했다.
8. 나는 한국에 가다.
9. 아저씨는 동생은 교내에 있다.
Exercises

Exercise 1: Sequentials in -(으)니까

Join each of the sentences below using the sequential pattern in -(으)니까 and translate the resulting sentence into English.

1. 밤에 눈이 왔습니다. 골프를 못 칠 거예요.
2. 저녁 어머니가 항상 집에 계십니다. 걱정 마세요.
3. 한국말이 너무 어렵습니다. 다른 외국어를 배울래요.
4. 오늘 좀 바쁘니. 내일 만날까요?
5. 나는 중국 사람이 아닙니다. 중국말은 못 가르칩니다.
6. 극장 앞으로 나았습니다. 친구가 벌써 가다리고 있었어요.
7. 방 안으로 들어갔습니다. 아무도 없었어요.
8. 밤에 나왔습니다. 눈이 오고 있었어요.
9. 연구실에서 편지를 쓰고 있었습니다. 일본에서 전화가 왔어요.
10. 서울역에 도착했습니다. 벌써 밤이었습니다.

Exercise 2: -(으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable Future

Each of the following sentences means someone does/is something. Make each one mean someone probably will do/be something. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 동생은 교회에 갈 거예요. My brother is going to go to church.

1. 동생은 교회에 가요.
2. 시아버지는 일주일동안 계세요.
3. 선생님은 베티를 메세요.
4. 할아버지는 모자를 쓰세요.
5. 내일 숙제가 많아요.
6. 내일 비가 와요.
7. 오늘 밤에 조카가 와요.
8. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르쳐요.
9. 아저씨는 이번 겨울에 가족을 만나요.
Exercise 3: -(으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable Present

Each of the following sentences means someone *does/is something*. Make each one mean *someone probably does/is something*. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be: 외삼촌은 중국에 살고 계실 거예요. *My uncle is probably living in China.*

1. 외삼촌은 중국에 살고 계세요.
2. 장인어른은 지금 주무세요.
3. 밖에 추워요.
4. 영국은 낯서가 별로 안 좋아요.
5. 우리 시어머니는 교회에 나가세요.
6. 그 아이가 아직 어려요.
7. 그 부모님들이 철치 않으세요.
8. 그 상점이 가깨워요.
9. 극장은 너무 멀어요.
10. 우리 시아버지의 논이 많으세요.
11. 우리 머느리는 영어를 잘해요.
12. 선생님의 약혼자는 꽃을 좋아 하세요.
13. 내 사위가 미국 사람이지만 한국말을 좀 해요.
14. 아저씨는 남동생 집에서 사세요.
15. 선생님의 아동님이 졸업했어요.
16. 오빠가 운동하고 있어요.
17. 고모부가 그림 보르세요.
18. 할아버지가 일찍 주무셨어요.
19. 영화가 인체 끝났어요.
20. 조카가 그 편지지를 이틀 전에 받았어요.
Exercise 4: Kinship terms and Honorifics

Here are some English sentences. Express each one in Korean twice: the first time insert *my younger brother* as the subject, and the second time use *my father* as the subject (and use honorifics).

1. In the spring he plays golf, but in the summer he plays tennis.
2. He went to bed early last night, but he didn’t get up early this morning.
3. He doesn’t eat much meat, and he doesn’t drink much water, either.
4. He’s old, but his heart is young.
5. He doesn’t like his daughter-in-law, but he likes his son-in-law.
6. He wasn’t home yesterday afternoon, but he’s home now.
7. He works hard in the daytime. At night, he rests.
8. He taught English at the University last year, but he doesn’t teach there now.
9. He waited at the hotel for an hour, but his friend didn’t come.
10. He gave my little sister some money yesterday.
11. He listened to the radio for two hours last night.

Exercise 5: English to Korean Translation

Translate the following sentences into Korean.

1. A. My family [house] is big. There are many members [literally: members are many].
   B. How many siblings do you have, Ho-ch’61? (호철 씨, male)
   A. I have four younger brothers and one younger sister.
   B. You don’t have any older brothers or sisters?
   A. That’s right, I haven’t. I have neither older brothers nor older sisters.
   B. Do you have children, Ho-ch’61?
   A. Yes, we now have a son and a daughter.
2. A. What are you doing here?
   B. I’m waiting for my girlfriend.
3. A. What’s the baby doing now?
   B. He’s sleeping.
4. The teacher is wearing a tie.
5. My uncle is putting on his shoes.
6. As soon as I graduate, I want to go to Japan.
7. As soon as the film ended, we went to a tabang.
8. As soon as my uncle returned from Canada, it snowed.
9. As soon as we arrived at Pusan, we called home.
10. As soon as I found the telephone number, I called.
11. As soon as the price went up a bit, I sold the car.


Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 그 아저씨는 군이있을 거예요.
2. 내일은 서울에서 구경을 좀 할 거예요.
3. A. 오늘 저녁에 이 선생님 만나실 걸니까?
   B. 그런데, 벌써 서울로 떠났잖아요?
4. 어제 밤에 눈이 왔을 거예요.
5. 저희 조부모들은 대구에서 살고 계실니다.
6. 저는 이번 봄에 쏜업할 겁니다.
7. A. 아드님은 몇살입니까?
   B. 스물네살입니다.
8. 그 아줌마는 이혼했을 간다.
9. A. 저는 경제학을 전공했습니다.
   B. 그리세요? 어人大常委요?!
10. A. 운동 좀 하러 운동장에 나갈까요?
    B. 그런데, 비가 오잖아요?!
11. 우리 누나는 책을 쓰고 있어요.
12. 우리 손녀딸은 연재나 모자를 쓰고 있어요.
13. 우리 집은 식구가 많습니다. 남동생 다섯명이랑 언니 두명이 있습니다.
14. A. 수잔 씨는 언제 한국말을 잘해요.
    B. 언제나 공부를 열심히 하잖아요?!
15. A. 이 식당은 언제나 손님이 많아요.
    B. 음식이 맛이 있잖아요?!
16. 추우니까, 나가지 말시아.
17. 이 프로는 제가 없으니까, 보지 말시아.
18. 밖에 나가니까, 아주 추워요.
19. 아까 전화하니까, 아무도 받지 않았어요.
20. 영화가 지금 끝났을 거예요.
Exercise 7: More Practice with Sequentials

Each of the items below contains two sentences. Reconstruct them as one sentence connected by the sequential ending -(으)니까 and then translate into English. Note that the first ten sentences are of the discovery-when type (and thus have “I” as their subject). Be sure to delete the past tense ending before attaching -(으)니까.

1. 집에 돌아갔어요, 아무도 없었어요.
2. 밖에 나갔어요, 아주 더웠어요.
3. 산에 올라갔어요, 참 추웠어요.
4. 다시 한번 봤어요, 왜살enef있어요.
5. 누님한테 전화 걸었어요, 받지 않았어요.
6. 양복을 입었어요, 다른 사람이요.
7. 은행을 봤어요, 아주 싫해요.
8. 학교 한칸 마셨어요, 노래를 부르고 싶어요.
9. 그 여자랑 데이트 했어요, 부모님이 싫어하셨어요.
10. 택시 타었어요, 아저씨가 [i.e. the driver] 영어를 잘 했어요.
11. 좀 피곤해요, 오늘은 나가지 말시다.
12. 한국은 겨울에 추워요, 봄에 갑시다.
13. 선교사에요, 한국말을 잘 할 거에요.
14. 나이가 많아요, 너무 빨리 걱정 말아요.
15. 내일 눈이 올 거에요, 다음 주일에 합시다.
16. 사장님께 말씀드렸어요, 걱정하지 마십시오.
17. 장마가 쳐졌어요. 비가 많이 올 걸니다.
18. 한국 사람에요, 김치를 좋아해요.
19. 커피가 없어요, 홍차로 할까요?
20. 맥주 한잔 계세요, 심심할시 집니다.
21. 부자동네에 살아요, 돈이 많을 거에요.

Lesson Thirteen / 265
Exercise 8: Practice with -고 있어요

Each of the following sentences or exchanges contains a phrase which means someone does something. Make each one mean someone is [in the process of] doing something using the -고 있어요 pattern. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 동생은 넥타이를 매고 있어요. My brother is putting on/wearing a tie.

1. 동생은 넥타이를 매어요.
2. A. 뭐 해요?
   B. 넥타이 마셔요.
3. 순희 씨는 제즈 음악을 들어요.
4. 사장님이 손님하고 이야기를 하세요.
5. A. 아까 그 학생이 필 했어요?
   B. 복도에서 기다려요.
6. A. 아쪽도 시청 근처에 사세요?
   B. 아니요, 인제는 친척 집에서 살어요.
7. 내 노트를 찾아요.
8. 연니하고 오빠는 지금 테니스를 칩니다.
9. [디스코에서]
   A. 연니는 필해요?
   B. 저기서 춤을 추고 있어요?
10. 요즘 왜 안경을 안 써요?

Exercise 9: Vocabulary Drill

Say each of the following sentences in Korean five different times, each time inserting one of the expressions listed below in the blank space.

1. _____한테 편지를 받았습니다.  2. 우리 _____(가/이/께서) 문을 좀 주셨습니다.
   spouse
   older brother
   nephew
   grandmother
   mother-in-law

   father
   aunt
   older sister
   parents
   grandfather

Lesson Thirteen / 266
3. 제 친구가 ____ 옆에 앉았습니다. 4. 제 친구는 ____하고 같이 삽니다.

younger brother  parents
older brother  father-in-law
father-in-law  grandchildren
nephew  aunt
spouse  older brother

5. 우리 여동생은 공원에서 ____과/와 산보를 하고 있습니다.

her husband
her father
my daughter
my daughter-in-law
our mother's sister
In this lesson we follow Eunice Murphy and Mrs. Kim as they head out for a day’s shopping, then observe Chris Murphy at work being introduced to a new Korean business colleague and then greeting a caller at his office. The lesson shows how to introduce friends and order food at a restaurant. It provides a taste of verbal niceties in an office environment. We introduce two new types of future tense, the Korean equivalent of tag questions in English (Isn’t that right? Isn’t that so?), and more on also, going, and coming.

Korean Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Mrs. Kim (진영이 엄마) has dropped in to see Eunice one morning in December.

유니스 오늘 시내에 가실가요?
진영이 엄마 네, 오늘 쇼핑 좀 할래요.
같이 가시지 않겠어요?
유니스 네, 좋지요! 그런데, 월 사시겠어요?
진영이 엄마 크리스마스까지 시간이 조금 밖에 안 남았으니까, 크리스마스 선물 좀 사고 싶어요. 어디가 재일 좋을까요?
여무래도 동대문 시장이 제일 좋겠지요?
유니스 그렇겠지요. 저도 거기 여러번 갔었어요.
물건 많이 아주 싸지요?
진영이 엄마 네, 아주 싸요. 자, 송출 가볼까요?
As they're on the way out the door
유니스 잠시만요. 화장실에 갔다올게요.
진영이 엄마 빨리 갔다오세요. 엘리베이터 앞에서 기다리고 있给您.

Downstairs on the street
유니스 자, 갈까요? 지하철을 타고 갈까요? 택시를 타고 갈까요?
진영이 엄마 편히 가고 싶으니까, 택시를 타고 갑시다.
제가 돈을 내지요.

Notes
아무래도 most likely; I'd venture to say; probably
그럼겠지요. That is probably the case, That must be the case. This is the future
presumptive -겠- form of 그래요 it is so, followed by don't you think?
-지요.

술술 가볼까요? 술술 is an adverb meaning something like in a slow, leisurely fashion.
The entire expression is a useful way to say, It's time we start moving.

Dialogue 2
Chris has arranged a dinner meeting with Mr. Kang, who will introduce a new friend.

They sit down
크리스 (to 난) 이 집에 처음 오십니까?
난 아닙니다. 전에도 몇 번 왔었습니다.
여종업원 위 하시겠어요?
감 (여종업원에게) 잠시만요. (남씨에게) 위 시킬까요?
난 아무거나 좋지만, 저는 갈비로 하지요, 위.
크리스 그럼, 나도 갈비 하겠어요.

Lesson Fourteen / 269
여종업원 (to 강)  아저씨는요?
강       나는 불교가 하겠어요.
여종업원  네, 알겠습니다. 갈비 이분하고 불교가 일으분요.
        유휴수는요?
크리스 (to others)  술 좀 하시겠어요?
강, 남   좋지요!
크리스       그려면, 우선 맥주 세병반 갖다 주세요.

Dialogue 3

Mr. Nam has come to see Chris at the office.

남 (to Miss Lee)  수고하십시오. 머피 사장님 계십니까?
미스 리  네, 계신데요. 어떻게 오셨어요?
남       네?
미스 리  생합이 어떻게 되시지요?
남       남주행입니다.
미스 리  잠깐만 가다리세요.

Miss Lee ushers Mr. Nam into Chris Murphy’s office

크리스       아이구, 반갑습니다. 들어오십시오. 여기 앉으시지요.
미스 리, 여기 커피 두병만 갖다 주세요.
남     그동안 어떻게 지내셨어요?
크리스       덕분에 별일 없습니다.
        자, 그런데 무슨 용무로 오셨어요?

Notes

 어떻게 오셨어요?  [Literally: How have you come?] What brings you here?
계신데요  He is in. The -ㄴ데요 here is softer and more polite than just 계십니다 or 계세요, but you will learn the ending formally at a later stage.
그동안  in the meantime; during the interval [that we weren’t in touch]

Lesson Fourteen / 270
Thanks to [you]. You can also say so-and-so.

[Literally: There are no particular matters (to report)]. Also: 별 일 없으세요. Are you getting along well? or 별 일이 없으세요? Have you been getting along well?

**Vocabulary**

**Verbal Expressions**

돈(이) 드-르-  
이건 돈이 많이 들었어요.

빛-  
머리를 빛어요.

(돈을) 내-  
제가 낼게요.

아프-  
예쁘-  
드-르-  
이것 잡간 들고 있을래요?

죽-  
돌아가시-  
다치-  
머리를 닦쳐어요.

타고가-  
타고오-  
두-르-  
초대(물) 하-  
초대(물) 받-  
소개(물) 하-  
소개(물) 받-  
만호 세한테서 수진 씨를 소개 받았어요. I was introduced to Sujin by Manho.

갖다주-  
누-  
취하-  
취했어요.

cost money [Literally: money enters]
This cost a lot of money.
comb
I comb my hair.
pay
I'll pay.
hurt, be painful
be pretty, cute
lift; hold
Would you mind holding this for a moment?
die
die, pass away (honorific)
be wounded, get hurt, get injured
He injured his head.
go (riding something)
come (riding something)
solve it; undo it
invite someone
be/get invited
introduce someone/something
be/get introduced (to someone)

bring it, fetch it
lie down
get drunk
I’m drunk.
Lesson Fourteen / 272

Adverbs

- get along (e.g., How are you getting along?)
- How are you doing these days?
- hang up (the telephone); quit (smoking/drinking)
- Good-bye. (on the telephone) [Literally: 'I'm hanging up now.]
- I've quit smoking.
- start term/school
- We started the new term yesterday.
- When is the beginning of term?
- be comfortable; be convenient
- be uncomfortable; be inconvenient
- change (clothes)
- change; exchange
- We changed our class time.
- Please exchange these socks for a different pair.
- of course
- [It is a matter] of course.
- very, very much
- day before yesterday
- day after tomorrow
- day after tomorrow (same)
- first of all, before everything, before anything else
- Let's contact the teacher first.
- comfortably, in comfort
- Please make [seat] yourself comfortable.
- a short while
- [Please wait] Just a moment.
- the most; the first, number one
- Swimming is the best thing for your health.
- The subway is fastest.
- the most
- This place [restaurant] has the tastiest side dishes.

Nouns

- side dishes to go with rice

Lesson Fourteen / 272
Elevator, lift
downtown, city center
business, a matter to be taken care of
What business brings you here?
material(s) [of a written nature], data
[-many] portions, servings [used in ordering at restaurants]
How many portions would you like?
three portions [this word takes Sino-Korean numerals]
a beverage, something to drink
the bill, the check (in a restaurant)
Please bring me the check.
bus stop
Are you getting off at the next stop?
(train) station/stop
examination
take an exam
present, gift
feelings, mood
I'm in a good mood.
I'm in a bad mood.
shopping
term, semester
problem
graduating class

Some Body Parts

head; hair
She is bright/intelligent.
She has pretty hair.

Lesson Fourteen / 273
Lesson Notes

14.1. Ways to Say only.

만 plus AFFIRMATIVE, 밖에 plus NEGATIVE

Observe the following sentences.

1. 돈 만원만 주세요.
   *Let me have [just, exactly] 10,000 wŏn, please.*

2. 이천오백원 밖에는 안 들어요.
   *It will only cost 2500 wŏn.*

The particle 만 plus an affirmative verb means only, just, to the extent of. The quasi-particle 밖에 (derived from the place noun 밖 outside plus the particle 에) plus a negative verb arrives at the same meaning by a more circuitous route. Here is another example.

3. 만원 밖에 없어요.
   *I have only ten thousand wŏn.*
   *(Literally: Except for or outside of ten thousand won, I haven't (anything) or I haven't (anything) but ten thousand wŏn.)*

The pattern in 밖에 plus negative implies that the amount in question is less than, or not quite up to, one's expectations. Thus, in (3) above, the implication is that the speaker had rather hoped or expected to have more than 10,000 wŏn. Here are some more examples of the 밖에 plus negative pattern.

4. 나는 아이 한명 밖에 없습니다.
   *I have only one child.*

5. 연필 밖에 없습니다.
   *I have nothing but a pencil. All I have is a pencil.*

Remember that 만원만 means no more.

9. 만원만.
   *Would you mind me having only ten thousand wōn?*

14.2. Another Pattern

Observe the following sentences.

10. 일찍 오시는 것에요.
    *He did come early.*

11. 어제 오시시는 것에요.
    *(As to yesterday)*

In sentences such as these, 오시는 것 implies that the speaker expected or was expecting that amount to come, but did not come. The implication is that the speaker is surprised or disappointed in the amount of time that passed before the other arrived.

12. 어제 오시시는 것에요.
    *Yesterday.*

13. 사장 오시시는 것에요.
    *The boss arrived.*

14. 매주 오시시는 것에요.
    *I draw every week.*

15. 두시 오시시는 것에요.
    *I arrived at 2 pm.*
6. 어제 밤 극장에 저 밖에 가지 않았어요.
   *I was the only one who went to the movies last night.*

7. 고기 밖에 못 먹었어요.
   *I could only eat meat.*

8. 만원 밖에 들지 않았습니다.
   *It only cost 10,000 won.*

Remember that with numerical expressions 만 only or just has no English equivalent. It means no more, no less or exactly [the number specified].

9. 만원만 주실래요?
   *Would you mind giving me 10,000 won?*

**14.2. Another Use of (이)나 as many as**

Observe the following examples.

10. 일찍 떠났지만, 그래도 사실분이나 늦었습니다.
    *He departed early, but nonetheless he was (as much as) 40 minutes late.*

11. 어제 파티에 백명이나 왔어요.
    *(As many as) a hundred people came to the party yesterday.*

In sentences like the above, the particle (이)나 attached to a number or numeral expression implies that the speaker believes the amount to be a high one, or at least, he or she finds that amount higher than expected. Thus, in number (10) above, the speaker is implying that he or she thinks being late by 40 minutes is quite a lot. Likewise, in sentence (11), the speaker implies that, for her, three letters is a lot. Here are some more examples.

12. 어제는 열시간이나 잔어요.
    *Yesterday I slept for (as much as) ten hours.*

13. 사장님은 하루에 커피를 열 잔이나 드세요.
    *The boss drinks (as many as) ten cups of coffee a day.*

14. 맥주를 열병이나 마셨어요.
    *I drank (as many as) ten bottles of beer.*

15. 두시간이나 늦게 도착했습니다.
    *I arrived (as many as) two hours late.*

*Lesson Fourteen / 275*
14.3. Expressions for Going and Coming

Observe the following examples.

16. 지하철로 가요
   goes by subway, goes on a subway

17. 기차로 왔어요
   came by train, came on the train

18. 택시로 학교에 가요
   goes by taxi to school

The particle (으)로 with, by (means of) is used with vehicles when the verb is 가요 goes or 왔어요 comes. On the other hand, the verb 타요 gets on (a vehicle, a horse), rides, takes a direct object.

19. 기차를 타요
   rides on a train

20. 기차를 타고 오지 않아요
   doesn't come (riding) on the train

The pattern for these constructions with 타- is:

[destination] plus vehicle + ~을(를) 타고 plus [destination] plus go/come

That is, the destination can come either before or after the vehicle plus (을~을) plus 타고.

For example:

21. 택시를 타고 학교에 가요
   rides/takes a taxi to school

22. 쇼핑하러 지하철을 타고 갈수마다
   rode the subway to go shopping

The 타- verb 결어요 (결다) walks resembles 타요 rides in that it is not used alone in sentences implying purposeful direction. It, too, joins in phrases with 가요 goes or 왔어요 comes, but in its infinitive (결어) form.

Lesson Fourteen / 276
14.4. Verbs: Future-Presumptives in -겠-

14.4.1. How to Attach -겠-

This lesson contains a number of verbs in the FUTURE-PRESUMPTIVE form (called future for short, but see the explanations below). The marker for the future is -겠-. It is a one-shape ending. Here are some examples showing how this form attaches to bases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Future Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기타리-</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>기타리겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>보겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드- 둘</td>
<td>lift; cost</td>
<td>들겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write; use</td>
<td>쓰겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르-</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>부르겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>받겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for; find</td>
<td>찾겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빗-</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>빗겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>stay, have</td>
<td>입겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닦-</td>
<td>polish</td>
<td>닦겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be lacking</td>
<td>없겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>임-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>임겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>져서-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>져서겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>wear (shoes)</td>
<td>신겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앞-</td>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>앞겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>be much/many</td>
<td>많겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>누워서 (w- 둨다)</td>
<td>lie down</td>
<td>누워서겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들- (들- 둨다)</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>들겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To make honorific future forms, you simply add -签署了 to the honorific base.

가-  
go  
반-  
get  

A future base, like any base, is not a complete word by itself: it needs an ending. To make it Polite Style, you add -이요.

가-  
go  
반-  
get  

For long negatives in the future, you use a plain -지 form and make the auxiliary 않-

가-  
go  
반-  
get  

As usual, the -지 form merely says what action is performed, while the negative word 않-
carries the other meanings of the phrase. Also, as usual, either word (or both) may be honorific if the phrase refers to someone esteemed.

가-  
go  

14.4.2. Meaning and Usage of -签署了

Although most textbooks of Korean refer to the -签署了 form as a future, when it comes to meaning, the -签署了 form has a variety of corresponding English expressions, none of which really corresponds fully to an English future.

The meanings of签署了 can be grouped into two: Inferential I'll bet and Intentional I shall.
a. Inferential -겠-: *I'll bet*

Inferential -겠- usually occurs with verbs in the second- and third-person (you, he, she, it, they). The verb marked with -겠- carries the following sorts of connotations: *I'll bet that*, *I would wager that*, *I have good reasons to infer that*, *Judging by my evidence, it is highly likely that*.

25. 내일은 덥겠어요.

*Tomorrow will likely be hot.* [I know, because I always get a funny twitch in my elbow the day before it turns hot.]

26. 오 후에 비가 오겠습니다.

*It is going to rain in the afternoon.* [I've just seen the weather map.]

27. 그 영화는 재미 있겠어요.

*I'll bet that film is probably interesting.* [I saw lots of people standing in line for it downtown the other day.]

28. 아프겠어요.

*Ooh, that must hurt.* [you have just seen somebody trip and fall prostrate onto the pavement]

29. 어제 기분이 평상히 좋았겠습니까.

*You must have been in a super mood yesterday.* [since you just heard that your son was accepted at Seoul National University]

30. 부산에 밀려 도착했겠어요.

*She must already have arrived in Pusan.* [I know, because her train was due to arrive there at 5:30 PM, and it is now past 6:00 P.M.]

b. Intentional -겠-: *I have a firm intention to; Do you intend to?*

Intentional -겠- usually occurs in first-person statements and second-person questions. In statements, it has the effect of a strong declaration of intent, and often has a somewhat ceremonial touch, as if one were making a solemn pronouncement. In questions, it is a polite way of getting somebody to do something.

31. 인제 시험을 시작하겠습니다.

*I'm going to start the exam now.* [teacher standing in front of the examination hall]

32. 다방 앞에서 기다리겠습니다.

*I'll wait for you in front of the tabang.*

33. 내일 모레 다시 오겠습니다.

*I'll come again the day after tomorrow.*

Lesson Fourteen / 279
34. 그러면, 제가 합시다.
   In that case, I shall do it.

35. A. 월 드시겠습니까?
   Would you like something to drink?

   B. 네, 커피 한잔 주십시오.
   Yes, a cup of coffee, please.

36. A. 여기 앉으시겠어요?
   Why don't you sit here?

   B. 네, 감사합니다.
   Yes, thank you.

37. 내일 다시 찾아오겠습니다.
   I'll come again tomorrow.

Here are some more examples with verbs in -겠-.

38. 편지는 쓰겠지만, 전화는 안 하겠습니다.
   I'll write a letter, but I won't telephone.

39. 이 책이 서점에 아직도 있겠지요?
   This book is still probably at the bookshop, right?

40. 일을 하겠지만, 돈은 안 받겠습니다.
   I'll do the job, but I won't accept [Literally: receive] any money (for it).

41. 이 자료를 김 선생님께 드리겠어요?
   Will you give (would you mind giving) these materials to Mr. Kim?

42. 사장님은 지금쯤 비행기를 타셨겠어요.
   The company president must be on the plane by now.

43. 어머니도 가끔 영화관을 가고 싶으시겠어요.
   I imagine Mother must sometimes want to go see movies too.

44. 밖이 춥겠어요.
   It must be cold outside.

45. 내일 동대문 시장에 같이 가지 않겠습니다?
   How about going to Tongdaemun Market tomorrow?

46. 우리 집에 놀리 오지 않으시겠습니까?
   How about coming round to our place to visit?

As you have just seen, there is a PAST-FUTURE verb form which is made by attaching the future marker -겠- to the past base of any verb (either the plain past base or the honorific past base) like this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past-Future Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>갔-</td>
<td>갔겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가시-</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>가셨-</td>
<td>가셨겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td></td>
<td>받았-</td>
<td>받았겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받으시-</td>
<td></td>
<td>받으셨-</td>
<td>받으셨겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some examples in full sentences.

47. 아마 빌씩 했겠어요.
   They have probably (will have) already done it.

48. 돈이 많이 들었겠어요.
   It must have cost a lot.

49. 머리가 굉장히 아팠겠어요.
   You must have had a really bad headache.

The past marker gives to the form the same meaning as the English auxiliary verb has or have, while the future marker gives it the meaning of probably.

When you are listening to Korean, your only clue to the difference between a future verb form and a past-future verb form is very small. Sometimes only the difference between - and -.

가겠어요 [가게써요] will go
갔겠어요 [간께서요 → 가께서요] will have gone, must have gone

Another problem in fine distinctions comes in past-past verb forms, which are made by attaching the past tense marker -(으)었- to the past base of any verb, either honorific or plain, forming in effect a double past base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain Base</th>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>Past-Past Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하-</td>
<td>했-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>하시-</td>
<td>하셨-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>하셨엇-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fourteen / 281
The form is made complete by adding an appropriate ending. The past-past, then, is distinguished from the past by being longer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past-past</td>
<td>did (earlier)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Before a one-shape ending, this is a little more difficult to detect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>did, but</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past-past</td>
<td>did (earlier), but</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are some examples of the past-past.

50. 나는 경제학을 공부했어요. 그런데 정치학으로 바꿨어요.
    *I used to study Economics, but I changed to Political Science.*

51. A. 어디 갔었어요?
    *Where have you been?*

   B. 친구를 만나러 시내에 갔었어요.
    *I went downtown to meet a friend.*

52. 나도 거기 한 번 갔었어요.
    *I've been there once, too.*

53. 그 분이 우리 학교에 한 번 오셨어요.
    *He came to our school once.*

These forms do not correspond to any single English word. In general, they mean about the same thing as regular past-tense forms, except that they have the feeling of a more definitely completed action or a comparatively remote past action.

There is one area of meaning where a real difference exists: if an action has come full circle, you use the past-past. For a similar action which has not yet come full circle, you use the plain past. This distinction is common in verbs meaning *come* and *go* and is illustrated by the sentences just above. Compare these sentences.

54. 만호 씨는 서울에 왔어요.
    *Manho came to Seoul [and is still here].*

55. 만호 씨는 서울에 한 번 왔었어요.
    *Manho came to Seoul once [but is no longer here].*

Lesson Fourteen / 282

Come and go in the past and past-past, respectively.

14.6. Immediate Past-Tense Forms

The dialogue in the sequel volume.

유니스

전영이 엽마

The IMMEDIATE PAST-TENSE FORMS are almost always found in the past tense and promise-like imperatives within the direction of the immediate past, or carried through.

The -(으)ㄴ/는간에 is used to express the past tense.

The -았/었/遑간에 is used to express the past tense in the sequel volume.

56. A: (주刊) 

   B: 네, 갑니다.
    *Let me know.

57. A (on the phone)
    *Would you like to go out with me tonight?*

   B: 네, 갑니다.
    *I'll come.*

58. A: 이 자료를 볼 수 있나요?
    *Pleas*

   B: 네, 가능해요.
    *Sure.*
Come and go in the past-past may be literally translated as *come and return* and *go and come back*, respectively. In the past they mean *(came and)* is here and *(went and)* is gone, respectively.

### 14.6. Immediate Futures in -(으)ㄹ꺼예요

The dialogue in this lesson illustrates the next pattern.

유니스 | 잠시만요. 화장실에 갈달래요.  
*Do you mind waiting a minute? I'll just pop into the bathroom.*

진영이 엄마 | 그래요. 엘리베이터 앞에서 기다리고 있으면요.  
*Sure. I'll be waiting in front of the elevator.*

The IMMEDIATE FUTURE in -(으)ㄹ꺼예요 attaches to processive plain bases only, is almost always first-person (I or we), and conveys to the hearer a reassuring, usually beneficial, and promise-like future which is immediate in the sense that the action to be performed is within the direct control of the speaker who has every intention of seeing that the action is carried through.

The -(으)ㄹ of this ending is the same prospective modifier which goes into suggestions in -(으)ㄹ가요 and the probable future in -(으)ㄹ거예요. You will learn more about it in the sequel volume to this course.

56. A: (Struggling with a heavy bag)  
B: 내가 들고 있注明来源.  
*Let me hold it for you. or Here, I’ll hold it for you.*

57. A (on the phone): 오늘 올래요?  
*Would you like to come over today?*

B: 내일 갈꺼요.  
*I’ll come [go] tomorrow.*

58. A: 이 숙제를 끝내까지 마치세요.  
*Please finish this homework by the day after tomorrow.*

B: 네, 할꺼예요.  
*Sure, I will.*
£-£-*1
m-
£-£-*1
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
£-
59. Ch’olmin must have arrived already.

This usage is equivalent to, but increasingly more common than, the past-future 왔었어요.

**IMMEDIATE FUTURE**

The immediate future is used only on plain processive bases. It is always first person (I, we), and the action referred to is usually beneficial to the hearer.

60. Let me pay for lunch or Why don’t I pay for lunch.

**FUTURE-PRESUMPTIVE BASE**

Although is is often called a future in most textbooks, the future-presumptive is more of:

a) a matter-of-fact statement of personal intention in first-person declaratives and second-person questions

b) a supposition in third-person sentences.

Here are some example sentences.

61. A. Will you (do you intend to) come tomorrow?
   
   B. Yes, I will (do).

62. A. Do you suppose that book will be in the library?
   
   B. Sure (I’ll bet it would be).

63. (a little child falls on his face on the pavement)
   
   Ooh, that must hurt! (ignore the 다 for now; you will learn it in the sequel volume)

On past bases, the future-presumptive -겠- has only the meaning of supposition (must have; I’ll bet that).
In order to understand the various Korean futures fully, it may be helpful to have a careful look at the meanings of certain English words used for future-like purposes.

a. Will, is going to

Simple future action is expressed in English by will and is going to. These have slightly different connotations, but both are covered by the Korean futures.

- 읽겠어요 (I will read, I am going to read)
  (strong statement of intention)

- 읽을거예요 (will read, am/is going to read)
  (probable future; less certain than 읽겠어요)

- 읽을께요 (I'll read it, I promise)
  (more immediate, with a hint of promise, assurance, or even reassurance)

b. Would

Korean often prefers to construe verbs of knowing in the future-presumptive: one often hears 알겠어요 I know or I understand where one would expect 알아요. The present forms are also used, but the 알겠어요 form has a suggestion of tentativeness (English wouldn't know) and perhaps for that reason it seems more polite, especially in second-person questions: 아시겠어요 Do you know? or Do you understand? (English Would you happen to know?)

c. Is willing to, wants to

In both English and Korean, a future verb form may mean will in the sense is willing to or wants to [do so-and-so]. In this sense, one usually uses 것-

65. 하보하시겠어요?
Would you like to take a walk?
or Are you willing to take a walk? or Will you take a walk? or Are you going to take a walk?

Sometimes a verb in this form is made negative, and the result is a polite suggestion. We had an example of this in Dialogue One of this lesson.

66. 같이 가시겠어요?
Wouldn't you like to go with me?

Lesson Fourteen / 286
You cannot make questions or suggestions like this with immediate futures in -(으)른가요, or probable futures in -(으)꺼어요. Thus, the probable future form of sentences (65) and (66) above is just a matter-of-fact question.

67. 산보하실거리가요?
   Are you going to take a walk?

68. 같이 가지 않으실거리가요?
   You're not going to go with us?

d. *Probably, must* (Conjecture)
The words *probably* and *must* are alike in adding the same flavor to English sentences in a certain usage. In this connection, it is necessary first to distinguish between the two kinds of English *must*. One *must* expresses obligation:

   I simply must get my work finished.

This obligational *must* is expressed by the Korean construction -어봐 해요, a pattern introduced in the sequel volume to this course.

The other *must* expresses probability or likelihood.

   That girl with Bill must be his fiancée.
   It's raining—it must be getting cooler.

It is this probability kind of *must* which is sometimes conveyed by both the Korean -겠- and -(으)르러어요 forms. [In British English, the future is sometimes used in this Korean way.] In sentences with a future form, there often appears the adverb 아마 or 아마도, which means *probably* or *likely* and strengthens the connotation of the future verb form.

14.7.3. A Reminder about First-, Second- and Third-Person with -겠-

In first-person statements, the meaning will most frequently be on the lines of uses (a) will, *is going to* and (b) would above. In second-person questions, the meaning will usually be along the lines of (b) would or (c) is willing, wants to. However, when the sentence is in the third-person, the meaning will more commonly correspond to usage (d) *probably, must*. This is because Korean does not readily allow its speakers to express the intentions of others with any certainty. When speakers want to refer to what others will do, they are more likely to use the probable future with -(으)르러어요. The difference is that -(으)르러어요 expresses a definite future intention or a probable/likely present, while -(으)르러어요 represents a greater degree of uncertainty.
14.8. Suppositives in -지요

This lesson offers a number of sentences ending in -지요. The one-shape SUPPOSITORY ending -지요 carries the basic meaning supposedly and can attach to any base: plain 하지요, past 하지요, future-presumptive 하겠지요. Notice how it combines with probable futures in -(으)르거예요: 할거지요.

Suppositive verb forms in -지요 correspond to a number of English meanings, depending on whether they occur in statements, yes-no questions, question-word questions, or suggestions and imperatives.

In statements, the basic meaning of -지요 is I suppose. In this usage, the -지요 particularly compatible with -겠-. In a particularly emphatic or assertive intonation (e.g., in response to a dumb question), -지요 means something like Of course! or You bet!

69. 아마 언니가 하겠지요.
I suppose my big sister will probably do it.

70. A. 그 사람이 한국 사람이에요?
Is that person Korean?

B. 물론이지요!
Of course she is!

71. 교수님이 주무시겠지요.
I suppose Professor is sleeping.

In yes-no questions (with the rising intonation of English yes-or-no questions, such as Is it raining? or Are you coming with me?), -지요 makes tag-questions with the effect of Isn't that right? Isn't that so? Right? N'est-ce pas? Nicht wahr? Eh?

72. 미국에서 돌아왔지요?
She came back from America, didn't she?

73. 값이 비싸지지요?
I suppose the price is expensive? or It's pricey, isn't it?

74. 꽃을 좋아하시지요?
I imagine you like flowers, don't you?

Lesson Fourteen /288
75. 김 선생님 부인이시지요? (on the telephone) 
   *It's Mrs. Kim, isn't it?*

76. 갑지요?
   *He's gone, hasn't he?*

In question-word questions, -지요 carries the nuance of *I wonder* or *What, where, why—did you say it is/was?*

77. 이것은 얼마지요?
   *How much is this (I wonder)? or How much did you say this was? or How much is this again?*

78. 내 안경 어디 갔지요?
   *Now where have my glasses gone (I wonder)?*

Korean suppositives in -지요 can also convey mild or casual suggestions or commands with the force of *how about?* or *Why don't you?* In the command usage, the -지요 is often accompanied by the honorific, giving -(으)시지요.

79. 언제 라디오를 좀 들지요.
   *How about [us] listening to the radio now?*

80. 자, 드시지요.
   *Well then, [why don't you] drink up.*

81. 여기 앉으시지요.
   *Please sit here!*

82. 제가 (돈을) 내지요!
   *I'll pay! or Why don't I pay? or Let me pay!*

**주의!**

You usually do not answer questions about yourself with -지요; instead, use the regular Polite Style. In pronouncing the ending -지요, be careful not to pronounce it too slowly; these two short syllables are often run together as -조.
14.9. Synopsis: Compatibility of -겠- with Endings Previously Learned

The ending -겠- can combine with the following endings from previous lessons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ending</th>
<th>Ending with -겠-</th>
<th>Example with 하-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(으)시-</td>
<td>-(으)시겠-</td>
<td>하시겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)비나다</td>
<td>-(으)비나겠-</td>
<td>하비나겠어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)비나까?</td>
<td>-(으)비나까?</td>
<td>하비나까?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)지만</td>
<td>-(으)지만</td>
<td>하지만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)같아요</td>
<td>-(으)같아요</td>
<td>하같아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)니까</td>
<td>-(으)니까</td>
<td>하니까</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)지요</td>
<td>-(으)지요</td>
<td>하지요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises

Exercise 1: Future-Presumptives in -겠-

Each of the following sentences means *If you do something*. Make each one mean *I will do something or will you do something?* Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be *나는 우체국까지 가겠어요. I will go to the post office.*

1. 나는 우체국까지 가요.
2. 나는 서울대학교에서 공부해요.
3. 선생님은 무엇을 하세요?
4. 내일까지 집에 돌아가요.
5. 지하철을 타고 시내에 가요.
6. 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르치요.
7. 잠실 값을 내가 내요.
8. 김 선생님이 자동차를 파세요?
9. 다방 앞에서 기타려요.
10. 나는 이번 가을에 일본에 가요.

Lesson Fourteen / 290

Exercise 2

Each of the following sentences is in the suppositive -지오. Put the following sentences in the suppositive-

1. 선생님어디에 가요?
2. 복동 씨는 어떻게 가요?
3. 할머님은 어디에 가요?
4. 언니는 어디에 가요?
5. 일본에 갈 거예요?
6. 그 사람이 아닙니다.
7. 동생 옷 갖Ｇ요.
8. 조금 더 먹어요.
9. 그 사람과 동갑이에요.
10. 화장실에 갈 거예요.
11. 머리가 아프다.

Exercise 3

Put the following sentences in the suppositive-

1. A. You.
   B. Yes, I do.
2. A. There.
   B. Fine.
3. A. I want to go.
   B. I don’t want to.
4. The weather.
   B. It’s windy.
5. A. How are you?
   B. I hear.
6. It snows.
7. A. Did you eat?
   B. No!
8. A. Will you walk?
   B. Of course.
9. I guess.
10. I have.
Exercise 2: Suppositives in -지요

Each of the following sentences is in the polite style in -어요. Change each one to the suppositive -지요. Then translate the sentence. For example, the first will be 선생님이 매일 술값을 내지 요. Our teacher pays for drinks every day, you know.

1. 선생님이 매일 술값을 내요.
2. 북동 씨의 할아버지세이운 연세가 많으세요?
3. 할머님은 병에 입혀 삼년 전에 돌아가셨어요.
4. 언니는 우리와 같이 사지 않아요.
5. 일본에 돌아가고 싶어요?
6. 그 사람을 지금 위고 있겠어요.
7. 동생 옷이 예쁘요.
8. 조금 더 걸어가요.
9. 그 사람을 매일 만나요.
10. 화장실에 내 우산이 없었어요?
11. 미리가 아파요?

Exercise 3: English to Korean Translation

Put the following sentences into Korean (you need not translate literally).

1. A. You like concerts, don't you?
   B. Yes; I don't like films, but I like concerts.
2. A. Then how about going to a concert with me tonight?
   B. Fine.
3. A. I wonder what time it is.
   B. I don't know.
4. The weather is nice today, isn't it? Suppose we take a walk in the park.
5. A. How did you learn that song?
   B. I heard it on the radio.
6. It snowed a lot last night, didn't it?
7. A. Did you buy that CD at the bookshop?
   B. No! They don't sell CDs at the bookshop!
8. A. Will the train arrive by three o'clock, I wonder?
   B. Of course it will!
9. I guess he's probably watching TV, right?
10. I have [as many as] four brothers (two ways).

Lesson Fourteen /291
11. Mr. Kim appeared [Literally: came out] on the TV, didn't he?
12. Didn't you live in Seoul last year?
13. I'll come by car [immediate future].
14. A. I'll bet it will cost about $15.
   B. It costs (as much as) $15?
15. He has probably already written the letter, don't you think?
16. He went to Korea (and is still there).
17. That old man (grandfather) must already have passed away, don't you think?
18. I'll wait here for you a moment [immediate future].
19. We came up in the elevator.
20. Shall we meet at Great East Gate?
21. A. Did you have any money in your bag?
   B. Yes, but all I have is 20,000 won.
22. The day before yesterday I did lots of work, but I wasn't paid [Literally: couldn't get
   any money].

Exercise 4: Practice with -겠지요

Each of the following sentences means someone does/is something. Make each one mean
(I'll bet) someone probably does/is something. Then translate the sentence. For example, the
first will be 장 선생님은 공부하고 계시겠지요. Mr. Chang is probably/must be studying.

1. 장 선생님은 공부하고 계세요.
2. 밥이 준비하세요.
3. 오빠가 기분이 좋네요.
4. 학생들이 일찍 학교에 왔어요.
5. 그 아이가 어려요.
6. 부모님이 집으로 세요.
7. 그 상점은 굉장히 비싸요.
8. 영화관은 너무 멀어요.
9. 사람이 어려워요.
10. 선생님의 토끼는 꽤 좋네요.
11. 선생님의 딸님이 예뻐요.
12. 내일 아침부터 눈이 와요.

Exercise 5

Put the following sentences into Korean.

1. A. 진호는 한국에 갔어요.
   B. 진호가 한국에 갔어요.
2. A. 지훈은 한국에 가요.
   B. 지훈이 한국에 가요.
3. A. 수진은 한국에 갔어요.
   B. 수진이 한국에 갔어요.
4. A. 예쁜가요?
   B. 예뻐요.
5. A. 진호는 한국에 갔어요.
   B. 진호가 한국에 갔어요.
6. A. 남이 한국에 가요.
   B. 남이 한국에 가요.
7. A. 불고기를 좋아해요.
   B. 불고기의 맛에 좋아해요.
Exercise 5: only

Change the following Korean 만 sentences to the pattern with 밖에 plus negative.

1. 저희 학교에는 여자는 많지만, 남자는 한 명만 있어요.
2. 지금은 방학이에요. 학교에는 학생 몇 명만 있어요.
3. 어제 두 사람만 왔습니다.
4. 맥주 몇병 샀어요?
   한 병만 샀어요.
5. 돈 얼마나 있으세요?
   조금만 있어요.
6. 어제 밤에는 네 시간만 잔어요. 그래서 굉장히 피곤하지요.
7. 지난 달에는 영화까지 두 번만 갔어요.
8. 크리스마스에는 선물을 많이 받으셨어요?
   아니오, 몇 개만 받았어요.
9. 이건 할리 합시다. 시간이 조금만 있어요.
10. 한국말을 잘 하세요?
    아니오, 한 키바만 배웠어요.

Exercise 6: Korean-to-English Translation

Put the following sentences into English (you need not translate literally).

1. A. 진호 씨, 답해 앤 피워요?
   B. 진호 씨, 답해 앤 피워요.
2. A. 지난 파티에 누구 누구 왔었죠?
   B. 우리 기숙사 친구들이랑 교회 친구들도 왔었죠.
3. A. 수진 씨는 요즘 수영을 빼우려 수영장에 다녀요.
   B. 그래요? 나도 전에 거기에 다녀왔어요.
4. A. 에릭 씨는 한국말 잘 하지요?
   B. 네, 일본 전에는 하나도 못했었지만, 이제 아주 잘 해요.
5. A. 진호 씨 요즘도 그 여자와 데이트하세요?
   B. 아니오, 한 달 전까지는 자주 만났었지만, 이제는 다른 여자하고 데이트를 하고 있어요.
6. A. 날씨가 엄지요?
   B. 네, 정말 더워요.
7. A. 불교기를 좋아하시지요?
   B. 네, 몇 인분 시킬까요?

Lesson Fourteen / 293
8. A. 이 구두가 나한테 너무 커요.  
   B. 그럼 나한테 주세요. 내가 신을께요.
9. A. 양복으로 갈아입으러요?  
   B. 네, 빨리 갈아입으세요.
10. A. 인제 술 몇 잔어요?  
    B. 네, 담배도 몇 잔어요.

Review

15.1.1. Verbs

Any Korean verb must end with a morph, a base is not complete. The ending must be english to split the discipline.

15.1.1.1. Verbs

Each verb has an infinitive of a verb. Each verb with vowels, or a verb, add an -을- before the infinitive of a verb. 
which can be classified according to the shapes, however, nonetheless from square brackets. 
Here is a comparison of the following, all the others of...
15.1. Verb Forms: Summary.

Any Korean verb form used in a Korean sentence has two parts to it: a base and an ending. A base is not complete, ready for use, until it is finished off with an ending. Obviously, an ending must be attached to something before it can be put into a sentence (just as you don't use the English endings "ing" or "ed" in midair). In summarizing verb forms, then, it is convenient to split the discussion into the two large categories: bases and endings.

15.1.1. Verb Bases

Each verb has a simple base that is the source of all its changes. Some simple bases end with vowels, others with consonants. Some of the vowel-base verbs are L-extending: they add an -ә- before certain markers and endings. A few of the vowel-base verbs end in -әәә- which changes to -әәәә- before adding the infinitive ending -어 -아. The infinitive of a verb is its base plus an infinitive ending. The infinitive ending has so many shapes, however, that it is perhaps harder to learn rules for adding the ending than it is to memorize the form for each verb.

Here is a comprehensive list of all the verb bases that have appeared so far in these lessons, classified according to type (vowel base, consonant base). Alternative, nonstandard, but nonetheless frequently heard pronunciations for certain infinitive forms are recorded in square brackets next to the standard infinitive. Subsequent lists in this section are representative of the following complete list in that they contain a base of each type to act as a pattern for all the others of that type.

Lesson Fifteen /295
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔다오-</td>
<td>go [and come back]</td>
<td>갔다와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갔다주-</td>
<td>bring</td>
<td>갔다주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸리-</td>
<td>take [time]; catch [cold]</td>
<td>걸려</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치-</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>가르치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어가-</td>
<td>go on foot</td>
<td>걸어가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걸어오-</td>
<td>come on foot</td>
<td>걸어와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다리-</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>기다리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끝나-</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>끝나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끝내-</td>
<td>finish it</td>
<td>끝내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기-</td>
<td>put on [gloves]; wear [lenses]</td>
<td>겨</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나가-</td>
<td>go out; attend [church]</td>
<td>나가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>난봐-</td>
<td>be bad</td>
<td>난봐 [나봐]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나오-</td>
<td>come out</td>
<td>나오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내-</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려가-</td>
<td>go down</td>
<td>내려가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내려오-</td>
<td>come down</td>
<td>내려와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>내리-</td>
<td>descend; get off</td>
<td>내리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다니-</td>
<td>attend, go on a regular basis</td>
<td>다니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다치-</td>
<td>get hurt, injure oneself</td>
<td>다치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가-</td>
<td>go back, return</td>
<td>돌아가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가시-</td>
<td>die (honorific)</td>
<td>돌아가시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도와주-</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>도와줘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>되-</td>
<td>become; be OK</td>
<td>되여 ~ 되</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드리-</td>
<td>give [to someone esteemed]</td>
<td>드려</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>드시-</td>
<td>eat, drink (honorific)</td>
<td>드시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어가-</td>
<td>go in, enter</td>
<td>들어가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들어오-</td>
<td>come in, enter</td>
<td>들어와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떠나-</td>
<td>leave, depart</td>
<td>떠나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마시-</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>마시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마치-</td>
<td>finish [it]</td>
<td>마치</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 296
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>메-</td>
<td>tie, wear a tie</td>
<td>메</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁘-</td>
<td>be busy</td>
<td>바쁘 [바뻐]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배워</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>버리-</td>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>버리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at, see</td>
<td>보</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보내-</td>
<td>spend (time); send</td>
<td>보내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부처-</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>부처</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비싸-</td>
<td>be expensive</td>
<td>비싸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사-</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>쉬어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서기-</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쌓-</td>
<td>be inexpensive</td>
<td>쌓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손아지-</td>
<td>pour [rain]</td>
<td>손아지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰-</td>
<td>write; wear [on head]; use</td>
<td>쓰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아프-</td>
<td>it hurts</td>
<td>아파 [아픔]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어리-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>어리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예뻐-</td>
<td>be cute, lovable</td>
<td>예뻐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라가-</td>
<td>go up</td>
<td>올라가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라오-</td>
<td>come up</td>
<td>올라오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>be [copula]</td>
<td>-이어 ~여</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어나-</td>
<td>get up</td>
<td>일어나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>go to bed; sleep</td>
<td>자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡수시-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>잡수시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주-</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>주</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주무시-</td>
<td>sleep (honorific)</td>
<td>주무시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>추-</td>
<td>dance</td>
<td>추</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>치-</td>
<td>beat, strike; play [golf]</td>
<td>치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>크-</td>
<td>be large</td>
<td>크</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타-</td>
<td>ride; put in [e.g., sugar]</td>
<td>타</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타고가-</td>
<td>go [riding in]</td>
<td>타고가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>타고오-</td>
<td>come [riding in]</td>
<td>타고오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>태어나-</td>
<td>be born</td>
<td>태어나</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 297
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>피-</td>
<td>bloom, blossom</td>
<td>피</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>피우-</td>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>해</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**L-doubling vowel-base verbs**

| 띄어- | be different | 달라 [달러] |
| 모르- | don't know or understand | 물라 |
| 부르- | sing (a song); be full | 불리 |
| 빠르- | be fast | 올라 [올라] |

**L-extending vowel-base verbs**

| 거-르- | make [a phonecall] | 걸어 |
| 노-르- | have fun, play | 돌아 |
| 드-르- | cost (money); lift, hold | 밀어 |
| 머-르- | be far, distant | 물어 |
| 무-르- | bite | 물어 |
| 사-르- | live | 살아 [살아] |
| 아-르- | know, understand | 알아 [알아] |
| 여-르- | open it | 열어 |
| [저] 마-르- | avoid; don't! | 말아 [말아] |
| 파-르- | sell | 팔아 [팔아] |
| 두-르- | undo it; solve it | 풀어 |

**Consonant-base verbs**

| 잘- | be the same/like | 같아 [같애] |
| 팬할- | OK, all right | 팬할아 [팬할아] |
| 갓- | cut, sharpen | 깎아 [ 깎어] |
| 꼭- | hang up; quit [e.g., smoking] | 꽂어 |
| 넣- | put in, insert | 넣어 |
| 놓- | put, place | 놓아 |
| 늦- | be late | 늦어 |
| 닦- | shine, polish | 닦아 [닮어] |

---

Lesson Fifteen / 298
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it</td>
<td>닫아 [닫어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>많-</td>
<td>be much/many</td>
<td>많아 [많이]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>맛-</td>
<td>be right, correct</td>
<td>맛아 [맛이]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹-</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>먹어 [먹어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>receive, get</td>
<td>받아 [받아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>빨-</td>
<td>remove, take off</td>
<td>빨어 [빨래]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싶-</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>싶어 [싶어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싶-</td>
<td>want to</td>
<td>싶어 [싶어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앗-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앗아 [앗아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앗-</td>
<td>doesn't, isn't</td>
<td>앗아 [앗아]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>be lacking</td>
<td>없어 [없어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>읽-</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽어 [읽어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입어 [입어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있-</td>
<td>exist; stay; have</td>
<td>있어 [있어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잊어먹-</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>잊어먹어 [잊어먹어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>be small</td>
<td>작아 [작이]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적-</td>
<td>be little/few</td>
<td>적이 [적이]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊어 [젊어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋아 [좋이]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>죽어 [죽어]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>찾-</td>
<td>look for, find; get [money]</td>
<td>찾아 [찾아]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### W Verbs

| 가까 w- | be near(by)              | 가까워 [가까워]  |
| 가벼 w- | be light                 | 가벼워 [가벼워] |
| 고마 w- | be thankful              | 고마워 [고마워]  |
| 구 w-    | broil                    | 구워 [구워]      |
| 누 w-    | lie down                 | 누워 [누워]     |
| 더 w-    | be hot, warm             | 더워 [더워]     |
| 매 w-    | be hot, spicy            | 매워 [매워]     |
| 무거 w-  | be heavy                 | 무거워 [무거워]  |
| 쉬 w-    | be easy                  | 쉬워 [쉬워]     |
| 어려 w-  | be difficult             | 어려워 [어려워] |
| 줄거 w-  | be enjoyable, pleasant   | 줄거워 [줄거워]  |
The plain base of a verb, then, is the verb reduced to its minimum form: nothing can easily be taken away from the simple base, because it has only one part. But a variety of things can be added to it, still without making it a complete verb form—without putting on an ending. A simple base with further base-forming things attached to it is a complex base. One kind of complex base is an honorific base—the plain base plus the honorific marker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE</th>
<th>GLOSS</th>
<th>HONORIFIC BASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>접-</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>접으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가다리-</td>
<td>wait for</td>
<td>가다리시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close</td>
<td>닫으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>더우시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>만나-</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>모르-</td>
<td>do not know</td>
<td>모르시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우-</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td>배우시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벗-</td>
<td>remove</td>
<td>벗으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>보-</td>
<td>look at</td>
<td>보시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서-</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>서시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신-</td>
<td>wear [on feet]</td>
<td>신으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아-</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>아시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>앉-</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>앉으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없-</td>
<td>(there) isn't</td>
<td>없으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>입으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젊-</td>
<td>be young</td>
<td>젊으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋-</td>
<td>be good</td>
<td>좋으시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하-</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>하시-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nearly every Korean verb has an ending, when we speak about something in two varieties: ourselves or you.

Here are the other future tense forms shown with its infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PAST EL</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>PAST-SOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하고</td>
<td>하고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>하-</td>
<td>하다</td>
<td>하다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However many ways a verb can form in the other tense, another and without one ending.

15.1.2. Verbs

Endings added at the end of a sentence. Any form of a verb completes a sentence.
Nearly every Korean verb form is subject to the dichotomy of plain and honorific, so that when we speak of any form of a verb, we should keep in mind the fact that each form comes in two varieties: (1) the general variety; and, (2) the variety that we must not use for ourselves or younger members of our family.

Here are the other kinds of complex bases you have learned, illustrated by 하- do, first shown with its infinitives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Sample</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INFINITIVES</td>
<td>(base plus infinitive ending)</td>
<td>하서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST BASES</td>
<td>(infinitive plus the past marker - mão-)</td>
<td>하셨-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE BASES</td>
<td>(base plus the future-presumptive marker -겠-)</td>
<td>하시겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST-PAST BASES</td>
<td>(past base plus the past marker -었-)</td>
<td>하셨었-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST-FUTURE BASES</td>
<td>(past base plus future-presumptive marker -겠-)</td>
<td>하셨겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However many ingredients may go into them, all complex bases share this feature with one another and with simple bases: none are complete until they are finished off with an ending.

15.1.2. Verb Endings

Endings added to bases make the verb form complete. In addition to this function, they often perform another job at the same time: they tell whether or not you have come to the end of a sentence.

Any form of a verb ends a clause in Korean. Some clauses are final: the verb at the end completes a sentence. Some are nonfinal: the verb form does not complete a sentence. In this category are the infinitive -여 -아, the suppositive -치, the -고 form, the as-soon-as form in -자 마자, and the sequential -(으)니 (가) ending. (In the Intimate Style, which you will learn in the sequel volume to this course, the infinitive and the suppositive can end a sentence.)
The most important final endings you have learned so far are these.

a. the Polite Style ending -어요 which consists of the infinitive -어요 etc.) plus
   the polite particle 요.

b. the Formal Style endings in -(으)니다 (declaratives), -(으)니까
   (questions), -(으)니가 (suggestions), and -(으)십시오 (commands)

The Polite Style ending typically finishes a sentence, whether it is a present-tense form
(attached to a base), a past-tense form (attached to a past base), or a future-presumptive
form (attached to a future base).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain</th>
<th>Honorific</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>해요</td>
<td>하세요 [someone esteemed] does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>했어요</td>
<td>하셨어요 [someone esteemed] did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하겠습니다</td>
<td>하실겠습니다 [someone esteemed] will do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you use this ending at the end of your sentence, it implies that you are on informal,
though dignified, terms with the person to whom you are talking.

One-shape Endings and Two-shape Endings

Endings are either one-shape endings or two-shape endings. One-shape endings are much
the same, regardless whether they are attached to a vowel base or a consonant base. Two-shape
endings have one shape which attaches to vowel bases and another which attaches to
consonant bases. For purposes of attaching endings, the group of vowel bases includes not
only simple bases (like 가-, 사-, 가다리-, 밧-) but also all honorific bases since each ends
in -(으)시- regardless of the plain base on which it is built.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Honorific base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받으시-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly, all past bases and future bases are consonant bases, regardless of what sort of
base you began with.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Past base</th>
<th>Future base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가-</td>
<td>가(시)씨-</td>
<td>가(시)겠-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>받-</td>
<td>받(으시)냈-</td>
<td>받(으시)겠-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here are all the one-shape or two-shape.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ONE-SHAPED ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past markers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppositive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppositional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future-presumptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhetoric. retort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As soon as

One special type of ending -(으)시- is the extended base -(으)시-

Several peculiar features are -(으)- is omitted, and so does -(으)-

1. The base 장수-
Here are all the endings you have learned, grouped according to whether they are one-shape or two-shape.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ONE-SHAPE ENDINGS</th>
<th>TWO-SHAPE ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past marker -M-</td>
<td>honorific -시- -오시-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspactive -지</td>
<td>honorific polite -세요 -오세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suppositive -지요</td>
<td>sequential -니(가) -오니(가)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but -지안</td>
<td>purposive -리 -으리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future-presumptive -겠</td>
<td>formal decl. -니 니다 -습니 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhetor. retort -잡아요</td>
<td>formal imper. -십시오 -오십시오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고-form -고 (싶-. 있-)</td>
<td>formal propos. -시다 -읍시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictionary form -다</td>
<td>formal interrog. -니 까 -습니까</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as -자 마자</td>
<td>suggestions -가요 -율까요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consider doing -가 하- -올가 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wanna -래요 -올래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>prob. future -거예요 -올거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>immed. future -께요 -올께요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One special feature about two-shape endings is that some of them, like the purposive ending -(-) (and other endings you will learn in the sequel volume), are attached to the extended base of L-extending bases.

노-근- play 놀리

Several peculiarities, however, must be mentioned about one-shape endings. The past marker -M- is omitted here because it is attached to infinitives rather than directly to other bases and so does not follow the same rules.

1. The base 잼수시- eat can abbreviate to 잼웃- before one-shape endings.

 잼수시지만 → 잼웃지만 [someone esteemed] eats, but
 잼수셨어요 → 잼웃셨어요 [someone esteemed] will eat

Lesson Fifteen / 303
2. One-shape endings are attached to the extended bases of L-extending verbs.

아-ㄹ- know 알지만 knows, but 알겠어요 knows or will know

3. When a one-shape ending that begins with 라, * or 뱃 is attached to a consonant base that ends in 꾸, the strings 꾸, 라, * and * are pronounced 꾸, 라, * and *.

좋- be good 좋지 [조지]
좋겠- [조케 묶-]

This is true also of 라 and 뱃:

많- be much/many 많지 [만지]
많겠- [만케 묶-]

싫- be disliked 싫지 [씩지]
싶겠- [씩케 묶-]

4. When a one-shape ending is attached to a consonant base that ends in 꾸, the 꾸 changes to 라.

더- hot 데지 [데지]
데겠- [데케 묶-]

Were it not for the other forms (더위, 더우시-) we would not know that such bases are different from the usual bases ending in 꾸 like 임- wear: 임지, 임고, 임겠-; 임어, 임으시-]. In traditional Korean grammar, the 꾸 ~ 꾸 verbs are called "irregular 꾸 ~ 꾸 verbs."

5. When a one-shape ending is attached to a consonant base that ends in 꾸 (꾸 ~ 꾸 verbs) the 꾸 changes to 라.

들- hear 들지 [드지]
들고 [드고]
들겠- [드케 묶-]

Lesson Fifteen / 304
Notice the difference between the behavior of these bases and the L-extending vowel bases:

\( \text{\textit{lift}} \) : cost has the forms 들지, 들고, 들겠-. The infinitives are the same. Both 들- and 들- come out as 들여.

6. The usual automatic sound changes take place when a base ending in a consonant attaches an ending shape that begins with a consonant. First, if the base ends in a consonant or cluster other than \( \text{n}, \text{c}, \text{t}, \text{k}, \text{l}, \text{r}, \text{g} \), in pronouncing the resulting form you reduce the consonant or cluster to one of those: \( \text{v} \) and \( \text{x} \) are treated like \( \text{v} \); \( \text{n} \) and usually \( \text{r} \) are treated like \( \text{m} \); \( \text{r} \) is treated like \( \text{m} \); \( \text{s} \) is treated like \( \text{l} \); \( \text{s} \), \( \text{m} \), \( \text{s} \), and \( \text{r} \) are all treated like \( \text{r} \).

Next, there are a number of automatic adjustments between the syllable-final consonant at the end of the base and the syllable-beginning consonant at the start of the ending.

A. Voiceless consonants are doubled (reinforced) after a voiceless consonant, so that

- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{c} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{c} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{s} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{s} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{a} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{a} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{i} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{i} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{t} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{t} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{s} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{s} \)  
- \( \text{v} \) \( \text{a} \) - is pronounced \( \text{v} \) \( \text{a} \)

However, \( \text{v} \) \( \text{i} \) - comes out just \( \text{v} \) (since you don't get the same consonant repeated more than once).

Note that sequences like \( \text{v} \) \( \text{c} \) \( \text{i} \) - and \( \text{v} \) \( \text{s} \) \( \text{i} \) - can sound like \( \text{i} \) and \( \text{x} \), e.g. 받고 싶어요 \( \text{바고 시파요} \) \text{wants to receive} \text{and 받지요 \text{바케요} \text{Of course I receive it!}}

B. After verb-base final \( \text{v} \) or \( \text{v} \) (or an \( \text{v} \) that is reduced from a cluster—simple \( \text{v} \) changes to \( \text{c} \)), you reinforce (double) a \( \text{v} \), \( \text{s} \), \( \text{a} \), or \( \text{i} \) that begins an ending. Since the Korean spelling does not show this doubling, you should be especially mindful of this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>신-</th>
<th>wears [on feet]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>신지</td>
<td>[신쳐]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신고</td>
<td>[신고]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>신겼-</td>
<td>[신께 따른]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Below is a chart of the major verb endings you have learned so far with some representative bases (----- means the form is odd or does not exist).
### Representative Bases and Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-(으)ㅂ니다</th>
<th>-(으)지요</th>
<th>-(으)ㄹ래요</th>
<th>-(으)니까</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-이-</td>
<td>-입니다</td>
<td>-이지요</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-하-</td>
<td>합니다</td>
<td>하지요</td>
<td>할래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-되-</td>
<td>됩니다</td>
<td>되지요</td>
<td>떨래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-피-</td>
<td>피니다</td>
<td>피지요</td>
<td>피래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-절-</td>
<td>절습니다</td>
<td>절지요</td>
<td>절래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-다르-</td>
<td>떨습니다</td>
<td>떨지요</td>
<td>떨래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-놓-</td>
<td>놓습니다</td>
<td>놓지요</td>
<td>놓래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-끝내-</td>
<td>끝냅니다</td>
<td>끝내지요</td>
<td>끝낼래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-와-</td>
<td>왔습니다</td>
<td>왔지요</td>
<td>왔래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-걸-</td>
<td>걸습니다</td>
<td>걸지요</td>
<td>걸래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-오겠-</td>
<td>오겠습니다</td>
<td>오겠지요</td>
<td>오겠래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-실-</td>
<td>실습니다</td>
<td>실지요</td>
<td>실래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-추-</td>
<td>출습니다</td>
<td>추지요</td>
<td>추래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-맞-</td>
<td>맞습니다</td>
<td>맞지요</td>
<td>맞래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-어리-</td>
<td>어림니다</td>
<td>어리지요</td>
<td>어리래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-빛-</td>
<td>빛니다</td>
<td>빛지요</td>
<td>빛래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-아프-</td>
<td>아프습니다</td>
<td>아프지요</td>
<td>아프래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-예뻐-</td>
<td>예뻐니다</td>
<td>예뻐지요</td>
<td>예뻐래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-무거우-</td>
<td>무겁습니다</td>
<td>무겁지요</td>
<td>무겁래요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-누우-</td>
<td>늘닙니다</td>
<td>늘지요</td>
<td>늘래요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise:**

Here are two sets of names. The first set appears in the first column, and the second set appears in the second column. Determine if there are any differences between the two sets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>이름</th>
<th>이름</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>12.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Lesson Fifteen / 306*
Exercise 1: Matching Synonyms

Here are two columns of Korean expressions. For each expression in the first column, there appears in the second column an expression of similar meaning. Call out each word in the first column, then find its matching word in the second column. Now translate and explain any difference between the words (by example, if possible). You may want to say "They are exactly alike" or "They are a little different." Your tutor may want to ask "How are they different?"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Column</th>
<th>Second Column</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>좋은가요</td>
<td>학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋요</td>
<td>일주일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>한 주간</td>
<td>밥철아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일년</td>
<td>메일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일어요</td>
<td>열두 달</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교수</td>
<td>배워요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기</td>
<td>외요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세 명</td>
<td>세 사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>날마다</td>
<td>상점</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>백화점</td>
<td>드러요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학</td>
<td>그 곳</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부해요</td>
<td>신생</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 307
Exercise 2: Matching Opposites

Now, here are two more columns of Korean expressions. This time, you are to pick from the first column the expression of opposite meaning to match each of the expressions in the second column. Use the two expressions in sentences; if possible, put them both into one sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앞아요</td>
<td>아들</td>
<td>여제</td>
<td>할머니</td>
<td>쉬어요</td>
<td>후에</td>
<td>오후</td>
<td>겨울</td>
<td>마치요</td>
<td>낮</td>
<td>남동생</td>
<td>디워요</td>
<td>누워요</td>
<td>팔아요</td>
<td>비싸요</td>
<td>봄</td>
<td>손녀</td>
<td>들어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen / 308
Exercise 3: Picking the Misfits

Here are six sets of Korean expressions—four to a set. Three expressions in each set have meanings that are grouped around the same subject matter; one does not. You are to pick the misfit. Then speaking Korean, try to show why it is a misfit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set</th>
<th>Expressions</th>
<th>Misfit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>개가 나와요</td>
<td>장갑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>주워요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>눈이 와요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>비가 와요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>장갑</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>구두</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>교회</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>넥타이</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>자동차로 가요</td>
<td>자매</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>걸어가요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>기차를 타요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>전화를 걸어요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>자매</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>시내</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>사위</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>손주</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>임어요</td>
<td>모자를 써요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>심어요</td>
<td>머리가 아파요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>선어요</td>
<td>옷을 입어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>써요</td>
<td>머리를 빗어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>모자를 써요</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Particle Review

Exercise 4: Particle Manipulation

The new particles, and new uses for old particles, that you have learned about in Lessons Eleven through Fourteen are listed here, together with the sections where they were discussed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>about, approximately</td>
<td>(see 11.3.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about, approximately</td>
<td>(12.6.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>either...or...</td>
<td>(12.6.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to, up to, as far as; until</td>
<td>(11.4.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to or for [someone esteemed]</td>
<td>(13.1.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject [someone esteemed]</td>
<td>(13.1.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(hononipheral equivalent of 이/가)</td>
<td>(13.1.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>only, just</td>
<td>(11.3.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every</td>
<td>(11.3.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lesson Fifteen /309
Express the English sentences in Korean. Make sure you use in each at least one of the particles in the list. Notice the multiple Korean translations for the English word get: 받-(receive), 가-(go), 사-(buy), 왔-(have got).

1. I want to get married by next year.
2. Shall we go on the train?
3. Either the train or the subway is all right.
4. I haven't any clothes except these.
5. It'll be expensive, but I'll buy some new clothes.
6. I bought both hat and shoes.
7. Approximately ten people came to the party.
8. I read the paper every morning.
9. How long does it take to get [go] from Seoul to Pusan on the train?
10. I ride the subway about once a day.
11. It's raining today, but I'm going downtown in order to see a movie.
12. How much time have we got? Only about ten minutes.
13. I've eaten nothing but meat today.
14. I telephoned the teacher twice, but he wasn't home.
15. How many times a year do you go to concerts?
16. I worked from 8 A.M. till 10 P.M. today.
17. It didn't snow yesterday. And it didn't rain, either.

To reinforce your hold on these particles, repeat the list and make up a Korean sentence using each of them.
Honorifics

Exercise 5: Tell a Story

Here is the bare outline of a story in English. Elaborating on this outline and changing details as you wish to, you must tell the story in Korean twice. The first time, use as the central character (he) your younger brother or sister, or a close friend, or some other person for whom it is not normal to use honorifics. In the second telling, construct your story around a highly esteemed person, your parents, a teacher who is very old, some other elderly relative. Practice your story aloud ahead of time so that you can tell it smoothly, with a minimum of pausing for thought.

He's very old. He's ___ years old. He lives in Seoul. His house is not large, but it's very nice. He usually eats his meals and sleeps at home, but sometimes he goes to town and stays there for several days. He gets up early every day and works hard. On Sundays, he rests. He goes to the cinema or to the park, or he stays home and reads. He owns a great many books. He smokes and reads the newspaper every evening. He doesn't like radio music so he doesn't listen much, but he often goes to concerts. I telephone him several times a week. I often get letters from him. Sometimes he gives me books or clothes. He likes his family. There are six people in his family. He lives with his wife and children, and he often takes walks with them and plays with them.

Autobiographical Sketch

Exercise 6

You are now in a position to compose a fairly detailed autobiographical sketch. Include some dates, your birthday, other significant events, and ages of close relatives and friends. You can also tell about the sort of things you do all day on typical days, what you like and why, and what you have done and will do.

Plan a five-minute talk in Korean along the lines of this scanty outline. Get firm enough control of it so that your speech will be smooth talk, very little silence. Don't write out every word you are going to say. Just jot down an outline, and reminders of the expressions you will need. At home, practice making up the right sort of sentences to express what you want to say. Instead of memorizing the sentences, make them up again, with spontaneous variations, when you deliver it orally.
Exercise 7: Change to Formal Style

Each of the following items is a statement or question in the Polite Style. Change them to Formal Style. (Remember that the formal equivalent of 나 I is 저는, and of 우리 we is 저희 or 저희들). Translate each sentence.

1. 영국분이세요?
2. 나는 영국 사람이 아니예요.
3. 그럼, 어디서 오셨어요?
4. 미국서 왔어요.
5. 미국은 한국서 떨어요?
6. 가깝지 않아요, 대단히 멀어요.
7. 미국에서는 무슨 일을 하셨어요?
8. 학교에서 경제학을 가르쳤어요.
9. 지금 우리 학교를 좀 구경하시겠어요?
10. 네, 학생들을 만나고 싶어요.
11. 우리의 학교는 작지만, 학생은 많아요.
12. 답례를 하나 피우시겠어요?
13. 고맙습니다. 나는 답례를 너무 좋아해요, 늘 피워요.
14. 학생들이 어디서 점심을 먹어요?
15. 학생들의 집이 다 가까워요. 그래서, 집에서 점심을 먹지요.
16. 선생들은 좋아요?
17. 여기가 우리의 교실이에요.
18. 교실이 참 커요.
19. 교실이 크지만, 책이 많지 않아요.
20. 우리의 학교는 돈이 없어요. 그래서, 책을 많이 못 사요.

Lesson Fifteen / 312
Review of Numbers

Exercise 8: Numerals and Counters

Here are eight brief sentences, each with something missing. Say each sentence aloud in Korean five times, inserting one after another of the number expressions listed below it. (Watch out for changes in meaning that might call for a shift in one of the basic words of the sentence.)

1. 나는 어제 _____ 일했습니다.
   for six hours
   from ten A.M. until four P.M.
   for only forty minutes
   from quarter to seven until quarter
   after one
   for three hours

2. 지난 주에 서울에서 _____ 냈습니다.
   three friends
   four movie theaters [use 개]
   ten American doctors
   five pop singers
   about 10,000 people
   eighteen buildings

3.חלק 안에 _____ 있습니다.
   three newspapers
   about fifty books
   forty students
   three teachers
   six windows and two doors

4. 나는 중국말을 _____ 배웠습니다.
   for three years
   for only five weeks
   for several months
   in 1987
   from February till June

5. 우리 동생은 _____입니다.
   two years old
   one year old
   four years old
   forty years old
   twenty years old

6. 우체국 앞에는 _____ 있습니다.
   two bicycles
   twelve cars
   four dogs
   five doctors

7. 나는 _____ 태어났습니다.
   twenty-one years ago
   on April 1, 1940
   on September 30, 1966
   on May 27, 1928
   on January 14, 1945

8. 기차는 _____ 떠납니다.
   at 6:18 P.M.
   at 4:42 A.M.
   at 7:37 P.M.
   at 5:05 P.M.
   at 1:19 A.M.
Exercise 9: Translate into English

1. 그 영화가 너무 재미 없었어요. 즐거게 나와서 싫었어요.
2. 옷난 건에는 안전을 써야지만, 요즘은 콜트라인들을 가지고 다니지요.
3. 그 책을 외계 학생 위에 놓았어요. 누가 읽고 있을지에요.
4. 어제까지는 일본에 가지고 싶었지만, 오늘은 한국에 가지고 싶어요.
5. A. 이렇게 되었어요?
   B. 지금 담고 있잖아요?
6. 문제를 세 개씩 줘요. 그런데, 풀어요?
7. 저는 대학교에서 정치학만 공부하고 있어요. 가끔 하루에 여섯 시간씩 숙제를 하지요. 그리고 그 다음에는 쉬어요.
8. 오늘 아침에 누군가agit이 안 나왔어요. 아니요, 아직 나가지 않았잖아요?
9. 내일은 개학입니다. 금년에는 열심히 공부할 겁니다.
10. 나는 열심히 하겠지만 행동이나 주로 놀거든요.
11. 나는 나가지 않음에도. 집에서 커피를 마실래요.
12. 이 음식은 별로 맛이 없어요. 다른 거 먹으러가요?
13. 그 책이 얼마나요? 음악에서 놀을 찾아요.
14. 어제 내가 우리 고양이를 찾으러 나갔지만 못 찾았어요.
15. 사장님 덕분에 잘 지내고 있습니다.
16. A. 이 문제를 몇 못 풀어요?
   B. 그럼 제가 할게요.
17. 빌리 자요! 늦었잖아요!
18. 내일 추가가요? 모르겠어요.
19. 학교에 갈까요? 오늘은 일요일이잖아요!
20. 그 사람이 내 거지요? 빌리 주세요!
21. 목요일만은 커피 마시러 다방에 갈래요.
22. 오전에서는 구두장 장갑을 쓰아요.
23. 테니스 치래요?
24. 나는 한 달에 두 번씩 교회에 나가요.
25. 커피를 다 마셨지만, 맛은 없었어요.
26. 사장님이 벌써 오셨어요? 그림 백주 한잔 드리지요.
27. 어느 나라에서 오셨어요? 러시아에서 왔지만, 싸늘 전이었지요.
28. 이 책들은 다 달라요, 그리고 또 재미 있어요.
   어느 시점에서 사셨어요?
29. 우리 왼은 특특하지만, 공부를 열심히 안 해요.
30. 그 이야기는 싫어요. 다른 거 하지요.

Lesson Fifteen / 314

Exercise 10

1. He's probably...
2. That sounds...
3. I've only...
4. Do you...
5. I'm going...
6. He won't...
7. Is Mr. P...
8. Would you...
9. Would you...
10. That girl...
11. Excuse me...
12. The day...
English to Korean Translation

Exercise 10: Translate into Korean

1. He's probably already come (three ways).
2. That student is waiting for Mr. Brown.
3. I've only 3000 won. So I can't buy all these goods.
4. Do you often ride that bike?
5. I'm going to study for just fifteen minutes.
6. He won't get the money from his father this week, I bet.
7. Is Mr. Pak's nephew going to graduate next year?
8. Would you happen to know the time?
9. Would you like to take a walk in the park together?
10. That girl must be my brother's fiancée.
11. Excuse me, but I'll just pop upstairs a moment.
12. The day after tomorrow I'll meet Mr. Chang's sister.

Lesson Fifteen / 315
13. Would you like to (do you wanna) try these clothes on now?
14. Are you in a good mood?
15. My head aches terribly.
16. In the summer I'll have lots of exams.
17. Where is the bus stop?
18. I saw it yesterday, but I don't know.
19. Comb your hair!
20. Do you suppose he is at home? Of course he must be!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가게</td>
<td>go (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가게</td>
<td>a shop; store (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가까워-</td>
<td>be close, near (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가끔</td>
<td>sometimes (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가르치-</td>
<td>teach (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가방</td>
<td>bag, briefcase (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가비와-</td>
<td>be light (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가수</td>
<td>pop singer (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가을</td>
<td>autumn, fall (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가족</td>
<td>family (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가장</td>
<td>the most (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가지</td>
<td>kinds, varieties (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈아입-</td>
<td>change (clothes) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갑자</td>
<td>potato(es) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갑자강</td>
<td>crispy fried potatoes, potato chips (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갑</td>
<td>pack (cigarettes) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갑자기</td>
<td>suddenly (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값</td>
<td>price (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값다오-</td>
<td>go (and come back) (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값다주-</td>
<td>bring (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>값</td>
<td>be similar; be the same together (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>같이</td>
<td>dog (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개</td>
<td>items, units, objects (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개</td>
<td>months (time or duration) (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개학(을) 하기</td>
<td>start term/school (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정</td>
<td>there (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걱정(을) 하기</td>
<td>a worry (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강</td>
<td>worry (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건강하-</td>
<td>health (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건너편</td>
<td>be healthy (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>건물</td>
<td>across/opposite from (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결-</td>
<td>building (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결리-</td>
<td>walk (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결어가-</td>
<td>take (time) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결어오-</td>
<td>walk, go on foot (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겨울</td>
<td>walk, come on foot (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결혼(을) 하기</td>
<td>winter (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제</td>
<td>marry (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>경제학</td>
<td>economy (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재산서</td>
<td>economics (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>게시-</td>
<td>bill, check (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고기</td>
<td>be, exist, stay (honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고대</td>
<td>meat (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고마워-</td>
<td>Korea University (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모</td>
<td>be/feel thankful (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고모부</td>
<td>aunt (father's sister) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고양이</td>
<td>uncle (father's sister's husband) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K-E Vocabulary /317</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프</td>
<td>golf (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 (볼) 치</td>
<td>play golf (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 (볼)</td>
<td>place (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 공</td>
<td>study (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 공원</td>
<td>park (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 책</td>
<td>notebook (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 과목</td>
<td>school subject (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 과일</td>
<td>fruit (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 학문</td>
<td>Kwanghwamun, Kwanghwa Gate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 장</td>
<td>be OK, be alright (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>골프 하</td>
<td>be quite something, be impressive (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학생</td>
<td>very, very much (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학교</td>
<td>professor (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학실</td>
<td>classroom (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>학외</td>
<td>suburb(s) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교재</td>
<td>teaching materials; textbook (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교원</td>
<td>exchange (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교환</td>
<td>switchboard, telephone, exchange operator (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교환학생</td>
<td>exchange student (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>교회</td>
<td>church (Protestant) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경 (볼) 하</td>
<td>do viewing or sightsee (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구경 (볼) 가</td>
<td>go viewing/sightseeing (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>구두</td>
<td>shoes (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국립</td>
<td>national (-ly) established (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>국립대학교</td>
<td>a national university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군대</td>
<td>places, institutions (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군인</td>
<td>soldier, serviceman (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>군인 권</td>
<td>bound volumes (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>귀</td>
<td>ear (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 NOUN</td>
<td>that NOUN (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그날</td>
<td>just, just (as one is), without doing anything (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그래도</td>
<td>Even so; Nevertheless (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그래서</td>
<td>And so; And then; Therefore (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그러나</td>
<td>So, what I mean to say is; So, what you're saying is (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그러면</td>
<td>Then, In that case, If (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그런데</td>
<td>But. And then; By the way (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림</td>
<td>In that case; Then (5) in that way, like that; (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림계</td>
<td>But (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림지지만</td>
<td>And also; And then (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그리고</td>
<td>picture (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그림</td>
<td>day before yesterday (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>극장</td>
<td>theatre; cinema (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>근처</td>
<td>the area near, the vicinity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>글쎄요</td>
<td>I don't really know. Let me think. (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금년</td>
<td>this year (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금요일</td>
<td>Friday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기자</td>
<td>wait (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분</td>
<td>feelings, mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분 (이) 나쁘</td>
<td>be in a bad mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분 (이) 좋</td>
<td>be in a good mood (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기숙사</td>
<td>dormitory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>차</td>
<td>train (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길</td>
<td>road, way, street (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>카페</td>
<td>café (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깔끔이</td>
<td>cut (hair), sharpen (pencil), mow (grass) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깔끔하다</td>
<td>neatly, clean (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
just, just (as one is), without doing anything (13)  
Even so; Nevertheless (6)  
And so; And then; Therefore (6)  
So, what I mean to say is; So, what you’re saying is (13)  
Then, in that case, If so (5)  
But. And then; By the way (6)  
In that case; Then (5) in that way, like that; so (13)  
But (5)  
And also; And then (6)  
picture (6)  
day before yesterday (14)  
theatre; cinema (7)  
the area near, the vicinity (6)  
I don’t really know. Let me think. (9)  
this year (11)  
Friday (7)  
wait (7)  
feelings, mood (14)  
be in a bad mood (14)  
be in a good mood (14)  
dormitory (6)  
train (7)  
road, way, street (11)  
café (12)  
cut (hair), sharpen (pencil), mow (grass) (8)  
neatly, cleanly (8)  
be clean (8)  
without fail; be sure to (11)  
flower(s) (12)  
quit (smoking, drinking) (14)  
the end; the tip (11)  
it stops, ends, finishes (7)  
finishes it (11)  
wear (gloves, ring) (9)  
wear (lenses) (13)  
get/be better (7)  
attend (church) (8); go out (9)  
country, nation (5)  
tree (6)  
be bad (8)  
come out (9)  
age (11)  
in the future, some time later, later (11)  
day (7)  
weather (13)  
Great South Gate (6)  
younger brother (13)  
brother and sister (13)  
man (6)  
boyfriend (6)  
husband (5)  
daytime; noon (7)  
pay (14)  
next year (11)  
go down (9)  
come down (9)  
descend (9)  
K-E Vocabulary/319
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>다리</td>
<td>leg (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다방</td>
<td>tea room, tabang (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음</td>
<td>after; adjacent, next to (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다치-</td>
<td>get hurt, injure oneself (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>polish; brush (teeth) (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>닫-</td>
<td>close it (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달</td>
<td>months (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>달라</td>
<td>dollar (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>담배</td>
<td>cigarette(s) (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대</td>
<td>vehicles, machines (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대사관</td>
<td>embassy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학</td>
<td>four-year college (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대학교</td>
<td>university (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>대</td>
<td>house (honorific) (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>more (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>Thanks to NOUN; Thanks to you (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>be hot (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>place (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>a date (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>더</td>
<td>have a date (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도서관</td>
<td>library (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도서</td>
<td>city (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도와주-</td>
<td>help (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>도착(을) 하-</td>
<td>arrive (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독어</td>
<td>German language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일</td>
<td>Germany (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일말</td>
<td>German language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>독일 사람</td>
<td>a German (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈</td>
<td>money (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈(이) 드-</td>
<td>costs money (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가-</td>
<td>goes back, returns there (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아가시-</td>
<td>die, pass away (honorific) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아오-</td>
<td>comes back, returns here (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>neighborhood (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아둠</td>
<td>for the duration of, during, for (a week) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>It's OK; It'll do; It's acceptable; It works (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>become (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>both, both of them (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>at the back; behind (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>costs (money) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>lift; hold (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>dry cleaning (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>give (honorific) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>eat, drink (honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>listen to; hear (7); take (courses) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>go in, enters (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>come in, enter; return home (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>back, spine (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>daughter (hon.) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>daughter (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>time (when) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>because of, on account of (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>leave, depart (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>Moreover, What's more; (yet) again (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돌아</td>
<td>be bright, intelligent (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

K-E Vocabulary /320
K-E Vocabulary /321

lighter (6)  
Russia (5)  
Russian language (5)  
Russian person (5)  
London (8)  
restaurant (7)  
Korean mile (li) = 1/3 U.S. mile (counter) (11)

the living room (in an apartment) (13)  
animals, fish, birds (counter) (11)

drink (7)  
one's mind, spiritual center, heart (12)

finish it (12)  
meet (7)  
comics, cartoons (12)  
be much/many (7)  
a lot (adverb) (7)  
language; words (5)  
obey (listens to words) (8)

words, speech (humble or honorific equivalent of 말) (8)  
say (humble), say (humble) (13)

Go ahead; Please say what you have to say. (8)

speak, talk (7)  
taste (7)  
taste bad, not taste good (7)  
be tasty, delicious (7)

be right, correct; hit the mark (13)  
cross/opposite from (6)  
put on/wear (a tie) (9)  
tie (7)  
be spicy (11)  
every day (8)  
ticket counter (7)

beer (11)  
what? (5)  
be distant, far (8)  
head; hair (8)  
be dumb (8)  
be bright/intelligent (8)  
eat (7)  
starch it (12)

first (of all), before anything else (8)  
far (13)  
from a distance (13)  
daughter-in-law (13)  
persons, people (counter) (11)  
namcard, business card (9)

how many? (7)  
how many?

some/several (11)  
What year were you born in? (11)  
What year are you (in school)? (11)

all, everyone (13)  
day after tomorrow (14)  
not know (7)  
hat (9)

Thursday (7)  
be ugly (9)  
bite (7)  
be heavy (12)  
knee (14)  
which/what kind of? (5)

what? (5)  
trade (9)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>trading company (9)</th>
<th>배 (가) 부르-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>door, gate (6)</td>
<td>배우-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem (14)</td>
<td>배우-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water (7)</td>
<td>백화점-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask (7)</td>
<td>버리-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goods (11)</td>
<td>버스-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of course (14)</td>
<td>번호-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of course. (14)</td>
<td>번호-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what? (5)</td>
<td>빗-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America, USA (5)</td>
<td>빗로 + negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person from USA.</td>
<td>명-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American (5)</td>
<td>보내-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be sorry, feel sorry (7)</td>
<td>(is) unmarried (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at the bottom, below</td>
<td>under(neath) (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchange, change (14)</td>
<td>stomach (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ocean, sea (12)</td>
<td>(stomach) be full, sated (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just (below, above);</td>
<td>learn (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straight (6)</td>
<td>department store (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be busy (7)</td>
<td>throw it away (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers (9)</td>
<td>bus (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr., Ph.D. (5)</td>
<td>times (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside (6)</td>
<td>number (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half (11)</td>
<td>already (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one's class, homeroom (14)</td>
<td>take off (clothes) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(finger)ring (9)</td>
<td>(not) particularly (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side dishes (14)</td>
<td>bottle (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive, get (7)</td>
<td>look at, see (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot (14)</td>
<td>spend (time); send (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toe (14)</td>
<td>usually, normally (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night (7)</td>
<td>corridor, hallway (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooked rice (7)</td>
<td>ballpoint pen (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room (6)</td>
<td>spring (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just a moment ago, just now (9)</td>
<td>paper bag (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation (11)</td>
<td>sing (a song) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비 - 비(음) 하-</td>
<td>be full (stomach) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>parents (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부모(들)</td>
<td>kitchen (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부자</td>
<td>your/his wife (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부친</td>
<td>rich person (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부모-</td>
<td>boots (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부모-</td>
<td>post it, mail it (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부모(들)</td>
<td>make a request, ask a favor/errand (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>esteemed people (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>minutes (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>person (honorific) (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>chalk (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>fire; light; a light (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>U.S. dollars (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>pulgogi (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>French language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>be uncomfortable, inconvenient (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>rain (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>pibimpap (7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

K-E Vocabulary / 322
stomach (12)
(stomach) be full, sated (12)
learn (7)
department store (6)
throw it away (13)
bus (8)
times (counter) (11)
number (11)
already (12)
take off (clothes) (7)
(not) particularly (9)
bottle (counter) (11)
look at, see (7)
spend (time); send (9)
usually, normally (7)
corridor, hallway (12)
ballpoint pen (5)
spring (13)
paper bag (counter) (11)
sing (a song) (7)
be full (stomach) (12)
parents (6)
kitchen (13)
your/his wife (5)
rich person (11)
boots (9)
post it, mail it (9)
make a request, ask a favor/errand (8)
esteeemed people (counter) (11)
minutes (counter) (11)
person (honorific) (5)
chalk (5)
fine; light; a light (7)
U.S. dollars (counter) (11)
puljogi (7)
French language (5)
be uncomfortable, inconvenient (14)
rain (13)
pibimpap (7)

비싸- 비치 비행기 별빛 별수 비트
사람 사랑(을) 하- 사람
사람대학교 사모님
사무실 사실 사실은 사업
사위 사이 사이다
사장 사촌 사촌누나 사촌동생
사촌언니

be expensive (7)
beach (12)
airplane (7)
building (6)
comb (14)
shaved ice, ice slush (12)
be fast (7)
quickly (7)
bread (7)
bus (8)

사촌형 사낼 사보(를) 하- 삼촌
삼학년(생) 상 상자 신
생일 생기-
생크림 사주 서-
서강대 서울대
서점 선교사 선물 선생
설것이 설것이(를) 하-
설탕 성 성씨 성삼 성합 성남 성당

sister (12)
be full, sated (12)
learn (7)
department store (6)
throw it away (13)
bus (8)
times (counter) (11)
number (11)
already (12)
take off (clothes) (7)
(not) particularly (9)
bottle (counter) (11)
look at, see (7)
spend (time); send (9)
usually, normally (7)
corridor, hallway (12)
ballpoint pen (5)
spring (13)
paper bag (counter) (11)
sing (a song) (7)
be full (stomach) (12)
parents (6)
kitchen (13)
your/his wife (5)
rich person (11)
boots (9)
post it, mail it (9)
make a request, ask a favor/errand (8)
esteeemed people (counter) (11)
minutes (counter) (11)
person (honorific) (5)
chalk (5)
fine; light; a light (7)
U.S. dollars (counter) (11)
puljogi (7)
French language (5)
be uncomfortable, inconvenient (14)
rain (13)
pibimpap (7)

비싸- 비치 비행기 별빛 별수 비트
사람 사랑(을) 하- 사람
사람대학교 사모님
사무실 사실 사실은 사업
사위 사이 사이다
사장 사촌 사촌누나 사촌동생
사촌언니

be expensive (7)
beach (12)
airplane (7)
building (6)
comb (14)
shaved ice, ice slush (12)
be fast (7)
quickly (7)
bread (7)
bus (8)

사촌형 사낼 사보(를) 하- 삼촌
삼학년(생) 상 상자 신
생일 생기-
생크림 사주 서-
서강대 서울대
서점 선교사 선물 선생
설것이 설것이(를) 하-
설탕 성 성씨 성삼 성합 성남 성당

[Your or his] esteemed surname (8)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>세탁</th>
<th>시내</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>세탁(을) 하-</td>
<td>시내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세탁소</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스테타</td>
<td>시네</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소개(을) 하-</td>
<td>시력</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소개(을) 받-</td>
<td>시부모</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소주</td>
<td>시악비념</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>속</td>
<td>시악비지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손가락</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손녀(딸)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손님</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손자</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>손주(아이)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쇼핑</td>
<td>시작(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수건</td>
<td>시장</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수업</td>
<td>시청</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수영(을) 하-</td>
<td>시기-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수영장</td>
<td>시험</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수요일</td>
<td>식구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>수입품</td>
<td>식당</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>슈퍼마켓</td>
<td>식탁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>숙제</td>
<td>신-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술집</td>
<td>신문</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>술-</td>
<td>신용카드</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬-</td>
<td>신발</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쉬워-</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스키</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스키드(을) 하-</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스케이트</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스케이트(을) 타-</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스키(을) 타-</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스포츠</td>
<td>설-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시</td>
<td>시각</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시간</td>
<td>시계</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시계</td>
<td>시골</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시골</td>
<td>시내</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>launndry (12)</td>
<td>시대</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do laundry, launder (12)</td>
<td>시부모</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laundromat, cleaners (12)</td>
<td>시악비념</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweater, jumper (9)</td>
<td>시악비지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>introduce (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/get introduced (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean rice vodka, soju (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inside (6)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granddaughter (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest; customer (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandson (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandchild(ren) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shopping (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towel (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class, lesson (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming pool (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imported goods (5)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework, assignment (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any alcoholic drink (5)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar, tavern, drinking establishment (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be easy (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easily (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skate(s) (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skate (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski(s) (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o'clock (counter) (11)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hours (counter); time (7, 11)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countrysides, the country (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>downtown, city center (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esteemed house/home of the parents-in-law (for females) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parents-in-law (for females) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman’s) (honorific) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman’s) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law (woman’s) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law woman’s, honorific) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin (11)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market (6)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city hall (6)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order (11)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examination (14)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family members (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dining room, restaurant, cafeteria, refectory (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dining table, kitchen table (11)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (footwear) (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper (5)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes, footwear in general (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In fact (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be disliked, distasteful (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike it (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be bored (12)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want to (9)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap, inexpensive (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pours (rain) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (glasses) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear (a hat) (13)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use it (8)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write (7)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite title for name (5)</td>
<td>시액머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어제</td>
<td>yesterday (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언니</td>
<td>older sister (girl's) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제</td>
<td>always (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>언제나</td>
<td>sometime or other, at one time; some time ago (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마</td>
<td>how many? how much? (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼마나</td>
<td>about how much? approximately how much? (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>얼음</td>
<td>ice (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없음</td>
<td>be nonexistent, not exist, not have (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>없어요</td>
<td>does not exist, there is not, aren't (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엄리리</td>
<td>elevator, lift (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엘리베이터</td>
<td>open it (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여르</td>
<td>small hotel, inn (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기</td>
<td>here (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기 좀봐요!</td>
<td>Say there! Excuse me! (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여동생</td>
<td>younger sister (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여리</td>
<td>several, various (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여름</td>
<td>summer (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여보세요!</td>
<td>Hello! Excuse me! (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여자</td>
<td>woman (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여자친구</td>
<td>girlfriend (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>역</td>
<td>train station (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연/년</td>
<td>years (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구</td>
<td>research (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구(률)하-</td>
<td>do research (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구실</td>
<td>(professor's) office (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구</td>
<td>play, drama (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연구대</td>
<td>Yonsei University (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연락(을)하-</td>
<td>get in touch, make contact (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연세</td>
<td>age (honorisic) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>연필</td>
<td>pencil (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>염심히</td>
<td>diligently (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국</td>
<td>England (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영국사람</td>
<td>English person (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영사관</td>
<td>consulate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영어</td>
<td>English language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화</td>
<td>movie, film (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화구경(을)하-</td>
<td>see a film (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>영화배우</td>
<td>movie actor (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예쁜-</td>
<td>next to, beside (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약</td>
<td>reservation (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>예약(을)하-</td>
<td>make a reservation (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오-</td>
<td>come (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오늘</td>
<td>today (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오렌지스-_</td>
<td>orange juice (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오르-</td>
<td>ascend, rise (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른쪽</td>
<td>on the right (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오른편</td>
<td>on the right (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오빠</td>
<td>older brother (girl's) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전</td>
<td>morning, A.M. (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오징어</td>
<td>squid (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오징어깡</td>
<td>squid chips (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오후</td>
<td>afternoon (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오후</td>
<td>P.M. (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라가-</td>
<td>go up (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올라오-</td>
<td>come up (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>옷</td>
<td>clothes (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외이사쓰</td>
<td>shirt, dress shirt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜(요)?</td>
<td>wine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>왜냐하면</td>
<td>why? (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외교관</td>
<td>The reason is; Because (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국</td>
<td>diplomat (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국사람</td>
<td>foreign country (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외국여</td>
<td>a foreigner (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외삼촌</td>
<td>foreign language (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>외삼촌</td>
<td>uncle (on mother's side) (13)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
grandmother (on mother's side) (13) 
grandfather (on mother's side) (13) 
on the left (6) 
cooking, cuisine (12) 
cook (12) 
nowadays, these days (7) 
business, matter to take care of (14) 
forgive (11) 
we, our (5) 
first of all, before anything else (14) 
milk (7) 
post office (9) 
do sports; exercise (13) 
sports stadium (13) 
sneakers, tennis shoes (13) 
Korean monetary unit (6) 
month names (counter) (11) 
Monday (7) 
above, over, on (top); upstairs (6) 
whisky (5) 
upstairs, the floor above (9) 
retire (12) 
bank (5) 
banker (5) 
beverage, something to drink (14) 
food (7) 
restaurant (7) 
concert (12) 
doctor, physician (5)
### K-E Vocabulary / 328

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>입-</td>
<td>enter; come in; arrive (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있어요</td>
<td>there is/are (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잊어버리-</td>
<td>forget (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음</td>
<td>next (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자-</td>
<td>self (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자녀분</td>
<td>children (honorific) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자동차</td>
<td>car, automobile (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자료</td>
<td>materials (written) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자르-</td>
<td>cut (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자매</td>
<td>sisters (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자전거</td>
<td>bicycle (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자세분</td>
<td>children (honorific) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자주</td>
<td>often (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작-</td>
<td>write (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작년</td>
<td>last year (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>작은아버지</td>
<td>uncle (father's younger brother) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘</td>
<td>well; often (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘해요.</td>
<td>It's going well. It's turning out well. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘생겼-</td>
<td>be good-looking, handsome (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘안해요.</td>
<td>It's not going well. (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘해야요!</td>
<td>Good night. (polite, but not honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘하-</td>
<td>do well, do (it) well (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잘관</td>
<td>a short while, a moment (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설치</td>
<td>a short while (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡수시-</td>
<td>eat (honorific) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잡지</td>
<td>magazine (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장</td>
<td>flat objects (counter) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장(물)보-</td>
<td>do grocery shopping (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장갑</td>
<td>gloves (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장마</td>
<td>rainy season, seasonal rains (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장마(가)지-</td>
<td>rainy season sets in (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장모</td>
<td>mother-in-law (man's) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인</td>
<td>father-in-law (man's) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인어른</td>
<td>father-in-law (man's) (elegant) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>장인장모</td>
<td>parents-in-law (man's) (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자켓</td>
<td>jacket (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미 없-</td>
<td>be not interesting, boring (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미있게</td>
<td>be interesting (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>재미있게</td>
<td>interestingly, in such a way that it is interesting (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저</td>
<td>over there (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기</td>
<td>Hey there! (a bit brusque or even rude) (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기요!</td>
<td>evening; supper (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤</td>
<td>one's major, specialization (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤이</td>
<td>major in something (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전부</td>
<td>the whole thing, total (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전부다</td>
<td>everything, all of it (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전에</td>
<td>earlier, before (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화</td>
<td>telephone (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화(를)하-</td>
<td>make a phone call (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화(를)받-</td>
<td>make a phone call (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화번호</td>
<td>answer the phone (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>철-</td>
<td>telephone number (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤심</td>
<td>be young (but past puberty) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤마다</td>
<td>lunch (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤등(예)</td>
<td>exactly at (a time) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤거장</td>
<td>station/stop (train) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤류장</td>
<td>bus stop (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>젤말로</td>
<td>truly, really (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hangul</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>정말이예요?</td>
<td>question (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정문</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정렬적(으로)</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정원</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정치</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정치학</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제품</td>
<td>polite (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소금</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>소부모</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조카</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>조카말</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종이</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종-</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>종아하-</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주간</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주로</td>
<td>salt (9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hangul</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>주립대학교</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주말</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주무시-</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주문(을)하-</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주세요</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주일</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주중에</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽-</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중간</td>
<td>university (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
mother-in-law (man’s) (13)
father-in-law (man’s) (13)
father-in-law (man’s) (elegant) (13)
parents-in-law (man’s) (13)
jacket (9)
be not interesting, boring (9)
be interesting (9)
interestingly, in such a way that it is interesting (9)
yon, that (over there) (5)
over there (6)
Hey there! (a bit brusque or even rude) (12)
evening; supper (7)
in that way (13)
are few (7)
one’s major, specialization (8)
major in something (8)
the whole thing, total (5)
everything, all of it (5)
carlier, before (11)
television (8)
make a phone call (8)
make a phone call (9)
answer the phone (9)
telephone number (11)
be young (but past puberty) (11)
lunch (7)
exact at (a time) (11)
station/stop (train) (14)
bus stop (14)
truly, really (8)
Really? Is it true? (8)
main gate (of a university) (6)
passionate(ly) (8)
garden (9)
politics (8)
political science (8)
the most, number one (14)
manufactured good(s) (5)
a little (7)
grandparents (13)
nephew (13)
niece (13)
graduate (13)
a little; please (8)
paper (5)
be good; be liked (12)
be good (7)
like it (8, 12)
a state, a province (8)
give (7)
mainly, mostly, for the most part (8)
state (-established), provincial (-established) (8)
a state university (8)
weekend (7)
sleep (honorific) (8)
order (at restaurant) (12)
Please give. (6)
week (counter) (11)
during the week, on week days (11)
die (14)
middle, midway (9)
<p>| 친 천천히   | thousand (6)  |
| 천천히 천   | slowly (8)    |
| 첫 첫째지   | first (7)     |
| 청바지를   | jeans (9)     |
| 청소를 하 - 쇼 - | clean up (8)  |
| 초대를 하 - 초 - | invite someone (14) |
| 초대를 받 - 초 - | be/get invited (14) |
| (a) second (11) (counter) | |
| 추위 - 추 - 춤 (을) 추 - 취하 - 취 - 창 - | |
| 치 - 치 - 치마 | |
| 친구 친척 칠판 | |
| 친척 칠판 친구 친척 침구 침착 칠판 | |
| first (7) | |
| jeans (9) | |
| clean up (8) | |
| invite someone (14) | |
| be/get invited (14) | |
| (a) second (11) (counter) | |
| be cold (13) | |
| dances (a dance) (12) | |
| get tipsy/drink (14) | |
| floors (of a building) (counter) (11) | |
| strike, hit (7) | |
| play tennis, golf (12) | |
| skirt (9) | |
| friend (5) | |
| relative (5) | |
| blackboard (5) | |
| Canada (5) | |
| a Canadian (5) | |
| campus (6) | |
| coffee (12) | |
| pair [of shoes, etc.] (9) | |
| nose (14) | |
| comedy (13) | |
| coat (9) | |
| contact lenses (13) | |
| cola (12) | |
| be large (7) | |
| cream (12) | |
| uncle (father's elder brother) (13) | |
| add/put in (sugar) (12) | |
| ride in, ride on (12) | |
| go (riding) (14) | |
| come (riding) (14) | |
| towel (7) | |
| be born (11) | |
| tennis (12) | |
| play tennis (12) | |
| table (6) | |
| television (6) | |
| tomato juice (8) | |
| Saturday (7) | |
| get through to, make contact with (13) | |
| get through to, make contact with on phone (8) | |
| sell it (7) | |
| pounds (sterling) (counter) (11) | |
| party (11) | |
| arm (14) | |
| ballpoint pen (5) | |
| side, direction (6) | |
| letter (7) | |
| be comfortable; conveniently (14) | |
| comfortably; conveniently (14) | |
| ticket (7) | |
| solve it; undo it (14) | |
| starch, glue (12) | |
| starch it (12) | |
| France (5) | |
| French language (5) | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add/put in (sugar)</td>
<td>프랑스사람 프로</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride in, ride on</td>
<td>프리마</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go (riding)</td>
<td>플랫폼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (riding)</td>
<td>피 - 피곤하</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towel</td>
<td>피아노 피아노(를) 치</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be born</td>
<td>피우 - 피자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>하 - 학교</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td>하기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>하편 (이에요)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>학생</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato juice</td>
<td>학생회관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through to, make contact with</td>
<td>한국</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get through to, make contact with on phone</td>
<td>한국말</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>한국사람</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pounds (sterling)</td>
<td>한국어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>한국학</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counter</td>
<td>할머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>할머님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballpoint pen</td>
<td>할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side, direction</td>
<td>할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>함께</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be comfortable; convenient</td>
<td>핫도그</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably; conveniently</td>
<td>항상</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>헤</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve it; undo it</td>
<td>헤버거</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch, glue</td>
<td>bound for (a place)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch it</td>
<td>waist, lower back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>older brother (boy's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French language</td>
<td>brothers (for males); brothers and sisters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person from France</td>
<td>Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program (TV); pro (sports)</td>
<td>an Australian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-dairy creamer</td>
<td>hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>alone, on one's own, by oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom, blossom</td>
<td>black/English tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be tired</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>person from Hong Kong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play piano</td>
<td>(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pizza</td>
<td>toilet, restroom, bathroom, washroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pounds (sterling)</td>
<td>company employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counter</td>
<td>conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>after, later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>tissue paper; toilet tissue, Kleenex™</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballpoint pen</td>
<td>be cloudy, overcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side, direction</td>
<td>become/get cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>strength, energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be comfortable; convenient</td>
<td>be difficult, taxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably; conveniently</td>
<td>(strength enters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>forever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve it; undo it</td>
<td>10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch, glue</td>
<td>about, approximately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch it</td>
<td>term, semester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>is a student in such-and-such a year or grade (at school)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French language</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person from France</td>
<td>student union (building)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program (TV); pro (sports)</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-dairy creamer</td>
<td>student union (building)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom, blossom</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be tired</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play piano</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pizza</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pounds (sterling)</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>counter</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>party</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballpoint pen</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>side, direction</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be comfortable; convenient</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably; conveniently</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solve it; undo it</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch, glue</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starch it</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French language</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*K-E Vocabulary* / 331
# English to Korean Vocabulary

## A

- a lot (adverb)  
  - 많이 (7)

- a while later  
  - 이따가 (7)

- a worry  
  - 걱정 (13)

- about (numeral)  
  - 한 plus numeral (11)

- above  
  - 위 (6)

- across from  
  - 맞은편, 건너편 (6)

- actor  
  - 배우 (9)

- add (sugar)  
  - 타-(12)

- adjacent to  
  - 다음 (6)

- after  
  - 다음 (6); 후에 (11)

- afternoon  
  - 오전 (7, 11)

- again  
  - 또 (9)

- age  
  - 나이 (11)

- age (honorific)  
  - 연세 (11)

- airplane  
  - 비행기 (7)

- alcoholic drink  
  - 술 (5)

- all  
  - 모두 (13)

- all of it  
  - 전부 다 (5)

- allright  
  - 정착- (8)

- alone  
  - 혼자[서] (7)

- already  
  - 빌씨 (12)

- always  
  - 항상 (8)

- always  
  - 언제나 (8)

- always  
  - 늘 (8)

- A.M.  
  - 오전 (11)

- America  
  - 미국 (5)

- American  
  - 미국사람 (5)

- And also  
  - 그리고 (6)

- And so  
  - 그래서 (6)

- And then  
  - 그랜데 (6)

- And then  
  - 그리고 (6)

- And then  
  - 마리 (11)

- another  
  - 다른 (8)

- answer (he phone)  
  - 받- (9)

- anything (at all)  
  - 아무거나 (14)

- apple  
  - 사과 (11)

- approximately  
  - 주로 (11)

- area near  
  - 근처 (6)

- arm  
  - 팔 (14)

- arrive  
  - 도착(을) 하- (9)

- ascend  
  - 오르- (9)

- ask  
  - 물- (7)

- assignment  
  - 숙제 (13)

- attend  
  - 다니- (7)

- attend (church)  
  - 교모 (13)

- aunt (father's sister)  
  - 이모 (13)

- aunt (mother's sister)  
  - 호주 (5)

- Australian  
  - 호주사람 (5)

- automobile  
  - 자동차, 차 (9)

- autumn  
  - 가을 (13)

## B

- baby  
  - 아기 (6)

- baby  
  - 아이 (6)

- back  
  - 뒤 (6)

- back  
  - 뒤틀림 (14)

- bite  
  - 입 (6)

- blackboard  
  - 함수 (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Korean Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>나쁜 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad mood</td>
<td>기분 (이) 나쁜 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag</td>
<td>가방 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ballpoint pen</td>
<td>빨펜 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>은행 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banker</td>
<td>은행원 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>술집 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseball</td>
<td>야구 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bathroom</td>
<td>화장실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>있 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (honorific)</td>
<td>나 (는) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be better</td>
<td>나 (는) (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be introduced</td>
<td>초대 (를) 받 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be invited</td>
<td>초대 (를) 받 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be sure to</td>
<td>필요 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be (same as, equal to)</td>
<td>필요 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beach</td>
<td>비치 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Because (sentence-initial)</td>
<td>때문에 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because of</td>
<td>때문다 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>되 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beer</td>
<td>맥주 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>전에 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before anything else</td>
<td>우선 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before anything else</td>
<td>먼저 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>시작 (을) 하 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>처음 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>뒤 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>아래 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below</td>
<td>밑 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beside</td>
<td>옆 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>사이 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beverage</td>
<td>음료수 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bicycle</td>
<td>자전거 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill (in a restaurant)</td>
<td>계산서 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill (counter)</td>
<td>마리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday</td>
<td>생일 (11), 생신 (honorific) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>무르 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blackboard</td>
<td>칠판 (5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| black tea    | 홍차 (12) |
| bloom        | 꽃 (12)  |
| blossom      | 꽃 (12)  |
| book         | 책 (5)    |
| bookstore    | 서점 (6)  |
| boots        | 부츠 (9)  |
| bored        | 심심하다 (12) |
| boring       | 재미 없 (9) |
| born         | 태어나 (11) |
| both         | 둘 다 (13) |
| bottle       | 병 (11)   |
| bottom       | 밑 (6)   |
| bound for    | 권 (11)   |
| bound volumes (counter) | 상자 (11) |
| box          | 상자 (11) |
| boyfriend    | 남자친구 (6) |
| bread        | 빵 (7)   |
| breakfast    | 아침 (7)  |
| briefcase    | 가방 (6) |
| bright       | 빛 (14) |
| bright       | 빛 (14) |
| bring        | 갓다짜 (14) |
| Briton       | 영국 사람 (5) |
| brother (boy’s older) | 형 (13) |
| brother (girl’s older) | 오빠 (12) |
| brothers (for males) | 형제 (12) |
| brother and sister | 남매 (13) |
| brothers and sisters | 형제 (12) |
| brush (teeth) | 늦 (9) |
| building     | 건물, 빌딩 (6) |
| buildings (counter) | 채 (11) |
| bus          | 버스 (8)  |
| bus          | 버스 (8)  |
| bus stop     | 정류장 (14) |
| business     | 일 (7)   |
| business     | 사업 (9) |
| business     | 영업 (14) |
| business card| 명함 (9)  |
| busy         | 바쁘 (7) |

_E-K Vocabulary / 333_
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>But (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>그린데 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>But (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>그렇지만 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>사- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by oneself</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>혼자[서] (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By the way</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>그린데 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cafe</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>캤프스 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cafeteria</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>식당 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>campus</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>캐나디아 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canadian person</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>캐나다사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>자동차, 차 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>차 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoon</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>만화 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>상자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>고양이 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch (something said)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>알아들- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chair</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>의자 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chalk</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>분필 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change (clothes)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>바라- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change, exchange</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>애기, 이야기 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>이야기(를) 하- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>세- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check (in a restaurant)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>계산서 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>상자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>아이 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>애 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children (honorific)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>자녀분, 자제분 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>중국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese language</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>중국말 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese person</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>중국사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church (Catholic)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>성당 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church (Protestant)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>교회 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cigarette(s)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>담배 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinema</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>극장 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>도시 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city center</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>시내 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City Hall</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>시청 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>반 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classroom</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>교실 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>깨끗하다- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaners</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>청소(를) 하- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean up</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>깨끗이 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleanly</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>깨끗이 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>가까ww- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close it</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>덜- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>옷 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coat</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>코트 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>커피 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cola</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>콜라 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>추w- (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>college</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>대학 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comb</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>빗 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>오- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come (riding)</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>타고오- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come back</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>돌아오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>내려오- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come in</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>들어오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on foot</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>건태오- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>나오- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>올라오- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comedy</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>코미디 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>편히 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortably</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>편히 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comic</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>만화 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>회사 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company employee</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>회사원 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company president</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>사장 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concert</td>
<td>한국말</td>
<td>음악회 (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-K Vocabulary / 334
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consulate</td>
<td>영사관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact</td>
<td>연락(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact</td>
<td>통화-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contact lenses</td>
<td>웹즈</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convenient</td>
<td>편하게-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conveniently</td>
<td>편히-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conversation</td>
<td>회화(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>요리(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>요리-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copula</td>
<td>-이-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>맞-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corridor</td>
<td>목도-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>값(9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost money</td>
<td>돈(이) 드- 놀- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country</td>
<td>나라(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>countryside</td>
<td>사찰(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td>사촌(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (boy or girl's</td>
<td>사촌동생(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>younger cousin</td>
<td>사촌누나(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (boy's older</td>
<td>사촌형(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>female cousin</td>
<td>사촌언니(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (boy's older</td>
<td>사촌형(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male cousin</td>
<td>사촌언니(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin (girl's older</td>
<td>사촌형(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>female cousin</td>
<td>사촌언니(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream</td>
<td>크림(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cream (fresh)</td>
<td>생크림(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creamer (nondairy)</td>
<td>프리마(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit card</td>
<td>신용카드(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuisine</td>
<td>전(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cupfuls (counter)</td>
<td>손님(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer</td>
<td>자료(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>까- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut (hair)</td>
<td>에쁘- (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cute</td>
<td>쌩(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>춤(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date</td>
<td>데이터(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>딸(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter (honific)</td>
<td>딸님(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter-in-law</td>
<td>며느리(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dawn</td>
<td>새벽(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>날(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day after tomorrow</td>
<td>오레(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day before yesterday</td>
<td>그리께(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>days (counter)</td>
<td>일(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daytime</td>
<td>낚(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>degree of temperature</td>
<td>도(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>맛(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>내가(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>department store</td>
<td>백화점(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descend</td>
<td>내리(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desk</td>
<td>책상(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>죽(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die (honific)</td>
<td>돌아가시(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>다르(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>힘(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diligently</td>
<td>어려워(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dining room</td>
<td>식당(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diplomat</td>
<td>외교관(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction</td>
<td>쪽(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction</td>
<td>편(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty dishes</td>
<td>설거지(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike it</td>
<td>싫어하(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disliked</td>
<td>싫(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant</td>
<td>멀어(를) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distasteful</td>
<td>싫(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divorce</td>
<td>이혼(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>하(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do (it) well</td>
<td>잘하(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do laundry</td>
<td>세탁(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do the dishes</td>
<td>싫지않(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doctor</td>
<td>의사(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>개(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dollar</td>
<td>달러(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dollar (counter)</td>
<td>화폐(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>door</td>
<td>문(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormitory</td>
<td>기숙사(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (man’s)</td>
<td>장인 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (man’s) (elegant)</td>
<td>장인어른 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman’s, 시아버지 (13)</td>
<td>시아버지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law (woman’s)</td>
<td>부친 (여자) (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor</td>
<td>부탁 (을) 하- (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel sorry</td>
<td>미안하- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feelings</td>
<td>기분 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetch (money)</td>
<td>찾- (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few</td>
<td>적- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiancée</td>
<td>약혼자 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>영화 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>찾- (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finger</td>
<td>손가락 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>끝내- (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish it</td>
<td>마치- (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire</td>
<td>불 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first (of all)</td>
<td>먼저 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>첫 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first of all</td>
<td>우선 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first-year student</td>
<td>일학년 (생) (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fish (counter)</td>
<td>마리 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat objects (counter)</td>
<td>장 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor above</td>
<td>위층 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor below</td>
<td>아래층 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor, story (counter)</td>
<td>층 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flower</td>
<td>꽃 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>음식 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>발 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footgear</td>
<td>신발 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the duration of</td>
<td>동안 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the most part</td>
<td>주로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for (a week, etc.)</td>
<td>동안 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign cigarettes</td>
<td>양담배 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign country</td>
<td>외국 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign language</td>
<td>외국어 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreigner</td>
<td>외국 사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>잊어버리- (11)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

forgive

생서 (를) 하- (11)

France

프랑스 (5)

French language

프랑스말; 불어 (5)

French person

프랑스 사람 (5)

discream

요요일 (7)

friend

친구 (5)

don’t be very far from a distance

앞 (6)

fruit

파일 (11)

full

부르- (12)

full (stomach)

부르- (7)

fun

줄거 워- (9)

garden

정원 (9)

gate

문 (6)

german

독일 사람 (5)

German language

독일말; 독어 (5)

Germany

독일 (5)

get

받- (7)

get a haircut

머리(를) 자르- (females), 머리(를) 감- (males) (8)

get across (message)

통하- (13)

get along

지내- (7)

get (money) from

착- (9)

get better

나(다) - (7)

get drunk

취하- (14)

get engaged

약혼(을) 하- (12)

get hurt

다치- (14)

get in touch

연락(을) 하- (9)

get introduced

소개(를) 받- (14)

get invited

초대(를) 받- (14)

get tipsy

취하- (14)

get up

일어나- (7)

gift

선물 (14)

ginseng

인삼 (5)

ginseng wine

인삼주 (5)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>girlfriend</td>
<td>여자친구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>주-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give (honorific)</td>
<td>드리-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>given name</td>
<td>이름</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasses</td>
<td>안경</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloves</td>
<td>장갑</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glue</td>
<td>풀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go (riding)</td>
<td>타고가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go (and come back)</td>
<td>갔다오-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>돌아가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down</td>
<td>내려가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go in</td>
<td>들어가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on a regular basis</td>
<td>다시</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on foot</td>
<td>걸어가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>나가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go sight-seeing</td>
<td>구경(을) 가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go up</td>
<td>올라가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go viewing</td>
<td>구경(을) 가-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golf</td>
<td>골프</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>좋-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good by nature, good</td>
<td>착하다-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good-looking</td>
<td>잘 생겼-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good mood</td>
<td>기분(이) 좋-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good night, (polite, but not honorific)</td>
<td>좋다요, (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good(s)</td>
<td>제품</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goods</td>
<td>물건</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>graduate</td>
<td>졸업(을) 하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandchild(ren)</td>
<td>손주(아이)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>granddaughter</td>
<td>손녀(딸)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather (honorific)</td>
<td>할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather (mother’s side)</td>
<td>외할아버지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother</td>
<td>할머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother (honorific)</td>
<td>할머님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother (mother’s side)</td>
<td>외할머니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandparents</td>
<td>조부모</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandson</td>
<td>손자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great East Gate</td>
<td>동대문</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great South Gate</td>
<td>남대문</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grocery shopping</td>
<td>장(을) 보-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>손님</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>머리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>반</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hallway</td>
<td>복도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamburger</td>
<td>햄버거</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>손</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handsome</td>
<td>잘 생겼-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat</td>
<td>모자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>입-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>머리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health</td>
<td>건강</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy</td>
<td>건강하-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>들-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>마음</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>무거워-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hello!</td>
<td>여보세요!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>도와주-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>여기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hey there!</td>
<td>제가요!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his wife</td>
<td>부인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>치-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit the mark</td>
<td>맞-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>드-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>집</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
<td>숙제</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>홍콩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot</td>
<td>더</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot dog</td>
<td>핫도그</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel</td>
<td>호텔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel</td>
<td>여관</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hours (counter)</td>
<td>시간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>집</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house (honorific)</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**E-K Vocabulary** /338
| **how about it?** | 12 | **어때요?** | 12 |
| **how is it?** | **얼마** | 12 |
| **how many?** | 6 | **얼마** | 11 |
| **how many?** | 7 | **얼마나** | 11 |
| **how much (about)?** | 6 | ** 얼마** | 6 |
| **how much?** | ** testim?** | 12 |
| **hurt** | 14 | **남편** | 5 |

**I**

| **I don't really know.** | 9 | **나** | 5 |
| **Let me think.** | **얼음** | 12 |
| **ice** | **냉커피** | 12 |
| **ice coffee** | **아이스크림** | 12 |
| **ice cream** | **빙수** | 12 |
| **ice slush** | **냉수** | 12 |
| **ice water** | **그러면** | 5 |
| **If so (sentence-initially)** | **수입물** | 5 |
| **imported goods** | **광장** | 9 |
| **impressive** | **이따가** | 7 |
| **in a while** | **사실** | 9 |
| **in fact** | **실은** | 9 |
| **In fact (sentence-initially)** | **그러면** | 5 |
| **In that case (sentence-initially)** | **그럼** | 5 |
| **In that case (sentence-initially)** | **그렇게** | 13 |
| **in that way** | **어떻게** | 13 |
| **in what way?** | **불편하다** | 14 |
| **inconvenient** | **시험** | 13 |
| **in-law's home (honorific, for females)** | **싸** | 8 |
| **inexpensive** | **다치** | 14 |
| **injure oneself** | **여관** | 9 |
| **inn** | **냉** | 12 |

| **inside** | **안** | 6 |
| **inside** | **속** | 6 |
| **institution (counter)** | **군데** | 11 |
| **intelligent** | ** 똑똑하-** | 12 |
| **intelligent** | **머리 (가) 좋-** | 14 |
| **interesting** | **채미 있-** | 9 |
| **interestingly** | **채미있게** | 9 |
| **introduce** | **소개(을) 하-** | 14 |
| **invite someone** | **초대(를) 하-** | 14 |
| **Is it true?** | **정말이에요?** | 8 |
| **It doesn't work.** | **안 되어요.** | 8 |
| **It won't do.** | **안 되요.** | 8 |
| **It works.** | **해요.** | 8 |
| **It'll do.** | **해요.** | 8 |
| **It's acceptable.** | **해요.** | 8 |
| **It's going well.** | **잘 되요.** | 8 |
| **It's no good.** | **안 되요.** | 8 |
| **It's not acceptable.** | **안 되요.** | 8 |
| **It's not going well.** | **잘 안 되어요.** | 8 |
| **It's OK.** | **해요.** | 8 |
| **It's turning out well.** | **설** | 8 |
| **item (counter)** | **개** | 11 |

| **Japan** | **일본** | 5 |
| **Japanese language** | **일본말; 일어** | 5 |
| **Japanese person** | **일본사람** | 5 |
| **jacket** | **자켓** | 9 |
| **jazz** | **체스** | 12 |
| **jeans** | **청바지** | 9 |
| **juice** | **쥬스** | 8 |
| **jumper (sweater)** | **세타** | 9 |
| **junk** | **염터리** | 11 |
| **just (as one is)** | **그냥** | 13 |
| **just (below, above)** | **바로** | 6 |
| **just a moment ago** | **방금** | 9 |
| **just a moment ago** | **아까** | 13 |
| **just now** | **방금** | 9 |
karaoke box
kind (counter)
kitchen
Kleenex™
knee
know it
Korea
Korea University
Korean language
Korean language
Korean mile (counter)
Korean monetary unit
Korean person
Kwanghwa Gate
language
large
last
last year
late
late (adverb)
later
launder
laundromat
laundry
learn
leave
left side
left side
leg
lesson
letter
library
lie down
lift

드-르- (14)
가벼워- (12)
불 (7)
라이타 (6)
좋아하- (8, 12)
그렇게 (13)
저렇게 (13)
이렇게 (13)
좋- (12)
들- (7)
작- (7)
조금 (7), 좀 (8)
사-르- (7)
마루 (13)
런던 (8)
보- (7)
찾- (7)
사랑 (8)
사랑(을) 하- (8)
아래 (6)
허리 (14)
점심 (7)
아주머니 (13)
아줌마 (13)
대 (11)
장지 (5)
부처- (9)
정문 (6)
주로 (8)
전공(을) 하- (8)
연락(을) 하- (9)
예약(을) 하- (8)
남자 (6)
제품 (5)
많- (7)
많이 (7)
market
marry
match(es)
materials (written)
matter
matter to take care of
maybe
may be (more than)
meal (honorary)
meat
medicine
meet
members of the
metro
midway
middle
milk
mind
minutes (counter)
missionary
mister (any man
enough to be
married)
moment
Monday
money
month
month names
mood
more
Moreover (sent
initially)
morning
most
mostly
mother
mother (honori-
mother-in-law (14)

E-K Vocabulary / 340
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>market</td>
<td>시장 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry</td>
<td>결혼 (울) 하 - (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match(es)</td>
<td>성냥 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>materials (written)</td>
<td>자료 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matter</td>
<td>일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matter to take care of</td>
<td>용무 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maybe</td>
<td>아마 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maybe (more tentative)</td>
<td>아마도 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meal (honoris)</td>
<td>진지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meat</td>
<td>고기 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicine</td>
<td>약 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>만나 - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>members of the family</td>
<td>식구 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metro</td>
<td>지하철 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>midway</td>
<td>중간, 중간에 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>중간 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>우유 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind</td>
<td>마음 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minutes (counter)</td>
<td>분 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missionary</td>
<td>선교사 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mister (any man old enough to be married)</td>
<td>아저씨 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moment</td>
<td>잠깐 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>월요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>돈 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month</td>
<td>달 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month (counter)</td>
<td>개월 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month names</td>
<td>월 (달) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mood</td>
<td>기본 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more</td>
<td>더 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moreover (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>또 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morning</td>
<td>아침 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>most</td>
<td>가장, 제일 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mostly</td>
<td>주로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>어머니 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother (honoris)</td>
<td>어머님 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law (man's)</td>
<td>장모 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mother-in-law (woman's)</td>
<td>시어머님 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>산 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie</td>
<td>영화 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie actor</td>
<td>영화배우 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movie theatre</td>
<td>극장 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mow (grass)</td>
<td>깎 - (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much</td>
<td>많 - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music</td>
<td>음악 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>이름 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>namecard</td>
<td>명함 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>나라 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national</td>
<td>국립 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>national university</td>
<td>국립대학교 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>가까워 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neatly</td>
<td>깨끗이 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necktie</td>
<td>넥타이 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighborhood</td>
<td>동네 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td>조카 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nevertheless (sentence-initially)</td>
<td>그래도 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>새 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>뉴욕 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>뉴스 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>신문 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next to</td>
<td>다음 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next to</td>
<td>옆 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next year</td>
<td>내년 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>좋은 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niece</td>
<td>조카 딸 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>night</td>
<td>밤 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nondairy creamer</td>
<td>프리마 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nonexistent</td>
<td>없 - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noon</td>
<td>낮 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normally</td>
<td>보통 (7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
nose
not exist
not have
not interesting
not know
not particularly
not yet
notebook
now
now (finally)
nowadays
number
number one

opp
opposite
or
orange juice
order
order (at restaurant)
other
our
outside
over
over there

pack (of cigarettes)
painful
pair [of shoes, etc.]
paper
paper bag
parents
parents-in-law (man's)
parents-in-law (for females)
parents-in-law's home for females, honorific
park
(particularly)
part-time student work
party
pass away
passionate(ly)
past
pay
pen
pen (ballpoint)
pencil
people (counter)
people (counter)
people (honorific counter)
person
person (counter)
person (honorific)
person born in and such a
Ph.D. (Dr.)
physician
piano
pibimpap
picture
pizza
place
place (counter)
place it
platform
play
play
play baseball
play golf
play piano
play tennis
pleasant
please (to soften request)
P.M.
polish
political science
politics
popsinger
portion (of food)
present
pretty
price
private university
private(-ly established

E-K Vocabulary / 342
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>person (counter)</td>
<td>명 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person (honorable)</td>
<td>-봉 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person born in such-and-such a year</td>
<td>년생(이예요) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ph.D. (Dr.)</td>
<td>박사 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physician</td>
<td>의사 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>피아노 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pibimpap</td>
<td>비빔밥 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picture</td>
<td>그림 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pizza</td>
<td>피자 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>곳 (5), 데 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place (counter)</td>
<td>군데 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place it</td>
<td>놓 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>플랫폼 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>연극 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>노르 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play baseball</td>
<td>야구(를) 하 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play golf</td>
<td>골프(을) 치 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play piano</td>
<td>테니스(를) 치 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td>줄기 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant</td>
<td>쓰 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please (to soften a request)</td>
<td>오로 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>닦 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polish</td>
<td>정치학 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political science</td>
<td>정치 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td>가수 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop singer</td>
<td>인분 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portion of food</td>
<td>부처 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post it</td>
<td>우체국 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post office</td>
<td>감자깡 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato chips</td>
<td>감자 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato(es)</td>
<td>파운드 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pour (rain)</td>
<td>쏟아지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>선물 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>예쁘 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>값 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private university</td>
<td>사립대학교 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private(-ly established)</td>
<td>사립 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probably</td>
<td>아마 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>probably (more tentative)</td>
<td>아마도 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>problem</td>
<td>문제 (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>professor</td>
<td>교수 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>program on TV</td>
<td>프로 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>province</td>
<td>주 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provincial(-ly established)</td>
<td>주립 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulgogi</td>
<td>불고기 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in</td>
<td>넣 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in (sugar)</td>
<td>타 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put it</td>
<td>놓 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>입 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on (a tie)</td>
<td>메 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>바로 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>빨리 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quite something</td>
<td>정말하 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td>비 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rainy season</td>
<td>장마 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rainy season sets in</td>
<td>장마(가) 지 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>읽 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>보 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Really?</td>
<td>정말이에요? (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>really</td>
<td>정말로 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>really</td>
<td>창 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive</td>
<td>받 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refectory</td>
<td>식당 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative</td>
<td>친척 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request</td>
<td>부탁(을) 하 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>research</td>
<td>연구 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reservation</td>
<td>예약 (8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sleep  sleep (honorific)  slow  smart  smoke  snacks to go with alcohol  sneakers  snow  so  So, what I mean to say is  socks  soldier  solve it  some  some time ago  sometime or other  sometimes  son  son (honorific)  son-in-law  song  sorry  speak  specialization  speech (honorific or humble)  spend (time)  spicy  spine  spiritual center  sports  sports  sports stadium  spring  squid  squid chips  stand  starch  starch it  start term/school  state  state university  state (established)  station  stay  stay (honorific)  still  stomach  stop  stop (bus)  stop (on-line)  store  story  straight  strange  street  strength  strike  stroll  student  student union (building)  study  subject  suburb(s)  subway  suddenly  sugar  suit  summer  Sunday  supermarket  supper  surname  surname (honorific)  sweater  swim  swimming pool
trade
trading company
train
train station
tree
trousers
truly
Tuesday
turn out a certain way
ugly
umbrella
uncle (father's elder brother)
uncle (father's sister's husband)
uncle (father's younger brother)
uncle (mother's sister's husband)
uncle (father's side)
uncle (mother's side)
uncomfortable
underneath
underground
understand something
said
undo it
unit (counter)
university
unmarried
upstairs
USA
use it
usually
무역 (9)
무역회사 (9)
기차 (7)
역 (6)
나무 (6)
바지 (9)
정말 (로) (8)
참 (8)
화요일 (7)
생기 (9)
못 생겼 (9)
우산 (5)
큰 아버지 (13)
고모부 (13)
작은 아버지 (13)
이모부 (13)
상촌 (13)
외상촌 (13)
불편하 (14)
밀 (6)
지하철 (12)
앞아들 (8)
무 - 르 (14)
개 (11)
대학 (6)
미혼 (이에요) (13)
위 (6)
위층 (9)
미국 (5)
쓰 (8)
보통 (7)
방학 (11)
가지 (11)
여리 (11)
차 (7)
대 (11)
아주 (7)
평강 (하) (14)
너무 (8)
평강 (하) (14)
근처 (6)
구경 (을) 하 (7)
하리 (14)
기다리 (7)
걸 (12)
걸어오 (12)
걸어가 (12)
산보 (들) 하 (7)
싶 (9)
설것이 (들) 하 (13)
화장실 (6)
시계 (9)
물 (7)
길 (11)
우리 (5)
입 (7)
배 (9)
차 (9)
쓰 (13)
신 (9)
가 (9)
가 (13)
날씨 (13)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Korean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>수요일 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week</td>
<td>주일 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>week (counter)</td>
<td>주간 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weekend</td>
<td>주말 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>잘 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>western spirits</td>
<td>양주 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what kind of?</td>
<td>무슨 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>what NOUN?</td>
<td>어느 NOUN? (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What's more</td>
<td>무엇, 무엇 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initially</td>
<td>언제 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when?</td>
<td>어디 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where?</td>
<td>어느 NOUN? 무엇 NOUN? (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which?</td>
<td>어디가 (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while (in a while, a while later)</td>
<td>양주 (12); 위스키 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whiskey</td>
<td>누가 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who? (as subject)</td>
<td>누구 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who? (nonsubject)</td>
<td>전부 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whole thing</td>
<td>왜 (요) ? (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>why</td>
<td>아내, 집사람 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife (my)</td>
<td>사모님 (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife (elegant/honorific)</td>
<td>부인 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td>창문 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine</td>
<td>와인 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winter</td>
<td>겨울 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>withdraw (money)</td>
<td>찾 - (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without doing anything</td>
<td>그냥 (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without fail</td>
<td>꼭 (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>여자 (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>words</td>
<td>말 (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>words (honorific or humble)</td>
<td>말씀 (8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>일 (을) 하 - (7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>걱정 (을) 하 - (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>쓰 - (7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*E-K Vocabulary / 348*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Pattern</th>
<th>English Gloss</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가~이</td>
<td>subject/focus particle</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갈아요</td>
<td>be like something</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>같이</td>
<td>like; together</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-겠-</td>
<td>future-presumptive base; inferential</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-고 싶어요</td>
<td>want to, wish to, would like to</td>
<td>9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-고 있어요</td>
<td>progressive (is doing)</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과~와</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과~와 같이</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과~와 함께</td>
<td>(together) with</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>까지</td>
<td>as far as; by; until; up to</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>께</td>
<td>honorific에게~한테</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>께서(는)</td>
<td>honorific이~가</td>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| -나~이나 | generalizer (any/every); about,; approximately; or, or something; as many as, as much as | 12.6.2 |
| -는~은 | topic/contrast Particle | 14.2 |
| -니(가)~-오니(가) | sequential ending (as, because, since; when [I realized]) | 13.1 |
| 특별한 자음 기본형 | 7.4 |
| 사전 표 | 7.3 |
| 또한, 또한, 토, [not] 또한, 토 | 5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6 |
| 복수 표시자 | 6.8 |
| 다시, 그리고, 그리고; 그리고 다시; 무엇보다 (imuth) | 12.6 |
| -(으) -(으) | (direct) 목적어 표 | 7.6 |
| 일반자음 기본형 | 7.4 |
| 특별한 모양 | 7.5 |
| -(으) -(으) | probable future (is going to, will, probably) | 13.4 |
| -(으) -(으) | thinking of doing | 12.5 |
| -(으) -(으) | suggestions/tentative questions (do you suppose? how about? I wonder: do(es)? Shall I/we?) | 12.4 |
| -(으) -(으) | wanna form (feel like, have a mind to, would like to) | 12.8 |
| -(으) -(으) | and | 8.6 |
| -(으) -(으) | (together) with | 9.3 |
| -(으) -(으) | purposive ending (for the purpose of, intending to, with the intention to) | 9.5 |
| -(으) -(으) | instrumental particle | 8.5 |
| -(으) -(으) | (direct) 목적어 표 | 7.6 |

K-E Pattern Glossary/350
Each; every 11.3
Just; only 11.3
Negative marker (cannot, not) 8.1

Special consonant base 7.4
Formal question 11.5
Formal statement 11.5
Formal suggestion 11.5
Only 14.1
From 11.4

Special consonant base 7.4
Past base 9.1
Past-future (must have done/been) 14.5
Past infinitive 9.1
Past tense, Polite Style 9.1
Past-past 14.5
Dynamic location (at/in); from (places) 7.8
Honorific Polite Style 8.2.1
Formal question 11.5
Formal statement 11.5
Honorific marker 8.2.2
Formal command 11.5
Please do it 14.8
Dislike it 12.9
Formal (honorific) command 11.5
Distributive (apiece, per) 11.3

K-E Pattern Glossary /351
B

-infinitive ending

-negative copula

or

-negative copula

-negative copula

-negative marker (doesn't, not)

past base

past infinitive

past tense, Polite Style

infinitive ending

existence; location; possession

(not be/be, not have/have)

past base

past infinitive

past tense, Polite Style

Static Location (at), Direction

Particle (to)

Direction Particle (to [people])

Direction Particle (from [people])

copula

and

(together) with

(together) with

Polite Style particle

sequential ending (as, because, since; When [I realized])

purposive ending (for the purpose of, intending to, with the intention to)

instrumental particle

honourific Polite Style

honourific marker

formal command

Please do it.

formal (honourific) command

topic/contrast particle

(direct) object particle

K-E Pattern Glossary / 352
probable future (is going to, will probably)

thinking of doing

suggestions/tentative questions (Do you suppose? How about? I wonder: do(es)? Shall we?)

immediate future (Let me)

wanna form (feel like, have a mind to, would like to)

formal suggestion

possessive particle (‘s)

subject/focus particle

generalizer (any/every); about; approximately; or, or something

copula

and

(together) with

_existence; location; possession

(be/not be, have/not have)

as soon as, no sooner than

rhetorical retorts

like it

suspective ending

suppositive ending

negative commands (don’t, let’s not)

Let’s not

long negative

although; but; though

suppositive (isn’t that the case? you know, I guess, I presume, nicht wahr? n’est-ce pas?)

K-E Pattern Glossary/353
K-E Pattern Glossary / 354
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English Gloss</th>
<th>Korean Pattern</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverbs</td>
<td>을</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again (adverb)</td>
<td>도</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>(이)로, (이)가</td>
<td>12.6.2, 12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>although</td>
<td>지만</td>
<td>5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>-이다, -이어요, -입니다</td>
<td>12.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>하고</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and (adverb)</td>
<td>와~과</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any/every</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apiece</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approximately</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>을, (으)니(가)</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as far as</td>
<td>-이다, -이세요, -합니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as many as</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as much as</td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>-자마자</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at (dynamic location)</td>
<td>에서, 서</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at (static location)</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E-K Pattern Glossary / 355
### B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>-이다, -이에요, -입니다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be like something</td>
<td>없어요 ~ 있어요</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>찾아요</td>
<td>9.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>both, and</td>
<td>-(으)니 (가)</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>도, 도</td>
<td>7.11, 12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
<td>-지만</td>
<td>12.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>까지</td>
<td>11.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>좀</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cannot (negative marker)</td>
<td>못</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>casual Polite Style</td>
<td>-지요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copula</td>
<td>-입니다, -이에요, -이다</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dictionary form</td>
<td>-다</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direct object particle</td>
<td>- 를 ~ 울</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction particle (to [people])</td>
<td>한테 ~에게</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction particle (from [people])</td>
<td>한테서 ~에게서</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction particle (to [things])</td>
<td>에</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>direction particle (from [places])</td>
<td>에서</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discovery when</td>
<td>-(으)니 (가)</td>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike it</td>
<td>살아요 ~ 살아해요</td>
<td>12.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you suppose?</td>
<td>-(으)로 까요</td>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn't (negative marker)</td>
<td>안</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't</td>
<td>-지 마- 를</td>
<td>12.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don't you know?</td>
<td>- 살아요?</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dynamic location</td>
<td>에서</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>each</td>
<td>equals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equals</td>
<td>even</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every</td>
<td>existence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### F

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>for the purpose of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal (honorific)</td>
<td>formal comma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal question</td>
<td>formal statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formal suggestion</td>
<td>from</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>from (people)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from (places)</td>
<td>from (places)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future-prescription</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### G

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>generalizer</td>
<td>going and come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>going and come</td>
<td>guess</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### H

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have a minor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a minor</td>
<td>honorific modification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*E-K Pattern Glossary* / 356
5.3 each equals even every existence

6.1

9.4

13.1

7.11, 12.3

12.2.1

11.4

11.3

feel like for the purpose of formal (honorific) command formal command formal question formal statement formal suggestion from from (people) from (places) future-presumptive base

8.1

14.8

5.3

7.3

7.6

7.7

7.7

7.7

13.1

12.9

12.4

8.1

12.2.3

13.5

7.8

generalizer going and coming guess

11.3

5.3

5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6

11.3

6.1

12.8

9.5

11.5

11.5

11.5

11.5

11.4

7.7

7.7

7.7

12.6.2

14.3

14.8

12.8

8.2.2

E-K Pattern Glossary / 357
honorific 에게 ~ 한테
honorific Polite Style
honorific 이 ~ 가
honorifics
honorifics: nouns and particles
how about?

I guess
I presume
I shall/I will
I wonder: do(es)?
I'll bet
immediate future
in (dynamic location)
in (static location)
inferential
infinitive ending
instrumental particle
intending to
intentional
is
is doing
is going to
is like something
is the same as
isn't that the case?

just

kinship terms

E-K Pattern Glossary / 358
L

L - t (ㄹ ~ ㄹ) verbs
L-doubling verbs
L-extending verbs
Let me
Let's not
like
like it
location
long negative
long negative

special consonant base 7.4
special vowel base 7.5

M

manner adverbs
moreover (adverb)
must have done/been

또 12.6
-苁졌- 14.5

N

n'est-ce pas?
negative commands
negative copula
negative honorifics
negative marker
neither, nor
nicht wahr?
no sooner than
not (negative marker)
not either

-E-K Pattern Glossary / 359

-지요 14.8
-지 마-ㄹ- 12.2.3
아니요, 아니에요, 아니다 5.3
12.2.4
안; 못 8.1
도, 도 7.11, 12.3
-지요 14.8
-자 마자 13.7
안; 못 8.1
do 5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object Particle</th>
<th>- 를, 줄~울</th>
<th>7.6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Only</td>
<td>맨 plus affirmative</td>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>밖에 plus negative</td>
<td>14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or something</td>
<td>아니면</td>
<td>12.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>또는</td>
<td>12.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(이)나</td>
<td>12.6.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Base</th>
<th>special consonant base</th>
<th>7.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- 씁은, ]있~/<del>있</del></td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>씁겠~</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-있어/<del>있어</del>, - 씁어~</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-있어-opacity<del>있어, - 씁어</del></td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>씁있~</td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per</td>
<td>-(으)시지요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>들</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polite Style Particle</td>
<td>요</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possession</td>
<td>있어요~있어요</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive Particle</td>
<td>의</td>
<td>5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presume</td>
<td>-(으)르게요</td>
<td>14.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(으)르게요</td>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probable Future</td>
<td>-(으)르 가에요</td>
<td>13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>-고 있어요</td>
<td>13.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promise-like Future</td>
<td>-(으)르께요</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purposive Ending</td>
<td>-(으)리</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*E-K Pattern Glossary / 360*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Realization</th>
<th>13.1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rhetorical retorts</td>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Irregular verbs | 5.5 |
| s-irregular verbs | 7.4 |
| sequential ending | 13.1 |
| shall | 14.4 |
| shall I/we? | 12.4 |
| since | 13.1 |
| stay | 6.1 |
| subject/focus particle | 5.2, 6.6 |
| suggestions/tentative questions | 12.4 |
| suppose | 14.8 |
| suppositive | 14.8 |
| suspective Ending | 12.1 |

| Irregular verbs | 7.4 |
| t ~ 1 (군 ~ 군) verbs | 12.6 |
| then again (adverb) | 12.5 |
| thinking of doing | 12.2.1 |
| though | 9.5 |
| to (in order to) | 7.7 |
| to (people) | 7.7 |
| to (places) | 9.3 |
| (together) with | 9.3 |
| too | 5.4, 7.11, 12.3, 12.6 |
| topic/contrast particle | 5.2, 6.6 |
| types of base and types of future | 14.7 |

*E-K Pattern Glossary/361*
Until
Up to

Verbal nouns (descriptive)
Verbal nouns (processive)

W

W - H verbs
Wanna
Want to
What's more (adverb)
When, [I realized]
Will
Will probably
Wish to
With

With the intention to
Would like to

Y

You know

E-K Pattern Glossary / 362
Lesson Five

Dialogue 1

Chris
Uh, excuse me.

Kim
Oh, Mr. Murphy. Long time no see.

Chris
Mr. Kim, this is my wife.

Eunice
I'm Eunice. How do you do?

Kim
I'm Kim Ch'anggi. How do you do?

Chris
Mr. Kim is my Korean teacher.

Eunice
Oh, I see. Pleased to meet you.

Dialogue 2

Chris
My wife is a piano teacher.

Kim
Oh, really? You're (an) English (person), aren't you, Mr. Murphy?

Chris
Yes.

Kim
Is your wife also English?

Chris
No, she isn't English. She's from Australia (she's an Australia person).

Dialogue 3

Chris
Is this your umbrella, Mr. Kim?

Kim
Yes, it's mine. Thank you.

Eunice
Is this newspaper yours, too?

Kim
No, that's not mine.

Dialogue 4

Kim
Where is that wine from? (As for that thing, what country's wine is it?)

Eunice
(Do you mean) This one? This one is French wine.

Kim
Well then, what is that (thing over there)?

Eunice
Ah, that is an English alcoholic beverage.

Kim
What kind of drink is it?

Eunice
It's whiskey.

Kim
It's all imported stuff, isn't it?

Chris
No. That ginseng wine is a Korean product.
Lesson Six
Dialogue 1

Store Clerk  Welcome! What can I get for you?
Chris  Do you have cigarettes?
Store Clerk  Yes, we do.
Chris  Do you have matches, too?
Store Clerk  No, we don't. We have lighters.
Chris  In that case, please give me some cigarettes and a lighter.
Store Clerk  Shall I give you the American cigarettes?
Chris  No, please give me those Korean cigarettes.
Store Clerk  Yes, all right. Here you are.
Chris  How much is it altogether?
Store Clerk  1000 won.

Dialogue 2

Eunice  Excuse me, Miss, but where's the Plaza Hotel?
Young Lady  The Plaza Hotel? Over there—across from City Hall.
Eunice  Oh, right. In that case, what about the British Embassy?
Young Lady  The British Embassy? It's just behind this building.
Eunice  Thanks.

Lesson Seven
Dialogue 1

Eunice  Hello.
Halmøni  Good morning. Where are you going?
Eunice  I'm off to school.
Halmøni  You're going to school these days?
Eunice  Yes. On Mondays and Wednesdays I go to Korea University. I'm learning Korean at Korea University.
Halmøni  Really? Hurry home!

Dialogue 2

Eunice  Hi, I'm back.
Halmøni  Where do you eat lunch usually?
Eunice  I eat at the school cafeteria.
Halmøni  Do they make good food, there?
Eunice  Yes. They do a good job on the pulgogi and pibimpap. It's very tasty.
Halmøni  Do they sell alcohol, too?
Eunice  Go on, halmøni—since when do they sell alcohol at a school cafeteria?

English Equivalents / 364
Dialogue 3

Chris: Excuse me. Where do they sell tickets for trains to Taejŏn?
ajŏssi: The ticket counter is over there.

Chris: Thanks.

Chris: From what platform does the train to Taejŏn leave?
agassi: It leaves from the first platform.

Chris: How many hours does it take?
agassi: It takes two hours.

Chris: What are you looking for?
agassi: My pen.

Chris: Oh, here it is! Sorry.

Lesson Eight
Dialogue 1

Miss Lee: What are you doing lately?
Eunice: I'm studying Korean.

Miss Lee: Where are you studying Korean?
Eunice: At Korea University.

Miss Lee: Really? What book are you learning from?
Eunice: We're using Korean Conversation. The book's OK.

Miss Lee: Do you also know Japanese?
Eunice: No! I can't speak Japanese. It's too difficult.

Miss Lee: So, you're not doing any other subjects?
Eunice: No. I'm also learning economics and political science.

Miss Lee: Are your Korean language studies going well?
Eunice: No, it's really hard. I have a long way to go.

Dialogue 2

Eunice: Hello?
Operator: Yes, this is the National Theatre. Go ahead.

Eunice: I'd like to make a reservation, please.
Operator: Yes, Ma'am. Please tell me your name and credit card number.

Eunice: Excuse me? One more time, please! Oh, Miss Lee! This is too difficult. I can't catch what they're saying.

Miss Lee: Really? In that case, I'll talk to them.

English Equivalents / 365
Lesson Nine
Dialogue 1

ajössi Uh, how do you do?
Murphy What? Oh—right, hello.
ajössi Oh! You speak Korean! Is this your first time in Korea?
Murphy Yes. Well, in fact, I came last year. I live in Seoul.
ajössi Really? What brought you here?
Murphy I'm here on business. I work in an English company.
ajössi So, how long are you here?
Murphy Well, I don't really know yet.
ajössi Are you American?
Murphy No, I'm English.
ajössi Oh, really? My apologies. I've just arrived from London, too.
Murphy Really? What were you doing there?
ajössi I've also been on business. I work in a trading company.

Dialogue 2
Murphy Did you have a fun weekend, Miss Lee?
Miss Lee Yes. I went to the cinema yesterday with your wife.
Murphy So I heard. Were there lots of people at the theatre?
Miss Lee Yes, it was quite something. There were lots of people, like Namdaemun Market.
Murphy What film did you see?
Miss Lee It was a Korean film.
Murphy I'd like to see a Korean film sometime (once) too. Was the film OK?
Miss Lee It wasn't particularly interesting. So we came out in the middle. After that we went to a tabang to drink tea.

Lesson Eleven
Dialogue 1

Yöngch’öl Eric, where do you live? (Where’s your house?)
Eric In P’yöngch’ang-dong.
Yöngch’öl Really? My, you live in quite a rich neighborhood! Does it take a long time from home to school?
Eric It takes about an hour.
Yöngch’öl How old are you, Eric?
Eric I'm 21. I was born in 1976.
Yöngch’öl Really? That makes us the same age! When’s your birthday?
Eric August 24. Why?
Yöngch’öl Ha! Then that makes you my older brother! (jokingly) Older brother, please take good care of me! Say, what’s your telephone number at home?
Eric 352-1073. By the way, Yöngch’öl, our Korean class is having a party this weekend. Be sure to come.
Dialogue 2

Yŏngch’ŏl  How many people came to the party yesterday?
Eric About fifteen.
Yŏngch’ŏl Really? Did you drink a lot?
Eric We drank about seventy bottles of beer.
Yŏngch’ŏl Did you consume a lot of snacks, too?
Eric Ten squid, twenty packs of potato chips, and a box of apples.
Yŏngch’ŏl What time did it finish?
Eric At 2 o’clock in the morning. Say, why didn’t you come?
Yŏngch’ŏl I’m sorry. I forgot. Please forgive me, older brother!
Eric OK, OK. No problem. Say, what time is it now?
Yŏngch’ŏl It’s 12:35 P.M. It’s already lunchtime! Let’s go eat.

Lesson Twelve
Dialogue 1

Sŏngman What would you like to drink?
Sandy Anything is fine. Shall we have a cup of coffee or something?
Sŏngman (to waitress) Excuse me! Two cups of coffee here, please.
(to Sandy) So, aren’t you bored? What should we do today?
Sandy Hmm, I don’t know. Shall we go to a concert?
Or shall we go see a play?
Sŏngman Let’s not go to a concert. I like plays, but I don’t particularly like music.
Sandy In that case, let’s go see a play. I like plays, too.
Sŏngman But I want to see a Korean play. What do you think, Sandy?
Sandy I don’t really know. I’ve never seen one yet (even once). Let’s see one once!

Dialogue 2

Eric Miss, won’t you join me for a cup of tea or something?
Waitress I’m afraid I’m a bit busy.
Eric In that case, do you have any time this evening? Would you like to go somewhere and have a good time? [without any of the tacky connotations of the English phrase]
Waitress I’m afraid I’m busy in the evening, too.
Eric Really? I see. My apologies. (Eric backs off)
Waitress Just a minute! I’m not busy tomorrow.
Lesson Thirteen
Dialogue 1

Eric: Shall we go someplace else? Or shall we just stay here?
Miss Kwak: It’s cold outside, so let’s just stay here.
Eric: Miss Kwak, do you have many brothers and sisters?
Miss Kwak: I have one older brother and one older sister.
Eric: Are they both married?
Miss Kwak: Just my older brother. They have a son too. My older sister is still single, but as soon as she graduates from college, she’s getting married. What’s your family like, Eric?
Eric: There’s just my mother, my father, and my sister. My sister’s name is Sandy.
Miss Kwak: I hope you don’t mind my asking, but what does your father do?
Eric: He’s with a trading company.
Miss Kwak: Is your father old?
Eric: Yes, he’ll be fifty this September.
Miss Kwak: Oh, go on—he’s still young!

Dialogue 2

Chris: Did you get through to Mr. Nam?
Miss Lee: When I called just a moment ago, nobody answers.
Chris: Oh, that’s right. He probably isn’t there today. It’s Friday, so he’s probably playing golf.

Lesson Fourteen
Dialogue 1

Eunice: Are you going to go downtown today?
Mrs. Kim: Yes. I’m thinking of doing some shopping today. Won’t you go with me?
Eunice: Yes, fine. So what are you going to buy?
Mrs. Kim: There’s not much time left until Christmas, so I want to buy some Christmas presents. Where do you suppose would be best?
Eunice: Probably Tongdaemun Market would be the best, right?
Mrs. Kim: Yes, that’s probably the case. I’ve been there several times, too. The prices of things (there) are very cheap, aren’t they?
Eunice: Yes, it’s very cheap. Well then, shall we get moving?
Mrs. Kim: Just a moment. I’ll just go to the restroom.
Eunice: Hurry up. I’ll be waiting in front of the elevator.
Eunice: So, shall we go? Shall we ride the subway? Or shall we take a taxi?
Mrs. Kim: I want to go in comfort, so let’s take a taxi. I’ll pay.

English Equivalents / 368
Dialogue 2

Kang  Let me introduce a friend to you. This is Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Chris  How do you do? I'm Chris Murphy.
Nam   How do you do? I'm Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Kang  Well then, let's sit down, shall we?
Chris  Is this your first time here (in this establishment)?
Nam   No, I've been here a few times before.
Waitress  What would you like?
Kang  (to waitress) Just a moment. (to Nam) What shall we order?
Nam   Anything at all is fine, but I think I'll have kalbi.
Chris  In that case, I'll have kalbi, too.
Waitress  And you, sir?
Nam   I'll have pulgogi.
Waitress  Right then. Two servings of kalbi and one serving of pulgogi.
Chris  How about beverages?
Waitress  Would you like to imbibe a bit?
Nam   Sure!
Kang, Nam  In that case, why don't you start off by bringing us three bottles of beer.

Dialogue 3

Nam   Hello. Is Chris Murphy in?
Miss Lee Yes he is. What shall I say it is about?
Nam   Beg your pardon?
Miss Lee May I have your name please?
Nam   It's Nam Chu-hyŏng.
Miss Lee Just a moment please.
Chris  Well, well, well! How good to see you! Do come in.
      Please sit down.
      Miss Lee — would you mind bringing us two cups of coffee?
Nam   How have you been keeping all this time?
Chris  Thank you. Nothing special to report. Well then, so what business brings you here?
Answer Key to Written Exercises

Lesson One

Exercise (1): English Equivalents

(1) Is that so? Really?
(2) Thank you.
(3) See you later (Formal).
(4) How are you, Mr. Kim?
(5) Hello (to someone working).

(6) Please come in.
(7) Hello (on the phone).
(8) Excuse me (for what I did).
(9) Pleased to make your acquaintance.
(10) Please come in.

Exercise (2): Korean Equivalents

(1) 만나서 반갑습니다.
(2) 짜고 하셨어요.
(3) 안녕하세요, 이 선생님.
(4) 어서 오세요.
(5) 친만어요.

(6) 시간이 다 됐습니다.
(7) 또 빗쳤습니다, or 또 바요.
(8) 설례하겠습니다.
(9) 안녕히 계세요.
(10) 수고하세요.

Exercise (3): How do you Respond?

(1) 죄송합니다. or 죄해했습니다.
(2) 어보세요.
(3) 처음 빗쳤습니다.
(4) 만나서 반갑습니다.
(5) 그래요?
(6) 안녕하세요.
(7) 들어오세요, 익으세요.
(8) 선생님, 시간이 다 됐습니다.

(9) 설례합니다.
(10) 감사합니다. or 고맙습니다.
(11) 네 or 예/아니요.
(12) 실례했습니다.
(13) 또 바요.
(14) 안녕히 가세요.
(15) 또 빗쳤습니다.

Lesson Two

Exercise (1): Practicing Responses

(1) a (2) b (3) c (4) b (5) a/b/c (6) a/b (7) a/b (8) a (9) b (10) b

Answer Key / 370

Exercise (2): More Practice

(1) d (2) h (3) b

Exercise (3): Reading

(1) 시작할까요?
(2) 설례합니다.
(3) 네, 시작합시다.
(4) 다 같이, 한국 사람입니다.
(5) 질문 있어요?
(6) 책을 보시니까.
(7) 다시 말해 주세요.
(8) 크게 말해 주세요.
(9) 대답하십시오.
(10) 다음 페이지에.
(11) 천천히 말해 주세요.
(12) 모르겠습니다.
(13) 네, 알겠습니다.

Exercise (4):

(1) 김정호
(4) 최홍식
(7) 홍주호
(10) 배경화
(13) 정재훈
(16) 강승자
(19) 심진희

Lesson Three

Exercise (2): More Practice

(1) Kenya
(5) Laos
(9) New Zealand
(13) Thailand
(17) Libya
Exercise (2): Match the Appropriate Response

(1) d (2) h (3) b (4) c (5) i/g (6) f (7) a (8) c (9) c

Exercise (3): Remember the Korean Equivalent

(1) 시작할까요? (14) 그래요?
(2) 잘해합니다. (15) 심분한 접시다.
(3) 네, 시작합시다. (16) 영어로 하시 마세요.
(4) 다 같이 한국말로 하세요. (17) 하나, 두, 세, 넷, 다섯, 여섯,
(5) 질문 있어요? 일곱, 여덟, 아홉, 열
(6) 책을 보지 마세요. (18) (다시) 심분만 접시다.
(7) 다시 말해 주세요. (19) 들길만 하세요.
(8) 크게 말해 주세요. (20) 눈여겨 미안합니다.
(9) 대답하세요. 알겠어요? (21) 첫 페이지를 보세요.
(10) 다음 페이지를 보세요. (22) 따라 하세요.
(11) 천천히 말해 주세요. (23) 감사합니다. or 고맙습니다.
(12) 모르겠어요. (24) 안녕히 가세요. or 안녕히 계세요.
(13) 네, 알겠어요.

Exercise (4): Practice with Korean Names

(1) 김정호 male, (2) 이석현 male, (3) 박은미 female,
(4) 최홍석 male, (5) 장혜경 female, (6) 남경자 female,
(7) 홍진호 male, (8) 허미선 female, (9) 서지선 male,
(10) 배경희 female, (11) 조철민 male, (12) 노호철 male,
(13) 정혜훈 male, (14) 임석춘 male, (15) 오경애 female,
(16) 강승자 female, (17) 안철호 male, (18) 한수미 female,
(19) 심진희 female, (20) 윤철수 male

Lesson Three

Exercise (2): Recognizing Country Names

(1) Kenya (2) France (3) Pakistan (4) Mexico
(5) Laos (6) Greece (7) Iraq (8) Finland
(9) New Zealand (10) Singapore (11) Denmark (12) Netherlands
(13) Thailand (14) Poland (15) Chile (16) Sweden
(17) Libya (18) Brazil (19) Indonesia (20) Canada

Answer Key / 371
Exercise (3): Recognizing Loans from English

(1) radio (2) bus (3) taxi (4) piano
(5) kangaroo (6) toast (7) tennis (8) banana
(9) camera (10) sausage (11) lemon (12) cheese
(13) cake (14) ice cream (15) cassette (16) interview
(17) hotel (18) golf (19) tomato (20) nightclub
(21) television (22) tire (23) computer (24) hamburger

Lesson Five

Exercise (2): Complete the Sentence

(1) 일본 사람 (8) 내 친구 or 저 친구
(2) 한국 가수 (9) 저 사람 or 아내; 저의 사람 or 아내
(3) 은행원 (10) 내 남편 or 제 남편; 우리 남편
(4) 러시아 학생 (11) 중국 외교관
(5) 미국 의사 (12) 영어 선생님
(6) 회사원 (13) 어떤 것
(7) 김 교수님 사모님 (14) 모르겠다
(17) 그 사람 (15) 부인이
(18) 그 집

Exercise (3): Complete the Sentences

(1) 침대 (8) 내 친구 or 저 친구
(2) 끼치 (9) 저 사람 or 아내; 저의 사람 or 아내
(3) 분필 (10) 내 남편 or 제 남편; 우리 남편
(4) 성냥 (11) 중국 외교관
(5) 중국말 신문 (12) 러시아말 책
(6) 신문 (13) 어떤 것
(7) 담배 (14) 모르겠다
(8) 종이 (15) 부인이
(9) 볼펜 (16) 부인
(10) 연필 (17) 전화
(11) 일본말 잎자 (18) 그 집

Exercise (4): Complete the Sentence

(1) 박 박사님 (8) 만호씨 (의) 부인 (의)
(2) 김복동씨 (의) (7) 제 친구 (의)
(3) 그 사람 (의) (8) 수진씨 (의)
(4) 박 박사님 (의) 부인 (의) (9) 남편 (의)
(5) 제 (10) 김사람 (의) or 아내 (의)

Answer Key / 372
Exercise (5): Translation into Korean

(1) 그 것은 박 선생님의 공책이에요? or 그 공책은 박 선생님 것이에요?
(2) 아니오. 박 선생님 것이 아니에요.
(3) 이 우산은 누구(의) 것이에요?
(4) 가수(의) 것이에요.
(5) 장 선생님의 부인은 학생이에요?
(6) 아니오. 학생이 아니에요. 한국말 선생님이에요.
(7) 그 외국학생은 미국인이에요?
(8) 아니오. 미국인(이) 아니에요. 호주인이에요.
(9) 이 성냥은 만호석(의) 것이에요?
(10) 이 공책은 어느 나라(의) 제품이에요?
(11) 저 사람은 중국어교관이에요.
(12) 이 것은 중국어교관의 한국말책이에요.
(13) 어떤 것이 러시아인문이에요?
(14) 모르겠어요. 그런 건이에요?
(15) 모가미 박사님은 일본인이에요.
(16) 본인이 러시아인이에요? 아니오. 러시아인(이) 아니에요.

Exercise (6): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 신문 (2) 은행 (3) 영어 (4) 책
(5) 한국 (6) 회사원 (7) 성냥 (8) 침관

Lesson Six

Exercise (1): Fill in the Blanks

(1) a. 안에 b. 밖에 c. 앞에 d. 뒤에 e. 뒤에
(2) a. 위에 b. 속에 c. 앞에 d. 아래에 e. 오른쪽/편에
(3) a. 에 b. 뒤에 c. 앞에 d. 앞에 e. 근처에

Exercise (2): Sentence Construction

(1) 방 안에 책상이 있어요~없어요.
(2) 집에 텔레비전이 있어요~없어요.
(3) 교실에 선생님이 있어요~없어요.

Answer Key / 373
Exercise (3): Naming Locations

1. Kim Sanchez is on the first floor, left, middle, right, (and) front.

2. The clock is on the second floor, left, middle, right, (and) front.

3. The playground is on the first floor, front, middle, right, (and) back.

4. The garden is on the second floor, front, middle, right, (and) back.

Exercise (4): English to Korean Translation

1. There is a tree in front of the school.

2. What is under the tree? Is it a baby? I don’t know.

Answer Key / 374
(3) Yongjin and his parents are here. Manho is in the next room.
(4) There is a picture beside the desk. What is inside the picture?
(5) How much money does Mr. Ch’oe have?
(6) How much is it? Please give me one thousand won.
(7) There is a newspaper and a magazine on the desk. (There are newspapers and magazines on the desk.)
(8) Where is my notebook? I’m sorry. Please say it again. And please speak slowly.
(9) What buildings are there in the vicinity of the embassy? On the left there is a hotel. And opposite there is City Hall.

Exercise (6): Possession and Plurals

(1) 저는 책을 하고 잠자리에 있어요.
(2) 저는 친구들에게 주세요. 저는 없어요.
(3) 그러나, 한국인들이 없어요?
(4) 이 선생님은 책들이 없어요.
(5) 이 방 안에는 의사들이 있어요?
(6) 이 휴대폰들은 없어요. 그렇지만 친구들은 있어요.
(7) 종이가 없어요? 아니요, 있어요.
(8) 만호씨의 친구는 책들이 없어요? 네, 없어요.
(9) 방 안에 그림들이 있어요? 아니요, 그렇지만 부모님들의 방에는 있어요.

Exercise (7): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 책상 앞에 ______ 이~가 있어요?
   - 펜
   - 공책
   - 연필
   - 문
   - 의자
   - 침대
   가방
   아이
   그림(들)
   책
   침대
   센터

(2) 만호씨 집 근처에 ______은~는 없어요?
   - 학교
   - 공원
   - 회사
   대사관
   백화점
   대학교
   은행
   호텔
   가게

Answer Key / 375
Lesson Seven

Exercise (1): Fill in the Blanks

(1) 집지를, 신문을, 집지도 신문도, 중국책을, 영국신문하고 러시아신문을, 미국잡지를들
(2) 라디오를, 고기를, 휴지하고 수건을, 담배도 성냥도, 공책을, 돈을, 연필(들)하고 종이를
(3) 영화관도 공원도, 의사 선생님하고 의사 선생님의 부인을, 영화를, 집 선생님 부인도 빌 선생님 부인도, 선생님을, 제 친구들_agg, 학생을 많

Exercise (2): Building Sentences from Phrases

(1) 영화관에 (2) 의사 앞에
(3) 박 박사님한테서 (4) 집하고 나무사이에
(5) 집에서 (6) 공원에
(7) 영화관 오른편/쪽에 (8) 아버지한테서
(9) 요즘에 (10) 이 방에서
(11) 아침에 (12) 왼쪽/편에
(13) 제 친구에게 (한테) (14) 매장소에서
(15) 음식점에서 (16) 집에서

Exercise (3): Verb Phrases

(1) 창문을 닫아요. (2) 집지를 와요.
(3) 물을 먹어요. (4) 방에서 놀아요.
(5) 노래를 불러요. (6) 영화극장을 해요.
(7) 낚시 일어나요. (8) 담배를 피워요.
(9) 학교에 가요. (10) 한국말을 말해요.
(11) 영어로 배워요. (12) 의사요리를 가다려요.
(13) 라디오를 들어요. (14) 일해요.

Exercise (4): Korean to English Translation

(1) What are you doing now? I am watching television. Are you watching alone? No, the baby is watching, too.
(2) Do you have a dog at home? Yes, we do. Where is it now? I don’t know. Does the dog play well? Yes, it plays well.
(3) Our dog plays in the park.

Answer Key / 376
(4) Our baby drinks both water and milk well.
(5) What are you doing? I am waiting for my friend.
(6) Where are you going? I am going to the park. I am looking for our dog.
(7) Where are you going? I am going to the restaurant.
(8) Our/ my father works in a bank. He receives a lot of letters at the bank. And he writes a lot of letters at home.
(9) I stay at home on Sundays. What do you do at home? Do you read the newspaper? Yes, and I read magazines, too.
(10) My younger sibling doesn't talk much.
(11) Is the Australian embassy big or small?

Exercise (5): English to Korean Translation

(1) 학교 선생님에게요. 보통 영어를 가르쳐요.
(2) 토요일 아침에는 신문을 읽어요. 그리고 목요일 저녁에는 극장에 가요.
(3) 공부(할) 잘 해요. 많이 배워요.
(4) 밥에는 줄어요.
(5) 도서관은 책이 많아요. 요즘에는 책이 비싸요.
(6) 금요일 아침에는 놀게 일이나요. 우유를 빨리 마셔요. 그리고 학교에 가요.
(7) 이 교수님을 기다려요.
(8) 휴지를 주세요. 수건도 주세요.
(9) 우리 집은 작아요. 그렇지만 좋아요.
(10) 수요일에는 뱅하고 우유를 사요.
(11) 예기는 혼자(서) 놀아요.
(12) 아버지는 노래를 잘 불리어요.
(13) 어머니가 예기를 불리어요. 그렇지만 예기는 자요.
(14) 우리 어머니는 서울에서 살아요. 거기에는 상점하고 백화점이 많이 있어요.
(15) 도서관이 어디에요? 알아요? 네, 저기 식당하고 저 건물 사이에 있어요.
(16) 오늘 저녁에 영화를 봐요.

Exercise (7): Particle Insertion

(1) I watch TV. 을
(2) It tastes good. 이
(3) The baby is coming. 가
(4) I meet a friend. 를
Books are expensive. 
We eat [rice/a meal]. 
I play in the park. 
I get money from my friend. 
We eat [a meal] at the restaurant. 
Students learn Korean in the classroom. 
There is a newspaper on top of the desk. 
There is a train beside the platform. 
A woman is buying a ticket in front of the ticket counter. 
On the weekend I see movies with my boyfriend. 

Exercise (8): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 나는 아침에 _______.
공부(를) 해요, 개하고 놀아요, 산보(를) 해요, 은행에 가요, 신문을 읽어요, 집에 와요, 공원에 가요, 편지를 씀요, 영화구경을 가요, 신문을 팔아요, 집에 있어요, 러시아말을 배워요, 영어로 말해요, 우유를 마셔요, 라디오를 들어요, 영화구경(을) 해요, 담배를 피워요, 개를 찾아요, 중국말을 가르쳐요, 물을 많이 마셔요, 친구를 만나요, 도서관에서 일(을) 해요, 아침을 먹어요, 창문을 열어요.

(2) 나는 _______ 편지를 씀요.
바에, 아침에, 토요일에, 밤에, 금요일 아침에, 화요일에, 일요일에, 목요일에, 오늘 저녁에, 수요일에, 빵, 낱에, 오후에, 월요일 아침에, 자주, 오늘 밤에

Lesson Eight

Exercise (1): Using 안 and 도

Exercise (2): Building Sentences from Phrases

(1) 밥에 (2) 부모님하고 (3) 은행에서 (4) 책상 위에 (5) 펜으로 (6) 대학교에서 (7) 분필로 (8) 회사에 (9) 공원에서 (10) 비행기로 (11) 청절적으로 (12) 정치학교에서 학교에 (13) 개하고 (14) 뉴스 요크로 (15) 다른 기차로 (16) 무엇으로 (17) 영어로서 (18) 내 친구하고 (19) 오른편으로 (20) 오늘하고 내일 (21) 그림 아래에 (22) 향상

Exercise (3): Practice with 안, 못, and -(으)시-

(1) 안 먹어요./못 먹어요. (2) 안 마셔요./못 마셔요. (3) 안 가요./못 가요. (4) 안 좋아해요. (5) 안 차요./못 차요. (6) 안 살아요. (7) 안 빨어요./못 빨어요. (8) 안 써요./못 써요. (9) 잘 안 봐요./못 봐요. (10) 안 나가요./못 나가요. (11) 없어요.

Now repeat the exercise.


Exercise (5): Honorific Questions

(1) 선생님은 은행에서 일하세요?
(2) 선생님은 펜을 잘 사세요?
(3) 선생님은 한국에서 영어를 가르치세요?
(4) 선생님은 아침에 빵이랑 우유를 잡수세요?
(5) 선생님은 교회에 나가세요?
(6) 선생님은 미국 사람이세요?
(7) 선생님은 수영을 안 좋아하세요?
(8) 선생님은 오늘 저녁에 바빠세요?
(9) 선생님은 중국말이 훌륭하세요?
(10) 선생님은 술을 잘 하세요?
(11) 선생님은 많이 못 잡수세요?
(12) 선생님은 친구를 기다리세요?
(13) 선생님은 담배를 안 피우세요?
(14) 선생님은 밤에 임직 주무세요?
(15) 선생님은 런던대학교에서 한국말을 배우세요?
(16) 선생님은 여기(서) 사세요?

Answer Key / 379
Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation

(1) 지금 주부세요? 아니요, 일어나요.
(2) 주말에는 가끔 약을 먹어요.
(3) 머피씨는 부인이랑 수영을 자주 하세요.
(4) 담배를 피우세요? 아니요, 안 피취요.
(5) 어머니한테서 돈을 받아요. 그리고 친구랑 영화를 봐요.
(6) 우리 아버지는 경제학을 공부하셔요. 정치학도 공부하셔요.
(7) 그 학생의 책상 위에는 공책이 있어요. 그리고 받도 항상 깨끗이 청소 (를) 해요.
(8) 루순 과목을 배우세요? 전공이 무엇이에요?
(9) 일요일에는 보통 교회에 가요. 가끔 혼자서 가요.
(10) 비행기로는 못 가세요. 알아요!
(11) 탈리 오세요!
(12) 그 교회에서 오른편으로 가세요.
(13) 시간이 많이 없어요.

Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation

(1) The doctor doesn’t watch television. The children don’t watch television, either.
(2) Our dog doesn’t play in the park. He is always in the house. He is a really good dog.
(3) Do you have a cat? Is it big? She is rather small. Does she often play with other cats? Yes, and she also eats a lot of meat. And drinks a lot of milk.
(4) Usually I go by bus. It doesn’t [Literally: can’t] go very fast.
(5) The hotel is directly across from the American embassy. It is right next to our house.
(6) My husband doesn’t write letters very often (or well).
(7) What does your girlfriend do at home?
(8) Mr. Oh goes to Seoul by train. He always goes to is friend’s house in the evening.

Answer Key / 380
9) My father goes for a walk every day with my mother.
10) These days we have an Australian exchange student living at our house. She is always studying.
11) Kyonghee always gets up early. And she goes to bed late.
12) My room is usually clean. I sometimes study there. But the library is preferable.
13) Professor Pak's wife and Mr. Pae's wife eat lunch together every day.
14) I can't play baseball alone. First I wait for my friends. They live in this neighborhood.

Lesson Nine

Exercise (1): Past Tense

(1) Did you meet your friend?
(2) Which movie did you see?
(3) My mother wrote a lot of letters to her friend.
(4) The dog opened the door.
(5) My father didn't say much.
(6) But he had a lot of friends.
(7) Actually, I wasn't able to eat a lot of meat.
(8) Did your wife read that book, too?
(9) Was the movie good?
(10) The company president gave me a lot of money.
(11) I played in the park with the child.
(12) When did your wife arrive?
(13) I came from the post office.
(14) Who saw us?
(15) When did your younger sibling leave for Australia?
(16) That dog was very big.
(17) I was a student at the University of London.
(18) Professor Pak lived in London.
(19) My gloves were here.
(20) Mr. Kim's daughter was a really nice girl.
(21) What kind of research did you do?
(22) The garden was pretty.

Answer Key / 381
Exercise (2): Using -고 싶어 (해) 요
(1) 나는 세 자동차를 사고 싶어요.
(2) 나는 다른 넷이야를 메고 싶어요.
(3) 서울에 같이 올라가고 싶으세요?
(4) 백시를 부르고 싶어요?
(5) 선생님은 학교에 전화를 걸고 싶어하세요?
(6) 지난 주일에 부산에 내리가고 싶었어요.
(7) 나는 한국사람한테 편지를 쓰고 싶었어요.
(8) 나는 중국말도 배우고 싶어요.
(9) 여기와 같이 놓고 싶어요?
(10) 청바지가 입고 싶어요.
(11) 엽곱 아들은 영화배우가 되고 싶어했어요.
(12) 나는 명함 하나를 받고 싶었습니다.
(13) 신발은 안 빛고 싶었습니다.

Exercise (3): English to Korean Translation
(1) 언제 어디 가셨어요? 시장에 갔었어요.
(2) 언제 밖에 떨.ejb어요 or 하셨어요? 갔었어요.
(3) 언제 밖에 늦게 왔어요? or 왔어요? 아니요, 일찍 왔어요.
(4) 언제 백화점에서 무엇을 샀어요? or 사셨어요? 바지하고 원피스를 샀어요.
(5) 남동생하고 떨ями어요? or 하셨어요? 공원에서 놀았어요.
(6) 언행 앞에서 떨ями어요? or 하셨어요? 어머니한테 전화를 걸었어요.
(7) 비스에 사람이 많이 있었어요?
(8) 우체국을 쉽게 찾았어요?
(9) 담배에서 떨ями어요? or 하셨어요? 휴스를 마셨어요.
(10) 언제 신발을 안 달았어요. 그리고 이도 안 달았어요.

Exercise (4): Purposives
(1) 전화를 걸러 나갔어요.
(2) 우리 맘은 한국어 연구를 하러 한국에 갔어요.
(3) 화요일에 우리 아버지는 신발을 사러 시장에 가셨어요.
(4) 남동생이 토요일에 창갑을 사러 백화점에 갔어요.
(5) 이를 닦으러 화장실에 갔어요.
(6) 학생이 문을 열러 나왔어요.

Answer Key / 382
Exercise (5): Do/Be Like

(1) 그 영화배우는 영국사람처럼 영어를 말해요.
(2) 가수처럼 노래를 잘 불리어요.
(3) 여기는 시장처럼 사람이 늘 많이 있어요.
(4) 저 사람이 누구예요? 글쎄요, 모르겠어요. 만호씨 같아요.
(5) 오늘처럼 내일도 바빠요?
(6) 내 친구처럼 공부를 잘 하고 싶어요.
(7) 가끔 영화배우처럼 웃을 잊어요.
(8) 나하고 내 친구는 가족 같아요.
(9) 그 분들의 정원은 아주 컵니다. 공원 같아요!
(10) 오늘이 좋아요. 주말 같아요.
(11) 저녁에는 이 방은 술집 같아요.
(12) 이 구두를 작년에 샀어요. 그런테 새 구두 같아요.
(13) 이 모자는 그 것과 같아요.

Exercise (6): Fill in the Gaps and Translate

한테 On Sunday Sumi wrote a letter to me.
한테 So on Tuesday I called Sumi.
And we met yesterday.
의/하고/랑 Sumi came with Chaeho.
에서 We went for a walk together in the park.
는 Chaeho didn't have a lot of time. So he went quickly.
의/하고/랑 I went to the cinema with Sumi.
가 The movie was really interesting.

Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation

(1) I went to Seoul to go sight-seeing.
(2) The students all went out to smoke.
(3) Don't you want to go out today? No, I want to go to sleep early.
(4) It was really hot this morning. But on Tuesday it wasn't particularly hot.
(5) The movie wasn't particularly interesting. The movie theatre was too small.

Answer Key / 383
(6) The teacher went out to rest for a minute.
(7) Is the movie finished? It's not finished yet.
(8) Do you want to make a phone call?
(9) Father went out to call a taxi.
(10) They went out to go for a walk in the park.
(11) The dog bit the cat.
(12) Did you eat supper in that new restaurant yesterday? Yes, but the food wasn't that tasty.
(13) I want to go to the bar upstairs.
(14) I did some economics research at university. But it wasn't very interesting.
(15) I went over to (play at) Mr. Yeon's house yesterday.
(16) Where did you go? or Where have you been? I've just come back from the post office.
(17) The movie just finished.
(18) Father, I want you to go to the station to watch the trains.
(19) I want to rest a bit on the weekend.
(20) I want to go to the market for a minute.
(21) I spent a lot of money on these new shoes. [Literally: A lot of money went out on account of these shoes.]
(22) Are we there yet? No, we still have a long way to go.

Lesson Ten

Exercise (1): Find the Misfit

(1) 누구 (2) 지금 (3) 친구 (4) 남편
(5) 문 (6) 미국 사람 (7) 학생 (8) 다
(9) 산보험조 (10) 물 (11) 약 (12) 본절

Exercise (2): Related Words

(1) 박사, 사장
(2) 대학교, 회사, 백화점, 도서관, 식당
(3) 저녁, 밤, 날
(4) 아레, 밤
(5) 캐나다, 중국, 한국, 일본, 호주, 독일
(6) 어머니, 아이, 부모
(7) 마셔요, 이를 닦아요, 학교에 가요

Answer Key / 384
Exercise (3): Fill in the Blanks

(1) 는/에서/을
(2) 는/에서
(3) 가/이
(4) 에/은
(5) 에/에서/을/를
(6)에서/을/하고(과)/를
(7)에서/는/을

Exercise (5): Questions and Answers

(1) 동시장을 공부해요? 아니오, 동시장 공부를 안 해요.
(2) 친구를 기다려요? 아니오, 친구를 안 기다려요.
(3) 자요? 아니오, 안 자요.
(4) 혼자서 살어요? 아니오, 혼자서 안 살어요.
(5) 러시아말을 배워요? 아니오, 러시아말을 안 배워요.
(6) 한국 사람이 있어요? 아니오, 사람이 있어요.
(7) 영말을 찾아요? 아니오, 영말을 안 찾아요.
(8) 일 때문에 왔어요? 아니오, 일 때문에 안 왔어요.
(9) 집에 있어요? 아니오, 집에 있어요.
(10) 영화구경을 해요? 아니오, 영화구경을 안 해요.
(11) 의사예요? 아니오, 의사가 아니예요.
(12) 무역 회사에서 일 해요? 아니오, 무역 회사에서 일을 안 해요.
(13) 명함을 많이 받아요? 아니오, 많이 못 받아요.
(14) 와인을 마셔요? 아니오, 와인을 안 마셔요.
(15) 일본말을 해요? 아니오, 일본말을 못해요.
(16) 선생님이예요? 아니오, 선생님이 아니예요.
(17) 여기 계세요? 아니오, 여기 안 계세요.
(18) 값이 좀 내렸어요? 아니오, 값이 안 내렸어요.
(19) 술집에 자주 가요? 아니오, 술집에 자주 안 가요.
(20) 지금 은행에서 일을 해요? 아니오, 은행에서 일을 안 해요.
(21) 텔레비전을 너무 많이 봐요? 아니오, 너무 많이 안 봐요.
(22) 알아 들어요? 아니오, 못 알아 들어요.
(23) 친구를 자주 일어요? 아니오, 친구를 자주 일어요.
(24) 많이 알아요? 아니오, 많이 몰라요.
(25) 받아 깔끔해요? 아니오, 받아 안 깔끔해요.
(26) 부산에 언제 도착 해요?

Answer Key / 385
Exercise (6): Questions and Answers (Honorific)

(1) 넬레비견을 보세요? (12) 차를 파셨어요?
(2) 방금 나가셨어요? (13) 어디 다녀 오셨어요?
(3) 아이하고 자주 노세요? (14) 가수세요?
(4) 부모님과 같이 사세요? (15) 보통 늦게 주무세요?
(5) 일찍 일어나세요? (16) 사립대학교에서 일을 하세요?
(6) 영화를 보러 자주 가세요? (17) 영어를 배우세요?
(7) 지금 회사에 계세요? (18) 다른 외국어도 하세요?
(8) 주말을 재미 있게 보내셨어요? (19) 명함을 주셨어요?
(9) 한국 틈새요? (20) 일찍 집에 들어오세요?
(10) 대사관으로 전화를 거쳐서요? (21) 공원에서 만나세요?
(11) 중국말을 공부하세요? (22) 보통 회사에 늦게 가세요?

Exercise (8): Opposites

(1) 건물이 커요? 아니요, 작아요.
(2) 문을 열어요? 아니요,닫아요.
(3) 학생이 많어요? 아니요, 적어요.
(4) 김 선생님한테 돈을 빌어요? 아니요, 김 선생님한테 돈을 받아요.
(5) 한국어를 가르치요? 아니요, 한국어를 배워요.
(6) 스웨터를 입었어요? 아니요, 스웨터를 벗었어요.
(7) 일어나요? 아니요, 자요.
(8) 음식이 맛이 있었어요? 아니요, 맛 없었어요.
(9) 차를 팔았어요? 아니요, 차를 샀어요.
(10) 선생님의 말을 잘 들어요? 아니요, 말을 잘 안 들어요.
(11) 장갑이 비쳤어요? 아니요, 쌓이어요.
(12) 보통 집에 있어요? 아니요, 집에 없어요.
(13) 일에 해요? 아니요, 쉬어요.
(14) 방금 떠났어요? 아니요, 방금 도착 했어요.

Exercise (9): Opposites (Honorific)

(1) 건물이 크세요? 아니요, 작으세요. [but odd]
(2) 문을 여세요? 아니요, 닫으세요.
(3) 학생이 많으세요? 아니요, 적으세요.
(4) 김 선생님한테 돈을 주세요? 아니요, 김 선생님한테서 받으세요.
(5) 한국어를 가르치세요? 아니요, 한국어를 공부하세요.
(6) 스웨터를 입으셨어요? 아니요, 스웨터를 벗으셨어요.

Answer Key / 386
Exercise (10): Korean to English Translation

(1) It's time. Let's start.
(2) Is that person a teacher? No, he's a student.
(3) What are you doing (now)? I'm watching the news.
(4) Whose ring is this? It's my ring. Please give it to me.
(5) Where do you study Korean? At Korea University.
(6) Are you going to a restaurant? I'm going to [Literally: play at] a friend's house.
(7) Do you study in the evenings? Yes, sometimes.
(8) I couldn't understand. Please say it in English.
(9) These days I usually get up quite late. And I always go to bed late.
(10) Did you find the house easily? No, it was a little difficult.
(11) Were they all Koreans? No, some foreigners came too.
(12) Do you usually go to bed early? Yes, I usually go to sleep early.
(13) I came as an exchange student. Really? Which country are you from?
(14) Do you speak Japanese as well? I want to learn a bit of Japanese, too.
(15) Aren't you busy this afternoon? I have a favor to ask.
(16) Is it far from here? No, it's not that far. I'll go with you.
(17) Isn't he American? No, he's English.
(18) Is Korean difficult? Yes, it's hard.
(19) Isn't she Manho's girlfriend?
(20) Do you teach Korean? No, I teach English.
(22) There are lots of trees outside my house. They are really pretty.
(23) Who sleeps in the next room?
(24) Is the building next door a restaurant? No, it seems to be a bar.
(25) Do you usually study at school or at home? I study at home. I can't really study at school.
(26) Do you have a dog? Yes, we do. It's very good. We have a cat as well.
(27) Is your father home now? Yes, he is. Please wait a moment.

Answer Key / 387
(28) Where are the children? They are playing in front of the house.
(29) I can’t go and watch a movie today. I’m sorry.
(30) Do you usually eat lunch in the school cafeteria? No, the food is bad (tasting) there.
(31) Did you buy a ticket? No, I didn’t buy [haven’t had a chance to buy] one yet. Where is the ticket booth?
(32) When does the Chonju train leave? And how many hours does it take?
(33) Where have you been? I’ve been to buy new shoes.
(34) How long does it take? It takes two hours.
(35) Where did you learn Russian? I learned it in Russia. Really? How long were you in Russia?
(36) Do you like foreign languages? Yes, I want to learn many foreign languages.
(37) Ewha University, Yonsei University and Sogang University are all in Shinch'on. They are rather far from Seoul National University. They are far from Korea University, too.
(38) Do you usually get up early on Sundays? No, I get up late on Sundays.
(39) Is there a shoe store in this area? Yes, there’s one over there across from the front gate of the university.
(40) Our car is always clean. So it’s like new.
(41) Who are you waiting for? I am waiting for my father and mother.
(42) Usually I go straight home from school.
(43) In the afternoon I’m meeting a friend in front of the post office.
(44) Excuse me, but I have a favor to ask. Yes, go ahead.
(45) Did you eat? No, I haven’t eaten yet.
(46) Take your time (go slowly). You still have lots of time.
(47) Between the market and the post office there are a lot of inns.
(48) Do you usually return home late in the evenings? No, I don’t return late. Usually I come home early.
(49) On Sunday morning I read a book in the garden.
(50) I can’t drink alcohol. And I can’t smoke either. Really? I didn’t know.

Exercise (11): English to Korean Translation

(1) 한국말 선생님이 어디 계세요? 교실에 계세요.
(2) 미국분이세요? 아니세요. 영국 사람이에요.
(3) 여기서 무엇을 하세요? 영국 무역회사에서 일하세요.
(4) 도서관에 한국 신문이 있어요? 네, 있어요.
(5) 부인이 한국에 같이 안 가세요? 아니요, 같이 가요.
(6) 일본말을 배우세요? 네, 일때문에 일본에 자주 가요.

Answer Key / 388
(7) 당신이 있어요? 네, 당신도 서울도 제 책상 위에 있어요.
(8) 너무 재미있어요. 시간이 빨리 갔어요.
(9) 저녁에 잠자리 되었어요? 보통 식물은 먼저 잠이요.
(10) 누구한테서 들었어요? 정말이에요. 남동생한테서 들었어요.
(11) 무서워하고 같이 살아요? 아니오, 시청 근처에 친구하고 살아요.
(12) 펜이 있어요? 미안합니다. 펜도 연필도 없어요.
(13) 무엇을 하세요? 제 평함을 찾아요.
(14) 김 선생님은 담배를 안 피우세요. 술도 안 마시세요.
(15) 오늘 저녁에 영화구경을 같이 못 가요. 너무 바빠요.
(16) 저녁에는 보통 집에 있어요. 그리고 일찍 자요.
(17) 한국에는 정원하고 공원이 많이 있어요? 네, 있어요. 그런데 영국에는 더 많아요.
(18) 김 선생님은 미국에서 외교관들한테 한국말을 가르치셨어요. 그렇지만 지금은 서울에서 사세요.
(19) 학교에서 일본말을 배워요? 아니오, 중국말을 배워요. 그렇지만 말을 아직 잘 못 해요.
(20) 가방에는 종이 있어요? 네, 여기 있어요.
(21) 서울도 담배도 있어요. 있어요?
(22) 집이 크세요? 아니요, 별로 안 커요. 그렇지만 좋아요.
(23) 어제는 아주 즐거웠어요. 다시 가고 싶어요.
(24) 요양이 있어요? 아니요, 개도 요양이도 없어요.
(25) 낮에는 음식에서 일일 해요. 그리고 밤에는 호텔에서 일일 해요. 일 때문에 항상 바빠요.
(26) 저녁에는 이 가게 앞에서 제 친구를 만나요. 그리고 영화구경을 가요.
(27) 보통 공원에서 혼자서 산보를 해요? 아니요, 보통 제 친구하고 해요.
(28) 아침을 아주 일찍 밝어요. 그리고 학교에 가요.
(29) 물을 많이 마셔요. 그런데 고기는 많이 안 먹어요.
(30) 정심을 먹으러 식당에 가요.
(31) 약을 먹었어요?
(32) 어느 것이 더 좋아요? 이 것이 더 좋아요.
(33) 오늘 저녁에는 시간이 좀 있어요.
(34) 친구한테 전화를 걸고 싶었어요.
(35) 그런데 나갔어요.
(36) 가끔 친구들한테 일일 해요.
(37) 그래서 전화를 못 받어요.
(38) 지금 바로 집에 갔다고 싶어요.
(39) 극장 안에는 너무 너무 냉어요. 그래서 스웨터를 벗었어요.
(40) 이를 닦고 싶었어요. 그런데 시간이 없었어요.
(41) 오늘 아침에 어디에 갔다왔어요? 새 청포지를 사려 시장에
Lesson Eleven

Exercise (2): Numerals and Counters

(1) 일곱시, 여덟시 정각, 일곱시 오전, 일곱시 오전 전, 여섯시 반
(2) 여섯시, 잡지 아홉 권, 개 두 마리, 건물 열한 채, 자동차 네 대
(3) 열한시, 열시 사십 오분, 열한시 십분, 아홉시 반, 열두시
(4) 이불, 신문 두 개, 책 열 권, 개 두 마리, 종이 열다섯 장
(5) 두 시간, 오일, 십사일, 여덟 시간 반, 십분
(6) 이일, 십일, 이 주간, 십개월/세달/세달, 여섯 해
(7) 여덟시 십칠분, 여덟시 사십칠분, 여덟시 칠분 전/일곱시 오십 삼분, 일곱시 이십 오분, 일곱시 정각

Exercise (3): Answer the Questions

(4) 십이월에 있습니다.
(6) 여덟시간 반쯤 일했습니다.
(7) 일월달에 시작합니다.
(8) 마흔 한살입니다.
(9) 석달째 입니다.
(10) 열시부터 일을 시작합니다.
(11) 스물네 시간입니다.

Exercise (4): Fill in the Missing Particles

(1) 마디/parms
(2) 부터
(3) 마디
(4) 만
(5) 부터/까지
(6) parms
(7) 부터/까지
(8) 마디/parms
(9) 정각에
(10) 마디/상자/병

Answer Key / 390
Exercise (5): Formal Style

Part One: Easier Verbs
(1) 여기 앉습니다, 앉습니까?, 앉으십시오, 앉으십시오.
(2) 늦게 앉으십시오, 앉으십시오, 앉으십시오, 앉으십시오.
(3) 자기 있습니까, 있습니까?, 있으십시오, 있으십시오.
(4) 친구를 기다립니다, 기다립니까?, 기다리십시오, 기다리십시오.
(5) 여기한테 음식을 줍니다, 줍니다?, 주십시오, 줍니다.
(6) 빠리 시작합니다, 합니다?, 하십시오, 합니다.
(7) 술집에 갑니다, 갑니까?, 가십시오, 갑니다.
(8) 편지를 써나, 써나?, 쓰십시오, 써나.
(9) 교회에 나갑니다, 나갑니까?, 나가십시오, 나갑니다.
(10) 전화를 받습니다. 받습니까?, 받으십시오, 받습니다.
(11) 심부만 접니다, 접니까?, 쉬십시오, 접니다.

Part Two: Trickier Verbs
(1) 라디오를 들습니다, 들습니다?, 들으십시오, 들으십시오.
(2) 택시를 부릅니다, 부릅니까?, 부르십시오, 부릅니다.
(3) 사장님한테 전화를 겁니다, 길니까?, 거십시오, 길니다.
(4) 고기를 굽습니다, 굽습니까?, 구우십시오, 구웁니다.
(5) 줄길습니다, 줄길니까?, (absent), (absent).
(6) 오늘은 찌 떨습니다, 떨습니까? (absent), (absent).
(7) 나는 이사람을 잘 압니다, 알니까?, 아십니다, 압니다.
(8) 한국 음식은 아주 맛입니다, 맛습니까? (absent), (absent).
(9) 밥에 좀 씹습니다, 씹습니까? (absent), (absent).
(10) 내 동생은 서울에서 삽니다, 삽니까?, 사십시오, 삽니다.

Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation
(1) 하루에 세 번씩 이을 닦습니다.
(2) 오랫동안 아주 바쁘다.
(3) 언제까지 있습니까?
(4) 산불을 하러 나갑니다.
(5) 사랑받다 다릅니다.
(6) 언제 만나고 싶습니까?
(7) 아르바이트를 찾으러 왔습니다.
(8) 학생마다 그 신생님을 좋아합니다.
(9) 토요일까지 그 여관에 있었었습니다.
(10) 왜 늦었습니까? 죄송합니다.

Answer Key / 391
Lesson Twelve

Exercise (1): Manipulating -지만

(1) 택시를 불렀지만 아직 안 왔어요.
(2) 아기는 자주 아버지가 못 주무세요.
(3) 음악회는 가치 없지만 연극에는 가요.
(4) 내 아이가 여전히지지만 오심온은 더 살고 싶어요.
(5) 점심때까지 일말 마치고 실었지만 손님이 갑자기 와어요.
(6) 택주는 좋지만 소주는 싫어요.
(7) 지금 잠지를 보고 싶지 않지만 만화는 보고 싶어요.
(8) 양주는 비싸지만, 소주는 싼.
(9) 우리 오빠는 결혼했지만 아직도 슬집에 다녀요.
(10) 선생님을 만나고 싶지만 시간이 없어요.
(11) 돈은 있지만 사고 싶지 않아요.
(12) 나는 영화구경을 가끔 가지만 동생은 잘 가지 않아요.
(13) 나는 돈이 적지만 친구는 많아요.
(14) 김사장은 아들이 없지만 많은 돈이 있어요.
(15) 오빠는 일찍 왔지만 동생은 늦게 왔어요.
(16) 그분의 아버님이 우체국에서 일을 하시지만 편지를 많이 안 쓰세요.
(17) 나는 건에는 학생이었지만 지금은 선생이에요.
(18) 내 약혼자는 나行长에 못을 주었지만 나는 못을 좋아하지 않아요.
(19) 어머니는 부산에 사시지만 담마다 서울에 한 번씩 오세요.
(20) 우리집은 크지 않지만 좋아요.
(21) 아침마다 수영을 하지만, 건강하지 못합니다.
(22) 학생들은 많지만 학교는 작아요.

Exercise (2): Suggestions and Tentative Questions

(1) 집에 돌아갈까요? Shall we go home?
(2) 그 책을 읽을까요? Shall we read that book?
(3) 춤을 춤까요? Shall we dance?
(4) 집에서 옷을 벗을까요? Shall we take off our clothes on the road?

Answer Key / 392
(5) Shall we go by foot?
(6) Shall we go to the music concert together?
(7) Shall we order soju? Or, shall we order draft beer?
(8) Do you suppose my older sister will marry that man?
(9) Shall I listen to that story one more time?
(10) What clothes do you suppose your mother bought at the department store?
(11) Do you suppose Mr. Kim will come with his girlfriend?
(12) Shall we wear Korean clothes?
(13) Shall we live in a different house?
(14) Shall I call a taxi?
(15) Shall I add cream? Or shall I add non-dairy creamer?

Exercise (3): The wanna Form

(1) Do you feel like drinking?
(2) Do you feel like playing tennis?
(3) Do you feel like going to the movies tomorrow?
(4) Do you feel like reading a Korean newspaper?
(5) Do you want to go to our house?
(6) Do you feel like listening to a Korean song?
(7) Do you feel like eating a hamburger quickly or something?
(8) Do you feel like smoking Korean cigarettes? Or Western cigarettes?
(9) Do you feel like waiting for me in the school cafeteria?
(10) Do you feel like meeting in front of the bank on Saturday?
(11) This is difficult. Do you feel like helping me?
(12) Do you feel like leaving tomorrow? Or, the day after tomorrow?
Exercise (4): Long Negatives

(1) 그 여자의 언니는 학교에서 공부를 하지 않았어요. Her sister did not study at school.
(2) 이 상자는 여자에게는 너무 무겁지 않아요? Isn’t this box too heavy for a woman?
(3) 예를 때문에 피곤하지 않으세요? Aren’t you tired because of the kids?
(4) 나는 일본에서 오지 않았어요. I did not come from Japan.
(5) 언니는 나를 많이 가리키지 않았어요? You didn’t wait long for me?
(6) 언니는 담배를 피우지 않았어요. My older sister doesn’t smoke.
(7) 나는 한국말을 한국에서 배우지 않았어요. I did not learn Korean in Korea.
(8) 저 아저씨는 부자 동네에서 살지 않아요. That man does not live in a rich neighborhood.
(9) 아들은 충을 추지 않았어요. My son did not dance.
(10) 아이들은 날마다 학교에 가지 않아요. The children do not go to school every day.
(11) 그 여자는 그 남자와 약혼하고 싶어하지 않아요. That woman does not want to be engaged to that man.
(12) 수미씨는 오후와 같이 라디오를 들지 않아요. Sumi does not listen to the radio with her brother.
(13) 일요일에 나는 성당에 나가지 않아요. I do not go to church on Sundays.
(14) 커피에 설탕이나 크림을 타지 않아요? Don’t you take sugar and cream in your coffee?

Exercise (5): Negative Commands

(1) 책을 보지 마세요. Don’t look at the book.
(2) 여자 친구를 만나지 마세요. Don’t meet your girlfriend.
(3) 술을 많이 마시지 마세요. Don’t drink a lot of alcohol.
(4) 담배를 피우지 마세요. Please don’t smoke.
(5) 그 외자에 앉지 마세요. Don’t sit in that chair.
(6) 얼음 넣지 마세요. Don’t add ice.
(7) 설탕 타지 마세요. Don’t add sugar.
(8) 늦게 들어오지 마세요. Don’t come back late.
(9) 날마다 술집에 다니지 마세요. Don’t go to bars every day.
(10) 그 남자랑 춤 추지 마세요. Don’t dance with that man.
(11) 모레 떠나지 마세요. Don’t leave the day after tomorrow.
(12) 걷어가지 마세요. Don’t go by foot.

Answer Key / 394
(16) Do not go alone. Don’t go alone.
(17) Don’t retire next year. Don’t retire next year.
(18) Don’t give (that person) him your phone number.
(19) Don’t starch this shirt. Don’t wash these pants.

Exercise (6): English to Korean Translation

(1) Don’t go alone. Don’t go alone.
(2) Don’t retire next year. Don’t retire next year.
(3) Don’t give (that person) him your phone number.
(4) Don’t wash these pants.

Exercise (7): Korean to English Translation

(1) Mr. Nam does not like music. My wife does not like it either.
(2) I’m thinking of going for a walk or something in that park over there.
(3) These things are very heavy. Do you feel like helping me?
(4) When did you return home?
(5) I cooked the meat cooked deliciously, but no one ate any.
(6) Yesterday our dog suddenly bit my father.
(7) This cream is expensive, but it is not at all tasty. Do not eat it!
(8) Teacher Kim is pretty like a movie actress.
(9) A. Would you like a cola? Or would you like ice water?
   B. I don’t like either one. Could you give me a beer?
(10) I’m thinking of going to Pusan tonight. Would you like to go with me (together)?
(11) I called many times, but no one answered.
(12) A. What would you like to buy?
    B. I do not want to buy anything.
(13) You speak Korean well. About how many years did you study?
(14) I’m bored. Shall we go to a tabang or something?
(15) A. Do you suppose whiskey and soju are bad for your health?
    B. I’m not sure. Let’s not eat them.

Answer Key / 395
Lesson Thirteen

Exercise (1): Sequential in -(으)니가

(1) 밤에 눈이 왔으니까 골프를 못 했어요. It snowed last night so I won’t be able to play golf.
(2) 저희 아버지가 항상 집에 있으니까 걱정 마세요. Don’t worry—my mom is always at home.
(3) 한국말이 너무 어려우니까 다른 외국어를 학해요. Korean is so difficult. I would like to do a different foreign language.
(4) 오늘 좀 바쁘니까 내일 만날까요? I am a bit busy today, so shall we meet tomorrow?
(5) 나는 중국 사람이 아니니까 중국말은 못 가르칩니다. I am not Chinese, so I can’t teach Chinese.
(6) 영화관 앞으로 나가니까 친구가 빨리 기다리고 있었어요. When I went out to the front of the theatre, my friend was already waiting.
(7) 방 안으로 들어가니까 아무도 없었어요. When I entered the room, there was no one there.
(8) 밤에 나가니까 눈이 오고 있었어요. When I went outside, I found that it was snowing.
(9) 연구실에서 편지를 쓰고 있으니까 일본에서 전화가 왔어요. While I was writing a letter in my [research] office, I got a phone call from Japan.
(10) 서울역에 도착하기가 벌써 밤이었습니다. When I arrived at Seoul station, it was already night.

Exercise (2): -(으)ㄹ 거예요 as Probable Future

(1) 동생은 교회에 갈 거예요. My brother is going to go to church.
(2) 시아버님은 일주일 동안 계실 거예요. My father-in-law is going to stay for a week.
(3) 선생님은 네타이를 벗 거예요. The teacher is going to wear a tie.
(4) 할아버지의 모자를 쓸 거예요. Grandfather is going to wear a hat.
(5) 내일 숙제가 많을 거예요. There will be a lot of homework tomorrow.
(6) 내일 비가 올 거예요. It is going to rain tomorrow.
(7) 오늘 밤에 조카가 올 거예요. Tonight my nephew will come.
(8) 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르칠 거예요. I’m going to teach English in Korea.
(9) 아저씨는 이번 겨울에 가족을 만날 거예요. He will meet his family this winter.
(10) 형은 군인이 될 거예요. My brother will become a soldier.
(11) 내일 아침부터 눈이 올 거예요. It is going to snow from tomorrow morning.

Answer Key / 396
(12) I am going to go to Japan this autumn.

(13) What are you going to give to your nephew?

(14) Mr. Kim is going to get married next year.

(15) My fiance is going to graduate this autumn.

Exercise (3): -(으)르고 there

(1) My uncle is probably living in China.

(2) My father-in-law is probably sleeping now.

(3) It’s probably cold outside.

(4) The weather in England is probably not that good.

(5) My mother-in-law will probably go to church.

(6) That child is probably still young.

(7) His parents are probably not young.

(8) That store is probably close.

(9) The movie theatre is probably too far.

(10) Our daughter-in-law probably speaks English well.

(11) Our daughter-in-law probably speaks English well.

(12) The teacher’s fiance probably likes flowers.

(13) My son-in-law is an American, but he probably speaks a little Korean.

(14) He probably lives in his brother’s house.

(15) The teacher’s son has probably graduated.

(16) My brother is probably exercising.

(17) My uncle probably won’t know that.

(18) He probably lives in his brother’s house.

(19) The movie is probably finished now.

(20) My nephew probably received the letter two days ago.

Answer Key / 397
Exercise (4): Kinship terms and Honorifics

(1) 남동생은 빌에는 골프를 치지만 여름에는 테니스를 치요. 아버님께서는 빌에는 골프를 치시지만 여름에는 테니스를 치셔요.
(2) 남동생은 여제 밤에 일찍 떴지만 오늘 아침에는 일찍 일어나지 않았어요. 아버님께서는 여제 밤에 일찍 주무셨지만 오늘 아침에는 일찍 일어나시지 않았어요.
(3) 남동생은 고기도 잘 안 먹고 물도 잘 안 마셔요. 아버님께서는 고기도 잘 참수시지 않고 물도 잘 안 드세요.
(4) 남동생은 놀았지만 마음은 젖어요. 아버님께서는 겉세가 많으시지만 마음은 젖으세요.
(5) 남동생은 미느리들을 안 좋아하지만 사위는 좋아해요. 아버님께서는 미느리를 좋아하시지 않지만 사위는 좋아하세요.
(6) 남동생은 여제 오전에는 집에 없었지만 지금은 있어요. 아버님께서는 여제 오전에는 집에 안 계셨지만 지금은 계세요.
(7) 남동생은 낚시는 일이 열심히 해요. 밤에는 쉬어요. 아버님께서는 낚시는 일이 열심히 하세요. 밤에는 쉬세요.
(8) 남동생은 작년에 대학교에서 영어를 가르쳤지만 지금은 안 가르쳐요. 아버님께서는 작년에 대학교에서 영어를 가르쳤지만 지금은 가르치시지 않어요.
(9) 남동생은 호텔에서 한 시간동안 기다리셨지만 친구가 안 왔어요. 아버님께서는 호텔에서 한 시간동안 기다리시따지만 친구가 오시지 않았어요.
(10) 여제 남동생은 여동생에게 돈을 줘어요. 여제 아버님께서는 여동생에게 돈을 주셨어요.
(11) 여제 밤에 남동생은 두 시간동안 라디오를 들었어요. 여제 밤에 우리 아버님께서는 두 시간동안 라디오를 들으셨어요.

Exercise (5): English to Korean Translation

(1) A. 우리 가족은 커피, 식구가 많아요.
   B. 호철씨, 형제가 몇 명이세요?
   A. 남동생 네명 하고 여동생 한 명 있어요.
   B. 형님이나 누님이 없으세요?
   A. 네, 없어요. 형도 누나도 없어요.
   B. 호철씨, 자녀분이 있느냐요?
   A. 네, 이제 아들하고 딸이 있어요.
   (2) A. 여기서 될 하고 있어요?
   B. 여자친구를 기다리고 있어요.

Answer Key / 398
(3) A. 那个人可能是个士兵。
B. 是的，他是。

(4) A. 你会去见李太太吗?
B. 但她是已经去首尔了，不是吗?

(5) A. 你父母住在哪里?
B. 我们住在大邱。

(6) A. 你的儿子多大了?
B. 他二十四五。

(7) A. 那个女人可能离婚了。
B. 真的吗？但你觉得无聊，不是吗?

(8) A. 萨恩说得很好。
B. 她总是努力学习，不是吗。

(9) A. 那个节目很无聊，所以不要看。
B. 我出去时，天气很冷。

(10) A. 你最近怎么样?
B. 我不太舒服。

Exercise (6). Korean-to-English Translation

(1) That man was probably a soldier.
(2) I’m going to do some sight-seeing in Seoul tomorrow.
(3) A. Are you going to meet Mrs. Lee this evening?
B. But she already left for Seoul, didn’t she?
(4) It probably snowed last night.
(5) Our grandparents are living in Taegu.
(6) I am going to graduate this spring.
(7) A. How old is your son? B. He is twenty-four.
(8) That woman is probably divorced.
(9) A. I majored in economics.
B. Really? But it’s boring, don’t you think?
(10) A. Shall we go to the stadium to do some exercise?
B. But it’s raining!
(11) My sister is writing a book.
(12) Our granddaughter always wears a hat.
(13) I have many members in my family. I have five younger brothers and two older sisters.
(14) A. Sujan speaks Korean really well now.
B. She studies hard all the time, doesn’t she.
(15) A. There are always lots of customers in this restaurant.
B. Well, the food is delicious (isn’t it).
(16) It’s cold, so let’s not go outside.
(17) This program is really boring, so don’t watch it.
(18) When I went outside, it was cold.
(19) I telephoned just now, but no one answered.
(20) The movie is probably finished now.
Exercise (7): More Practice with Sequentials

(1) 집에 돌아가니가 아무도 없어. When I returned home there was no one there.
(2) 밖에 나가니가 아무 더웠어. When I went outside, it was very hot.
(3) 산에 올라가니가 많이 추워. When I went up the mountain, it was very cold.
(4) 다시 한번 보니가 완전히 없어. When I looked again, it was my uncle.
(5) 누님한테 전화 거니가 받지 않았어. When I called my sister, no one answered.
(6) 양복을 입으니가 다른 사람 같아요. With a suit on you look like a different person.
(7) 은퇴를 하니가 갑자기 심심해. Now that I have retired, all of a sudden I feel bored.
(8) 맥주 한잔 마시니가 노래를 부르고 싶어요. Now that I’ve had a glass of beer, I want to sing.
(9) 그 여자랑 데이트 하니가 부모님이 싫어하셨어요. When I went on a date with that girl I discovered my parents didn’t like her.
(10) 택시 타니가 아저씨가 영어를 잘 했어요. When I got into the taxi I discovered that the taxi driver spoke English well.
(11) 좀 피곤하니가 오늘은 나가지 않시다. We’re a bit tired, so let’s not go out today.
(12) 한국은 겨울에 추우니가 봄에 감시다. It’s cold in Korea in the winter, so let’s go in the spring.
(13) 선교사니가 한국말을 잘 할거야. He’s a missionary, so he probably speaks Korean well.
(14) 나이가 많으니가 너무 빨리 걷지 말아요. He’s old, so don’t walk too quickly.
(15) 내일 눈이 올겨니가 다음 주일에 합니다. It’s probably going to snow tomorrow, so let’s do it next week.
(16) 사장님께 말씀 드렸으니가 걱정하지 마십시오. I told the company president, so don’t worry.
(17) 장마가 시작했으니가 비가 많이 올렸어요. The rainy season has started so it will rain a lot.
(18) 한국 사람이니가 김치를 좋아해요. He’s Korean, so he likes kimchee.
(19) 커피가 없으니가 흑자가 할까요? There’s no coffee, so shall we have tea?
(20) 데에 혼자 계시니가 심심하신대요. He is staying home alone, so he is probably bored.

Answer Key / 400
(21) They live in a rich neighborhood, so they probably have a lot of money.

Exercise (8): Practice with -고 있어요

(1) My brother is wearing a tie. or My brother is putting on a tie.
(2) A. What are you doing?
   B. I'm drinking iced coffee.
(3) Sunhui is listening to jazz.
(4) The president is speaking with a customer/guest.
(5) Where did that student just go?
   A. He's probably waiting in the hallway.
   B. No, I am living at my relative's house now.
(6) Are you still living in the vicinity of city hall?
   A. Yes, I am living in the vicinity of city hall.
   B. No, I am living at my relative's house now.
(7) I'm looking for my notebook. Haven't you seen it?
(8) My older sister and brother are playing tennis now.
(9) Where did she go?
   A. That's her dancing over there (isn't it—don't you know).
   B. That's her dancing over there (isn't it—don't you know).
(10) Why aren't you wearing your glasses recently?

Exercise (9): Vocabulary Drill

(1) 아내-남편/ 형-오빠/ 조카/ 할머니/ 장모-시어머니한테서 편지를 받았습니다.
(2) 우리 아버지/ 고모-이모/ 누나-언니/ 부모님/ 할아버지 은/는 돈을 조금 주셨습니다.
(3) 제 친구가 남동생/ 형/ 장인/ 조카/ 부친 앞에 앉습니다.
(4) 제 친구는 부모님/ 장인/ 손주/ 고모-이모/ 형하고 같이 삽니다.

Answer Key / 401
Lesson Fourteen

Exercise (1): Future-Presumptives in -겠-

(1) 나는 우체국까지 가겠어요. I will go as far as the post office.
(2) 나는 서울대학교에서 공부하겠어요. I will study at Seoul National University.
(3) 선생님은 무엇을 하시겠어요? What will you do?
(4) 내일까지 집에 돌아오겠어요. I will return home by tomorrow.
(5) 기차를 타고 시내에 가겠어요. I will take the train downtown.
(6) 나는 한국에서 영어를 가르чис겠어요. I will teach English in Korea.
(7) 김 선생님이 자동차를 파시겠어요? Are you going to sell your car, Mr. Kim?
(8) 다방 앞에서 기다리겠어요. I will wait in front of the tabang.

Exercise (2): Suppositives in -지요

(1) 선생님이 매일 술값을 내지요. Our teacher pays for drinks every day, you know.
(2) 북동쪽의 할아버지님은 연세가 많으시지요? Poktong’s grandfather is really old, isn’t he?
(3) 할머니는 병세 삼년 전에 돌아가셨지요. My grandmother passed away already three years ago, you know.
(4) 언니는 우리와 같이 살지 않지요. My older sister doesn’t live with us, you know.
(5) 일본에 돌아가고 싶지요? I imagine you want to go back to Japan (don’t you)?
(6) 그 사람은 지금 싸고 있었지요. I suppose he’s resting now.
(7) 동생 옷이 예쁘지요. My sister’s clothes are pretty, you know.
(8) 조금 더 걸어가자요. Let’s walk a little more (OK)?
(9) 그 사람을 매일 만나지요. I meet him every day, you know.
(10) 우산이 없었지요? My umbrella wasn’t in the bathroom, was it?

Answer Key / 402
Exercise (3): English to Korean Translation

(1) 읽악회를 좋아하지요? 네, 영화는 좋아하지 않지만 읽악회는 좋아해요.
(2) 그럼, 오늘 밤에 읽악회에 같이 갈까요? 좋지요.
(3) 지금 몇시지요? 모르겠어요.
(4) 날씨가 너무 좋지요? 공원에서 산보를 할까요?
(5) 그 노래를 어떻게 빼웠지요? 라디오에서 들었어요.
(6) 어제 밤에 놀이 많이 했지요?
(7) 그 시티를 서점에서 샀어요? 아니요! 서점에서는 시티를 안 팔잖아요!
(8) 기차가 세시까지 도착 할까요? 도착하겠습니다!
(9) 텔레비전을 보고 있겠지요?
(10) 형님이 두명만 있어요, 또는 형님이 두명밖에 없어요.
(11) 김 선생님이 텔레비전에서 나오셨지요?
(12) 작년에 서울에서 살지 않았어요?
(13) 자동차로 옮겨요.
(14) 값이 싶오름 좀 하겠습니다.
(15) 편지를 빨리 썼겠지요?
(16) 한국에 갔어요.
(17) 그 할아버지께서는 빨리 돌아가셨겠지요?
(18) 여기서 잠깐 기다릴게요.
(19) 엘리베이터를 타고 올라왔어요.
(20) 동대문에서 만날까요?
(21) 가방 속에 돈이 있었어요?
(22) 그저께 일을 많이 했지만 돈은 못 받았어요.

Exercise (4): Practice with -겠지요

(1) 장 선생님은 공부하고 계시겠지요. Mr. Chang is probably/must be studying.
(2) 밖이 출겠지요. It must be cold outside.
(3) 오빠가 기본이 좋겠지요. My brother is probably/must be in a good mood.
(4) 학생들이 일찍 학교에 오겠지요. The students will probably come to school early.
(5) 그 아이가 어리겠지요. That child is probably be young.
(6) 부모님들이 결으시겠지요. His parents are probably/must be young.
(7) 그 상점은 굉장히 비싸겠지요. That store is probably/must be extremely expensive.
The movie theatre is probably/must be too far away.

The exam will probably be difficult.

The teacher's fiance will probably/must like flowers.

The teacher's daughter will probably be/must be pretty.

It will probably snow from tomorrow morning.

Exercise (5): only

(1) 저희 학교에선 여자는 많지만, 남자는 한 명밖에 없어요.
(2) 지금은 방학이에요. 학교에는 학생 몇 명밖에 없어요.
(3) 이제 두 사람밖에 안 왔습니다/ 오지 않았습니다.
(4) 맥주 몇병 사셨어요? 한 병밖에 안/ 못 샀어요.
(5) 돈 얼마나 있으세요? 조금밖에 없어요.
(6) 이제 밤에는 네 시간밖에 못 갔어요. 그래서 평창히 피곤하지요.
(7) 지난 달에는 영화구경을 두 번밖에 가지 않았어요.
(8) 크리스마스에는 선물을 많이 받으셨어요? 아니오, 몇 개밖에 안 받았어요.
(9) 이건 빛리 합시다. 시간이 조금밖에 없어요.
(10) 한국말 잘 하세요? 아니오, 한 학기밖에 못 배웠어요.

Exercise (6): Korean-to-English Translation

(1) A. Chinho, don’t you smoke?
   B. I used to smoke, but I quit.
(2) A. Who all came to the last party?
   B. My friends from the dormitory and my church friends came.
(3) A. Sujin goes to the swimming pool nowadays to learn how to swim.
   B. Really? I used to go there, too.
(4) A. Eric speaks Korean well, doesn’t he?
   B. Yes, he couldn’t speak a word a year ago, but now he speaks really well.
(5) A. Chinho, are you dating that girl these days?
   B. No, until one month ago we met often, but I’m dating another girl now.
(6) A. The weather is hot, isn’t it?
   B. Yes, it’s really hot.

Answer Key / 404
A. You like *pulgogi*, right?  
B. Yes; how many portions should we order?  

A. These shoes are much too big for me.  
B. Then give them to me. I’ll wear them.  

A. You’re going to change into a suit, right?  
B. Yes; I’ll change quickly.  

A. You’re going to quit drinking now, right?  
B. Yes. I’ll quit smoking, too.  

Lesson Fifteen  

Exercise (1): Matching Synonyms  

(1) 좋아요 - 편찮아요  
(2) 주어요 - 드리요  
(3) 한 주간 - 일주일 (4) 일년 - 열두달  
(5) 일어요 - 와어요  
(6) 교수 - 선생  
(7) 거기 - 그 곳  
(8) 세 명 - 세 사람  
(9) 날마다 - 매일  
(10) 백화점 - 상점  
(11) 대학 - 학교  
(12) 공부해야요 - 배워요  

Exercise (2): Matching Opposites  

(1) 전에 - 후에  
(2) 추위요 - 더워요  
(3) 여름 - 겨울  
(4) 일해요 - 쉬어요  
(5) 할 - 아들  
(6) 일어나요 - 누워요  
(7) 가을 - 봄  
(8) 손자 - 손녀  
(9) 이야기해요 - 들이요  
(10) 내일 - 어제  
(11) 할아버지 - 할머니  
(12) 싸요 - 비싸요  
(13) 오전 - 오후  
(14) 밤 - 낮  
(15) 사요 - 팔아요  
(16) 시요 - 안아요  
(17) 시작해야요 - 마치요  
(18) 여동생 - 남동생  

Answer Key / 405
Exercise (3): Picking the Misfits

(1) 개가 나와요.
(2) 교회
(3) 전화를 걸어요.
(4) 시내
(5) 싸어요.
(6) 머리가 아파요.

Exercise (4): Particle Manipulation

(1) 내년까지 결혼을 하고 싶어요.
(2) 기차로 갈까요?
(3) 기차도 지하철도 패찰어요.
(4) 이 옷밖에 없어요.
(5) 비싸겠지만 새 옷을 샀어요.
(6) 모자도 신발도 샀어요.
(7) 열 명품 파티에 왔어요.
(8) 아침마다 신문을 읽어요.
(9) 서울에서 부산까지 기차로 몇 시간 걸리요?
(10) 하루에 한 번씩 지하철을 타요.
(11) 오늘 비가 오지만 나는 영화를 보러 시내에 갔어요.
(12) 시간이 얼마나 있어요? 심분만 있어요.
(13) 오늘 고기밖에 안 먹었어요.
(14) 선생님한테 전화 두 번 걸었지만 집에 안 계셨어요.
(15) 일 년에 몇 번씩 음악회에 가세요?
(16) 오늘 오전 여덟 시에 오후 열 시까지 일을 했어요.
(17) 어제 늦이 오지 않았어요. 그리고 비도 오지 않았어요.

Exercise (7): Change to Formal Style

(1) 영국에서 살니까? Are you English?
(2) 나는 영국 사람이 아닙니다. I am not English.
(3) 그럼, 어디서 왔습니까? Then, where are you from?
(4) 미국에서 왔습니다. I came from America.
(5) 미국은 한국에서 멀니까? Is America far from Korea?
(6) 가깝지 않습니다. 대단히 멀습니다. It’s not close. It’s very far.
(7) 미국에서는 무슨 일을 하셨습니까? What kind of work did you do in America?
(8) 학교에서 경제학을 가르쳤습니다. I taught economics at school.
(9) 지금 저희 학교를 좀 구경하시겠습니까? Would you like to have a look at my school?
(10) 네, 학생들을 만나고 싶습니다. Yes, I’d like to meet the students.

Answer Key / 406
(11) Our school is small but we have a lot of students.
(12) Would you like to smoke a cigarette?
(13) Thank you. I really like cigarettes, I always smoke.
(14) Where do the students eat lunch?
(15) So they all eat lunch at home, you see.
(16) Are the teachers good?
(17) This is our classroom.
(18) The classroom is really large.
(19) Where do the students eat lunch?
(20) Our school doesn't have any money. So, we can't buy many books.

Exercise (8): Numerals and Counters

(1) The classroom is big but there are not many books.
(2) The classroom is really large.
(3) Our school doesn't have any money. So, we can't buy many books.

Exercise (9): Translate into English

(1) That movie was really boring. I wanted to leave in the middle.
(2) Six years ago I wore glasses, but nowadays I wear contact lenses, you know.
(3) I put that book on top of the desk yesterday. I suppose someone is reading it.
(4) Until yesterday I wanted to go to Japan, but now I want to go to Korea.
(5) A. Have you brushed your teeth?
   B. I'm brushing them now (aren't I?).
(6) I will give you three questions each. But, can you solve them?
(7) I only study political science at university. Sometimes I do six hours of homework per day. Then after that I rest.
(8) You haven't met anyone this morning? No. I haven't been out yet, have I!
(9) Tomorrow is the beginning of school. I am going to study hard this year.
(10) I will study hard, but my brother will most likely be mainly playing (having fun).
(11) I don't want to go out. I want to drink coffee at home.
(12) This food doesn't taste very good. Shall we eat something else?
(13) How much is that book? I'll get some money out of the bank.
(14) Yesterday I went out to find our cat, but I couldn't find him.
(15) I'm doing well thanks to my boss.
(16) A. I can't solve this problem.
   B. Then I'll do it.
(17) Hurry up and go to sleep. It's really late, (isn't it?)!
(18) Do you suppose it will be cold tomorrow? I don't know.
(19) Shall we go to school? But it's Sunday today!
(20) That's my shirt, isn't it? Please give it to me quickly!
(21) Let's go and drink coffee in a tabang on Thursday.
(22) On the fifth floor they sell gloves and wallets.
(23) Would you like to play tennis?
(24) I go to church twice a month.
(25) I drank all the coffee but it didn't taste good.
(26) Has the boss arrived already? Then give him a glass of beer.
(27) What country are you from? I'm from Russia, but I came here ten years ago, you see.
(28) These books are all different. And what's more, they are all interesting. Which book store did you buy them from?
(29) My daughter is smart, but she doesn't study very hard.
(30) I don't like that story. Tell another one.
(31) The weather is bad today, but I'm in a good mood.
(32) Don't eat that bread!
(33) I'm thinking of finishing this work by next week.
(34) He doesn't live with us, but of course he wants to live with us.
(35) Shall we sit on the grass?

Answer Key / 408
(36) I am looking for a girlfriend, but I don't want to get married yet.
(37) In London both the subway and the buses have lots of problems.
(38) This semester I am studying political science, economics, and Korean language.
(39) How many people are there in your family?
(40) My father goes to church, but my younger brother doesn't go.
(41) I don't have a chance to read any books these days.
(42) Last summer my professor came to my house.
(43) My nephew is still a bachelor, but I suppose he will get married sometime.
(44) Does Grandfather give you a lot of money?
(45) I'm thinking of seeing a play downtown this evening.
(46) Do they sell flowers in the book store? Of course they don't sell them.
(47) My younger cousin is a soldier in the States.
(48) How many siblings do you have?
(49) Would you like coffee? No, I want to go to bed early.
(50) He probably learned some Russian in the United States.

Exercise (10): Translate into Korean

(1) 네, 오셨을까요요. or 네, 왔겠겠어요. or 네, 왔겠어요.
(2) 그 학생은 브라운 신생님이 가리라고 있어요.
(3) 삼천원밖에 없어요. 그래서 이 물건을 다 못 사겠어요.
(4) 그 자전거를 자주 타세요?
(5) 십오분만큼 공부를 할겨어요.
(6) 이번주에 아버님한테서 돈을 못 받올겨어요.
(7) 박 신생님의 조카가 내년에 졸업할겨요?
(8) 몇 시지요?
(9) 공원에서 같이 산보를 할래요?
(10) 그 여자는 형의 약혼자일겨요.
(11) 실패하지만, 잠깐 위층에 깨요.
(12) 모레 장 신생님의 누님을 만날겨요.
(13) 지금 이 옷을 좀 입으래요?
(14) 기분이 좋으세요?
(15) 미리가 묻시 아파요.
(16) 여름에 시험이 많이 있을 거예요.
(17) 버스 정류장에 어디 있습니까?
(18) 여제 왔지만 물라요.
(19) 미리를 빼워서요!
(20) 집에 계실까요? 물론 계셨겠지요!

Answer Key / 409